

This book is a presentation of a bilingual text with student aids, built using open-source software. For information about how the book is intended to be used and why it's designed the way it is, see:

<https://bitbucket.org/ben-crowell/ransom/src/master/README.md>

rev. December 26, 2025

The Greek text is based on the edition by Marchant, 1910. The English translation is by Dakyns, 1909, via Project Gutenberg.

Text I've written, such as notes and glosses, is CC-BY-SA 4.0. Glosses taken verbatim from Cunliffe or White and Morgan are in the public domain, as are the LSJ dictionary entries. Glosses taken verbatim from Wiktionary are CC-BY-SA 3.0. US law does not allow copy-righting of grammatical facts such as part-of-speech tagging and does not give any additional protection to databases beyond the normal protection of copyright.

Text I've written, such as notes and glosses, is (c) 2025 Benjamin Crowell and CC-BY-SA 4.0. Glosses taken verbatim from Cunliffe or White and Morgan are in the public domain, as are the LSJ dictionary entries. Glosses taken verbatim from Wiktionary are CC-BY-SA 3.0. US law does not allow copy-righting of grammatical facts such as part-of-speech tagging and does not give any additional protection to databases beyond the normal protection of copyright.

*vocabulary***αἰτέω** ask for ~etiology**διαλαμβάνω** distribute**διψάω** be thirsty ~dipsomaniac**ἐκδύω** take off; leave; avoid**ἐσπέρα** evening, west**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism**μουσουργέω** write poetry, sing of**οἰκεῖος** household, familiar, proper**οἴκοι** at home ~economics**Πέρσης** Persian**στολή** equipment**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war,
campaign ~strategy**χαρίζομαι** gratify ~charisma

5

5.1

Οἱ μὲν δὴ ταῦτ' ἔπραξαν τε καὶ ἔλεξαν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος τὰ μὲν Κναξάρου ἐκέλευσε διαλαβόντας φυλάττειν οὓς ἦδει οἰκειοτάτους αὐτῷ ὄντας· καὶ ὅσα δὲ ἐμοὶ δίδοτε, ἡδέως, ἔφη, δέχομαι· χρήσεται δ' αὐτοῖς ὑμῶν ὁ αἰὲ μάλιστα δεόμενος. φιλόμουσος δέ τις τῶν Μήδων εἶπε· Καὶ μὴν ἐγώ, ὦ Κῦρε, τῶν μουσουργῶν ἀκούσας ἐσπέρας ὦν σὺ νῦν ἔχεις, ἤκουσά τε ἡδέως κἄν μοι δῶς αὐτῶν μίαν, στρατεύεσθαι ἄν μοι δοκῶ ἥδιον ἢ οἴκοι μένειν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος εἶπεν· Ἄλλ' ἐγώ, ἔφη, καὶ δίδωμί σοι καὶ χάριν οἶομαι σοὶ πλείω ἔχειν ὅτι ἐμὲ ἥτησας ἢ σὺ ἐμοὶ ὅτι λαμβάνεις· οὕτως ἐγὼ ὑμῖν διψῶ χαρίζεσθαι. ταύτην μὲν οὖν ἔλαβεν ὁ αἰτήσας.

Καλέσας δὲ ὁ Κῦρος Ἀράσπαν Μήδον, ὃς ἦν αὐτῷ ἐκ παιδὸς ἐταῖρος, ᾧ καὶ τὴν στολὴν ἐκδὺς ἔδωκε τὴν Μηδικήν, ὅτε παρ' Ἀστυάγους εἰς Πέρσας ἀπῆει, τοῦτον

5

5.1

Οἱ μὲν δὴ ταῦτ' ἔπραξαν τε καὶ ἔλεξαν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος τὰ
 μὲν Κναξάρου ἐκέλευσε |distribute |guard; οὓς ἦδει
 |household, fa- αὐτῷ ὄντας· καὶ ὅσα δὲ ἐμοὶ δίδοτε, |sweet ,
 |miliar, proper
 ἔφη, |accept, re- ῥήσεται δ' αὐτοῖς ὑμῶν ὁ αἰὲ μάλιστα
 |ceive, await
 δεόμενος. φιλόμουσος δέ τις τῶν Μήδων εἶπε· Καὶ μὴν
 ἐγώ, ὦ Κῦρε, τῶν μουσουργῶν ἀκούσας ἐσπέρας ὦν σὺ
 νῦν ἔχεις, ἤκουσά τε |sweet καὶ μοι δῶς αὐτῶν μίαν,
 |make an expedition, |at home ῥεῖν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος
 |war, campaign
 εἶπεν· Ἄλλ' ἐγώ, ἔφη, καὶ δίδωμί σοι καὶ |grace οἶομαι
 σοὶ πλείω ἔχειν ὅτι ἐμὲ |ask for ἢ σὺ ἐμοὶ ὅτι λαμβάνεις·
 οὕτως ἐγὼ ὑμῖν |be |gratify . ταύτην μὲν οὖν ἔλαβεν
 |thirsty
 ὁ |ask for

Καλέσας δὲ ὁ Κῦρος Ἀράσπαν Μῆδον, ὃς ἦν αὐτῷ ἐκ
 παιδὸς ἐταῖρος, ᾧ καὶ τὴν |equip- |take off ἔδωκε τὴν
 |ment
 Μηδικήν, ὅτε παρ' Ἀστυάγους εἰς Πέρσας |be absent, go on
 |away, return

5

5.1

Such were the deeds they did and such the words they spoke. Then Cyrus bade them set a guard over the share chosen for Cyaxares, selecting those whom he knew were most attached to their lord, "And what you have given me," he added, "I accept with pleasure, but I hold it at the service of those among you who would enjoy it the most."

At that one of the Medes who was passionately fond of music said, "In truth, Cyrus, yesterday evening I listened to the singing-girls who are yours to-day, and if you could give me one of them, I would far rather be serving on this campaign than sitting at home."

And Cyrus said, "Most gladly I will give her; she is yours. And I believe I am more grateful to you for asking than you can be to me for giving; I am so thirsty to gratify you all."

So this suitor carried off his prize. And then Cyrus called to his side Araspas the Mede, who had been his comrade in boyhood. It was he to whom Cyrus gave the Median cloak he was wearing when he went back to Persia from his grandfather's court. Now he summoned him, and asked him

*vocabulary***ἄλίσκομαι** be captured ~helix**δέσποινα** lady**δήτα** emphatic δή**διαγιγνώσκω** discern, decide ~gnostic**διαφυλάσσω** guard, observe**δούλη** slave-woman**ἐξαιρέω** pick, steal; dedicate; destroy

~heresy

ἐπέρομαι ask as well; ask then**ἐσθής** clothes ~vest**ἡνίκα** when**ἡώς ἡῶθι** (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene**θεράπαινα** female slave**καίπερ** even if**καλύπτω** to cover with, hide

~apocalypse

οἶχομαι come, go, leave, be gone**ὁμοῖος** like ~homoerotic**περιβλέπω** look around**ποίη** grass**ποῖος** what kind**πρεσβεύω** be the elder, be an

ambassador

σκηνή tent; stage**συμμαχία** alliance**τοίνυν** well, then**χαμαί** on/near the ground

ἐκέλευσε διαφυλάξαι αὐτῷ τήν τε γυναῖκα καὶ τὴν σκηνήν· ἦν δὲ αὕτη ἡ γυνὴ τοῦ Ἀβραδάτου τοῦ Σουσίου· ὅτε δὲ ἠλίσκετο τὸ τῶν Ἀσσυρίων στρατόπεδον, ὁ ἀνὴρ αὐτῆς οὐκ ἔτυχεν ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ ὢν, ἀλλὰ πρὸς τὸν τῶν Βακτρίων βασιλέα πρεσβεύων ᾧχετο· ἔπεμψε δὲ αὐτὸν ὁ Ἀσσύριος περὶ συμμαχίας· ξένος γὰρ ὢν ἐτύγγανε τῷ τῶν Βακτρίων βασιλεῖ· ταύτην οὖν ἐκέλευσεν ὁ Κῦρος διαφυλάττειν τὸν Ἀράσπαν, ἕως ἄν αὐτὸς λάβῃ. κελευόμενος δὲ ὁ Ἀράσπας ἐπήρετο· Ἐώρακας δ', ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, τὴν γυναῖκα, ἣν με κελεύεις φυλάττειν; Μὰ Δί', ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, οὐκ ἔγωγε. Ἀλλ' ἐγώ, ἔφη, ἡνίκα ἐξηροῦμέν σοι αὐτήν· καὶ δῆτα, ὅτε μὲν εἰσῆλθομεν εἰς τὴν σκηνήν αὐτῆς, τὸ πρῶτον οὐ διέγνωμεν αὐτήν· χαμαί τε γὰρ ἐκάθητο καὶ αἱ θεράπαιναι πᾶσαι περὶ αὐτήν· καὶ τοίνυν ὁμοίαν ταῖς δούλαις εἶχε τὴν ἐσθῆτα· ἐπεὶ δὲ γινῶναι βουλόμενοι ποία εἴη ἡ δέσποινα πάσας περιεβλέψαμεν, ταχὺ πάνυ καὶ πασῶν ἐφαίνετο διαφέρουσα τῶν ἄλλων, καίπερ καθημένη κεκαλυμμένη τε καὶ εἰς γῆν ὀρώσα. ὥς

ἐκέλευσε |guard, observe αὐτῷ τὴν τε γυναῖκα καὶ τὴν |tent; stage
 ἦν δὲ αὕτη ἡ γυνὴ τοῦ Ἀβραδάτου τοῦ Σουσίου· ὅτε
 δὲ |be captured ὁ τῶν Ἀσσυρίων |army camp , ὁ ἀνὴρ
 αὐτῆς οὐκ ἔτυχεν ἐν τῷ |army camp ὢν, ἀλλὰ πρὸς
 τὸν τῶν Βακτρίων βασιλέα |be the elder, |come, go ἔπεμψε
 δὲ αὐτὸν ὁ Ἀσσύριος περὶ |be an ambas- sador
 ἐτύγχανε τῷ τῶν Βακτρίων βασιλεῖ· ταύτην οὖν ἐκέλευσεν
 ὁ Κῦρος |guard, observe τὸν Ἀράσπαν, ἕως ἂν αὐτὸς λάβῃ.
 κελευόμενος δὲ ὁ Ἀράσπας |ask as well; |ask then Ἐώρακας δ', ἔφη,
 ὦ Κῦρε, τὴν γυναῖκα, ἣν με κελεύεις |guard; |watch , Μὰ Δί',
 ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, οὐκ ἔγωγε. Ἀλλ' ἐγώ, ἔφη, |when |pick, steal; dedicate; de-
 stroy
 σοι αὐτήν· καὶ |emphatic δὲ, ἐν εἰσήλθομεν εἰς τὴν |tent; stage
 αὐτῆς, τὸ πρῶτον οὐ |discern, |decide αὐτήν· |on the ground, |
 |sit καὶ αἱ |female slave πᾶσαι περὶ αὐτήν· καὶ |well, then
 |like ταῖς |slave-woman ἔχε τὴν |clothes ἐπεὶ δὲ γινῶναι
 βουλόμενοι ποία εἴη ἡ |lady πᾶσας |look around ,
 ταχὺ |altogether, very- ὧν ἐφαίνετο |carry on; dif- |fer; excel τῶν ἄλλων,
 |even if |sit |cover, hide τε καὶ εἰς γῆν ὀρώσα. ὥς

to take care of the tent and the lady from Susa. She was the wife of Abradatas, a Susian, and when the Assyrian army was captured it happened that her husband was away: his master had sent him on an embassy to Bactria to conclude an alliance there, for he was the friend and host of the Bactrian king. And now Cyrus asked Araspas to guard the captive lady until her husband could take her back himself. To that Araspas replied, "Have you seen the lady whom you bid me guard?"

"No, indeed," said Cyrus, "certainly I have not."

"But I have," rejoined the other, "I saw her when we chose her for you. When we came into the tent, we did not make her out at first, for she was seated on the ground with all her maidens round her, and she was clad in the same attire as her slaves, but when we looked at them all to discover the mistress, we soon saw that one outshone the others, although she was veiled and kept her eyes on the ground. And when

*vocabulary***ἄνωθεν** from above, the beginning**ἀρετή** goodness, excellence**δάκρυον** tear**δέρη** neck, throat, mane**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous**εἶδος** -ους (n, 3) appearance, form

~oid

ἐνταῦθα there, here**ἐξαίρέω** pick, steal; dedicate; destroy

~heresy

θάρσος boldness, over-boldness**θνητός** mortal ~euthanasia**καίπερ** even if**μέγεθος** -ους (n, 3) tall, big (person)

~megaton

μήπω not yet, lest yet**πάντως** by all means**πέπλος** woman's dress, a folded cylinder of cloth**στάζω** dribble, infuse**συνανίστημι** make to rise up**σχῆμα** -τος (n, 3) form, figure**ταπεινός** low**ταπεινός** lower, abase**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics**χειρόν** worse, more base, inferior, weaker

δὲ ἀναστῆναι αὐτὴν ἐκελεύσαμεν, συνανέστησαν μὲν αὐτῇ
 ἅπασαι αἱ ἀμφ' αὐτήν, διήνεγκε δ' ἐνταῦθα πρῶτον μὲν
 τῷ μεγέθει, ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ τῇ ἀρετῇ καὶ τῇ εὐσχημοσύνῃ,
 καίπερ ἐν ταπεινῷ σχήματι ἐστηκυῖα. δῆλα δ' ἦν αὐτῇ
 καὶ τὰ δάκρυα στάζοντα, τὰ μὲν κατὰ τῶν πέπλων, τὰ
 δὲ καὶ ἐπὶ τοὺς πόδας. ὥς δ' ἡμῶν ὁ γεραίτατος εἶπε,
 Θάρρει, ὦ γύναι· καλὸν μὲν γὰρ κἀγαθὸν ἀκούομεν καὶ
 τὸν σὸν ἄνδρα εἶναι· νῦν μέντοι ἐξαιροῦμεν ἀνδρὶ σε εὖ
 ἴσθι ὅτι οὔτε τὸ εἶδος ἐκείνου χεῖρονι οὔτε τὴν γνώμην
 οὔτε δύναμιν ἥττω ἔχοντι, ἀλλ' ὥς ἡμεῖς γε νομίζομεν, εἴ
 τις καὶ ἄλλος ἀνὴρ, καὶ Κῦρος ἄξιός ἐστι θαυμάζεσθαι,
 οὐδ' σὺ ἔσῃ τὸ ἀπὸ τοῦδε· ὥς οὖν τοῦτο ἤκουσεν ἡ γυνή,
 περικατερρήξατό τε τὸν ἄνωθεν πέπλον καὶ ἀνωδύρατο·
 συνανεβόησαν δὲ καὶ αἱ δμωαί. ἐν τούτῳ δὲ ἐφάνη μὲν
 αὐτῆς τὸ πλείστον μέρος τοῦ προσώπου, ἐφάνη δὲ ἡ δέρη
 καὶ αἱ χεῖρες· καὶ εὖ ἴσθι, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, ὥς ἐμοί τε ἔδοξε καὶ
 τοῖς ἄλλοις ἅπασι τοῖς ἰδοῦσι μήπω φῦναι μηδὲ γενέσθαι
 γυνὴ ἀπὸ θνητῶν τοιαύτη ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ· ἀλλὰ πάντως, ἔφη,
 καὶ σὺ θέασαι

δὲ |stand up; arouse ἵν' ἐκελεύσαμεν, |make to rise up μὲν αὐτῇ
 ἅπασαι αἱ ἀμφ' αὐτήν, |carry on; dif-|there, here ῥῶτον μὲν
 |fer; excel
 τῷ |tall, big , ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ τῇ |excellence ἢ τῇ εὐσχημοσύνῃ,
 |even if ἐν ταπεινῷ |form, ἐστηκυῖα. |visible, αὐτῇ
 |figure
 καὶ τὰ |tear |dribble, , τὰ μὲν κατὰ τῶν |woman's dress
 |infuse
 δὲ καὶ ἐπὶ τοὺς πόδας. ὥς δ' ἡμῶν ὁ γεραίτατος εἶπε,
 |boldness ὦ γύναι· καλὸν μὲν γὰρ κάγαθὸν ἀκούομεν καὶ
 τὸν σὸν ἄνδρα εἶναι· νῦν |however |pick, steal; dedi- ὅρι σε εὖ
 |cate; destroy
 ἴσθι ὅτι οὔτε τὸ |form ἐκείνου |worse, more base ἵν' γνώμην
 οὔτε δύναμιν ἥττω ἔχοντι, ἀλλ' ὥς ἡμεῖς γε |consider |cus-
 |tomary; believe
 τις καὶ ἄλλος ἀνὴρ, καὶ Κῦρος |worthy ἔστι |marvel ,
 οὐδ' οὐκ ἔστι τὸ ἀπὸ τοῦδε· ὥς οὖν τοῦτο ἤκουσεν ἡ γυνή,
 περικατερρήξατό τε τὸν |from |woman's dress ἰωδύρατο·
 |above,
 συνανεβόησαν δὲ καὶ αἱ γυναῖκες. ἐν τούτῳ δὲ ἐφάνη μὲν
 |the be-
 |ginning
 αὐτῆς τὸ πλεῖστον μέρος τοῦ |face , ἐφάνη δὲ ἡ |neck,
 |throat,
 καὶ αἱ χεῖρες· καὶ εὖ ἴσθι, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, ὥς ἐμοί τε ἔδοξε καὶ
 |mane
 τοῖς ἄλλοις ἅπασιν τοῖς ἰδοῦσι |not yet, pro- |and not; not even
 |lest yet |duce,
 γυνὴ ἀπὸ |mortal τοιαύτη ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ ὅλα |beget;
 |clasp |by all means ἵνα,
 καὶ σὺ θέασαι

we bade her rise, all her women rose with her, and then we saw that she was marked out from them all by her height, and her noble bearing, and her grace, and the beauty that shone through her mean apparel. And, under her veil, we could see the big tear-drops trickling down her garments to her feet. At that sight the eldest of us said, 'Take comfort, lady, we know that your husband was beautiful and brave, but we have chosen you a man to-day who is no whit inferior to him in face or form or mind or power; Cyrus, we believe, is more to be admired than any soul on earth, and you shall be his from this day forward.' But when the lady heard that, she rent the veil that covered her head and gave a pitiful cry, while her maidens lifted up their voice and wept with their mistress. And thus we could see her face, and her neck, and her arms, and I tell you, Cyrus," he added, "I myself, and all who looked on her, felt that there never was, and never had been, in broad Asia a mortal woman half so fair as she. Nay, but you must

*vocabulary***ἀδελφή** sister**ἀμελέω** disregard; (impers.) of course**ἀναγκάζω** force, compel**ἀναπείθω** (aor, plupf) seduce,
persuade; (mp, pf, aor ppl) trust, obey,
be confident in**ἀναπίπτω** fall back**βέλτιστος** best, noblest**δαί** particle: emphasizes questions**δαίς** -τός (f) feast, banquet ~demon**δαῖς** δαδός (f) torch**ἐθελούσιος** voluntary, optional**ἔρως** -τος (m) love, desire ~erotic**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider

~theater

καθίημι (τι) speed down upon; take
down ~jet**καίω** burn ~caustic**κάλλος** -εος (n, 3) beauty

~kaleidoscope

κάτειμι go down, disembark ~ion**κωλύω** (ῶ) hinder, prevent**ναί** yea**νεανίσκος** (ᾱ) young man**ὅμοιος** like ~homoerotic**πεινάω** be hungry**σχολή** rest, leisure**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics

αὐτήν. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος ἔφη· Ναὶ Μὰ Δία, πολὺ γε ἦπτον, εἰ τοιαύτη ἐστὶν οἷαν σὺ λέγεις. τί δαί; ἔφη ὁ νεανίσκος. Ὅτι, ἔφη, εἰ νυνὶ σοῦ ἀκούσας ὅτι καλὴ ἐστὶ πεισθήσομαι ἐλθεῖν θεασόμενος, οὐδὲ πάνυ μοι σχολῆς οὔσης, δέδοικα μὴ πολὺν θάπτον ἐκείνη αὔθις ἀναπείσῃ καὶ πάλιν ἐλθεῖν θεασόμενον· ἐκ δὲ τούτου ἴσως ἂν ἀμελήσας ὦν με δεῖ πράττειν καθήμην ἐκείνην θεώμενος.

Καὶ ὁ νεανίσκος ἀναγελάσας εἶπεν· Οἶε γάρ, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, ἱκανὸν εἶναι κάλλος ἀνθρώπου ἀναγκάζειν τὸν μὴ βουλόμενον πράττειν παρὰ τὸ βέλτιστον; εἰ μέντοι, ἔφη, τοῦτο οὕτως ἐπεφύκει, πάντας ἂν ἡνάγκαζεν ὁμοίως. ὁρᾷς, ἔφη, τὸ πῦρ, ὡς πάντας ὁμοίως καίει; πέφυκε γὰρ τοιοῦτον· τῶν δὲ καλῶν τῶν μὲν ἐρῶσι τῶν δ' οὔ, καὶ ἄλλος γε ἄλλου. ἐθελούσιον γάρ, ἔφη, ἐστί, καὶ ἐρᾷ ἕκαστος ὦν ἂν βούληται· αὐτίκ', ἔφη, οὐκ ἐρᾷ ἀδελφὸς ἀδελφῆς, ἄλλος δὲ ταύτης, οὐδὲ πατὴρ θυγατρὸς, ἄλλος δὲ ταύτης· καὶ γὰρ φόβος καὶ νόμος ἱκανὸς ἔρωτα κωλύειν. εἰ δέ γ', ἔφη, νόμος τεθείη μὴ ἐσθίοντας μὴ πεινῆν

αὐτήν. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος ἔφη· |yea Μὰ Δία, πολὺ γε ἦττον,
 εἰ τοιαύτη ἐστὶν οἷαν σὺ λέγεις. τί δαί; ἔφη ὁ |young man.
 "Οτι, ἔφη, εἰ νυνὶ σοῦ ἀκούσας ὅτι καλή ἐστι πεισθήσομαι
 ἐλθεῖν θεασόμενος, οὐδὲ |altogether, |rest, οὔσης, |to fear
 |very |leisure
 μὴ πολὺ θάπτων ἐκείνη |back, again, εἴσῃ καὶ πάλιν ἐλθεῖν
 |moreover
 θεασόμενον· ἐκ δὲ τούτου |equal ἂν |disregard ὧν με δεῖ
 πράττειν καθήμην ἐκείνην θεώμενος.

Καὶ ὁ |young man ἀναγέλασας εἶπεν· Οἶε γάρ, ἔφη, ὦ
 Κῦρε, |sufficient; fit, |beauty ἀνθρώπου |force, compel τὸν μὴ
 |empowered
 βουλόμενον πράττειν παρὰ τὸ |best, , εἰ |however ἔφη,
 |noblest
 τοῦτο οὕτως ἐπεφύκει, πάντας ἂν |force, ὁμοίως.
 |compel
 ὀράς, ἔφη, τὸ πῦρ, ὡς πάντας ὁμοίως |burn , πέφυκε γὰρ
 τοιοῦτον· τῶν δὲ καλῶν τῶν μὲν ἐρώσι τῶν δ' οὔ, καὶ
 ἄλλος γε ἄλλου. |voluntary, γάρ, ἔφη, ἐστί, καὶ ἐρᾷ
 |optional
 ἕκαστος ὧν ἂν βούληται· |at once, ἔφη, οὐκ ἐρᾷ ἀδελφὸς
 |sister , ἄλλος δὲ ταύτης, οὐδὲ πατὴρ |daughter , ἄλλος δὲ
 ταύτης· καὶ γὰρ |fear καὶ νόμος |suffi- |love, |hinder,
 |cient; fit, |desire |prevent
 εἰ δέ γ', ἔφη, νόμος τεθείη μὴ ἐσθίειν, |empow- μὴ πεινῆν
 |ered

see her for yourself.”

”Say, rather, I must not,” answered Cyrus, ”if she be such as you describe.”

”And why not?” asked the young man.

”Because,” said he, ”if the mere report of her beauty could persuade me to go and gaze on her to-day, when I have not a moment to spare, I fear she would win me back again and perhaps I should neglect all I have to do, and sit and gaze at her for ever.”

At that the young man laughed outright and said:

”So you think, Cyrus, that the beauty of any human creature can compel a man to do wrong against his will? Surely if that were the nature of beauty, all men would feel its force alike. See how fire burns all men equally; it is the nature of it so to do; but these flowers of beauty, one man loves them, and another loves them not, nor does every man love the same. For love is voluntary, and each man loves what he chooses to love. The brother is not enamoured of his own sister, nor the father of his own daughter; some other man must be the lover. Reverence and law are strong enough to break the heart of passion. But if a law were passed saying, ‘Eat not, and thou shalt not starve;

*vocabulary***ἀπαλλαξείω** wish to get rid of**ἀπαλλάσσω** free from, remove; be freed, depart**ἀποδιδράσκω** escape**γοῦν** at least then**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish
~practice**διψάω** be thirsty ~dipsomaniac**δουλεύω** serve, be a slave**ἐθελούσιος** voluntary, optional**εἰκῇ** haphazardly; in vain**ἐπιχειρέω** do, try, attack ~chiral**ἔραμαι** love, aor. fall in love; long for,
covet ~erotic**ἐράω** desire sexually**ἔρω** -τος (m) love, desire ~erotic**θάλλω** to warm**θέρος** -εος (n, 3) summer ~thermos**ἱμάτιον** toga, cloth**ἰσχυρός** (ῥ) strong, forceful, violent**κλαίω** weep**λύπη** distress**νεανίσκος** (ᾱ) young man**νόσος** (f) plague, pestilence ~noisome**ποῖ** whither? how long?**ρίγέω** (ι) shudder with fear; be
flustered ~frigid**σίδηρος** iron ~siderite**στέρομαι** lack, lose**ὕπηρετώ** serve**ὕπόδημα** -τος (n, 3) sandals**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics**χειμών** -ος (m, 3) winter, storm

καὶ μὴ πίνοντας μὴ διψῆν μὴδὲ ῥίγουν τοῦ χειμῶνος
 μὴδὲ θάλλεσθαι τοῦ θέρους, οὐδεὶς ἂν νόμος δυνηθείη
 διαπράξασθαι ταῦτα πείθεσθαι ἀνθρώπους· πεφύκασι γὰρ
 ὑπὸ τούτων κρατεῖσθαι. τὸ δ' ἐρᾶν ἐθελούσιόν ἐστιν·
 ἕκαστος γοῦν τῶν καθ' ἑαυτὸν ἐρᾷ, ὥσπερ ἱματίων καὶ
 ὑποδημάτων. Πῶς οὖν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, εἰ ἐθελούσιόν ἐστι
 τὸ ἐρασθῆναι, οὐ καὶ παύσασθαι ἔστιν ὅταν τις βούληται;
 ἀλλ' ἐγώ, ἔφη, ἐώρακα καὶ κλαίοντας ὑπὸ λύπης δι'
 ἔρωτα, καὶ δουλεύοντάς γε τοῖς ἐρωμένοις καὶ μάλα κακὸν
 νομίζοντας πρὶν ἐρᾶν τὸ δουλεύειν, καὶ διδόντας γε πολλὰ
 ὧν οὐ βέλτιον αὐτοῖς στέρεσθαι, καὶ εὐχομένους ὥσπερ
 καὶ ἄλλης τινὸς νόσου ἀπαλλαγῆναι, καὶ οὐ δυναμένους
 μέντοι ἀπαλλάττεσθαι, ἀλλὰ δεδεμένους ἰσχυροτέρα τινὶ
 ἀνάγκῃ ἢ εἰ ἐν σιδήρῳ ἐδέδεντο. παρέχουσι γοῦν ἑαυτοὺς
 τοῖς ἐρωμένοις πολλὰ καὶ εἰκῇ ὑπηρετοῦντας· καὶ μέντοι
 οὐδ' ἀποδιδράσκειν ἐπιχειροῦσι, τοιαῦτα κακὰ ἔχοντες,
 ἀλλὰ καὶ φυλάττουσι τοὺς ἐρωμένους μὴ ποι ἀποδρῶσι.

Καὶ ὁ νεανίσκος εἶπε πρὸς ταῦτα· Ποιοῦσι γάρ, ἔφη,

καὶ μὴ πίνοντας μὴ |be thirsty |δὲ |shudder; |be|winter,
 |flustered |storm
 μὴδὲ |to warm τοῦ |sum- , οὐδεὶς ἂν νόμος δυνηθεῖη
 |mer
 |travel over, ac- ταῦτα πείθεσθαι ἀνθρώπους· πεφύκασι γὰρ
 |comply
 ὑπὸ τούτων κρατεῖσθαι. τὸ δ' ἐρᾶν |voluntary, ἐστίν·
 |optional
 ἕκαστος |at least then αἱ ἐαυτὸν ἐρᾶ, ὥσπερ |toga, καὶ
 |cloth
 |sandals . Πῶς οὖν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, εἰ |voluntary, ἐστι
 |optional
 τὸ |love; long for ὑ καὶ παύσασθαι ἐστίν ὅταν τις βούληται;
 ἀλλ' ἐγώ, ἔφη, ἑώρακα καὶ |weep ὑπὸ |distress δι'
 |love, , καὶ |serve, be a slave , τοῖς ἐρωμένοις καὶ μάλα κακὸν
 |desire
 νομίζοντας πρὶν ἐρᾶν τὸ |serve, be a slave ἰδόντας γε πολλὰ
 ὦν οὐ βέλτιον αὐτοῖς |lack, lose , καὶ εὐχομένους ὥσπερ
 καὶ ἄλλης τινὸς |plague ἀπαλλαγῆναι, καὶ οὐ δυναμένους
 μέντοι |free from, remove; ἀλλὰ δεδεμένους |strong, force- τινὲ
 |be freed, depart |ful, violent
 ἀνάγκη ἢ εἰ ἐν σιδήρῳ ἐδέδεντο. παρέχουσι |at least then ἰς
 τοῖς ἐρωμένοις πολλὰ καὶ |hap- |serve καὶ μέντοι
 |haz-
 οὐδ' |escape |do, try, |ardly; τοιαῦτα κακὰ ἔχοντες,
 |attack
 ἀλλὰ καὶ φυλάττουσι τοὺς ἐρωμένους μὴ ποι |vain |escape .

Καὶ ὁ |young man εἶπε πρὸς ταῦτα· Ποιοῦσι γάρ, ἔφη,

Drink not, and thou shalt not thirst; Let not cold bite thee in winter nor heat inflame thee in summer,' I say there is no law that could compel us to obey; for it is our nature to be swayed by these forces. But love is voluntary; each man loves to himself alone, and according as he chooses, just as he chooses his cloak or his sandals."

"Then," said Cyrus, "if love be voluntary, why cannot a man cease to love when he wishes? I have seen men in love," said he, "who have wept for very agony, who were the very slaves of those they loved, though before the fever took them they thought slavery the worst of evils. I have seen them make gifts of what they ill could spare, I have seen them praying, yes, praying, to be rid of their passion, as though it were any other malady, and yet unable to shake it off; they were bound hand and foot by a chain of something stronger than iron. There they stood at the beck and call of their idols, and that without rhyme or reason; and yet, poor slaves, they make no attempt to run away, in spite of all they suffer; on the contrary, they mount guard over their tyrants, for fear these should escape."

But the young man spoke in answer: "True," he said, "there are

*vocabulary***ἄθλιος** prize ~athlete**ἄθλιος** wretched ~athlete**αἰτιάομαι** blame ~etiology**ἄλλοτριος** someone else's; alien ~alien**ἀναγκάζω** force, compel**ἀναγκαῖος** coerced, coercing, slavery**ἀπαλλαγή** relief, escape**ἀπαλλάσσω** free from, remove; be freed, depart**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance**ἀποτελέω** accomplish, produce**ἄπτω** set on fire; attach; mid: touch, seize ~haptic**ἀρπάζω** carry off, seize ~harpoon**βίος** life ~biology**βιόω** live; (mp) make a living ~biology**γούν** at least then**διόπερ** therefore**ἐπειδάν** when, after**ἐπιθυμέω** (ὑ) wish, covet**ἐπιθυμία** (ὑ) desire, thing desired**ἐπιχειρέω** do, try, attack ~chiral**ἐράω** desire sexually**ἔρως** -τος (m) love, desire ~erotic**ἐφίημι** (τι) send at, let fly; mp: rush at, spring upon ~jet**ἵππεύω** ride**κλέπτω** steal**κολάζω** punish**μηχανή** machine; mechanism, way**μυρίος** (ὑ) 10,000 ~myriad**ναί** yea**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless**προσέχω** belong to, it beseems**συγγιγνώσκω** acknowledge; pardon**ὑπάγω** lead under the yoke, lead away from ~demagogue**χρυσίον** (ὑ) gold coin

ταῦτα· εἰσὶ μέντοι, ἔφη, οἱ τοιοῦτοι μοχθηροί· διόπερ οἶμαι
 καὶ εὔχονται μὲν αἰεὶ ὡς ἄθλιοι ὄντες ἀποθανεῖν, μυρίων δ'
 οὐσῶν μηχανῶν ἀπαλλαγῆς τοῦ βίου οὐκ ἀπαλλάττονται.
 οἱ αὐτοὶ δέ γε οὗτοι καὶ κλέπτειν ἐπιχειροῦσι καὶ οὐκ
 ἀπέχονται τῶν ἀλλοτρίων, ἀλλ' ἐπειδάν τι ἀρπάσωσιν
 ἢ κλέψωσιν, ὁρᾷς ὅτι σὺ πρῶτος, ὡς οὐκ ἀναγκαῖον ὄν
 τὸ κλέπτειν, αἰτιᾷ τὸν κλέπτοντα καὶ ἀρπάζοντα, καὶ
 οὐ συγγιγνώσκεις, ἀλλὰ κολάζεις; οὕτω μέντοι, ἔφη, καὶ
 οἱ καλοὶ οὐκ ἀναγκάζουσιν ἐρᾶν ἐαυτῶν οὐδ' ἐφίεσθαι
 ἀνθρώπους ὧν μὴ δεῖ, ἀλλὰ τὰ μοχθηρὰ ἀνθρώπια
 πασῶν οἶμαι τῶν ἐπιθυμιῶν ἀκρατὴ ἔστι, κᾶπειτα ἔρωτα
 αἰτιῶνται· οἱ δέ γε καλοὶ καγαθοὶ ἐπιθυμοῦντες καὶ
 χρυσίου καὶ ἵππων ἀγαθῶν καὶ γυναικῶν καλῶν, ὅμως
 πάντων τούτων δύνανται ἀπέχεσθαι ὥστε μὴ ἄπτεσθαι
 αὐτῶν παρὰ τὸ δίκαιον. ἐγὼ γοῦν, ἔφη, ταύτην ἐωρακὼς
 καὶ πάνυ καλῆς δοξάσης μοι εἶναι ὅμως καὶ παρὰ σοί εἰμι
 καὶ ἱππεύω καὶ τᾶλλα τὰ ἐμοὶ προσήκοντα ἀποτελῶ. Ναὶ
 μὰ Δί', ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος· ἴσως γὰρ θάπτον ἀπῆλθες ἢ ἐν

ταῦτα· εἰςὶ μέντοι, ἔφη, οἱ τοιοῦτοι μοχθηροί· |therefore ἵμαι
 καὶ εὖχονται μὲν αἰεὶ ὥς ἄθλιοι ὄντες ἀποθανεῖν, μυρίων δ'
 οὐσῶν |machine; |relief, escape τοῦ βίου οὐκ |free from, remove;
 |mecha- |be freed, depart
 οἱ αὐτοὶ δὲ γὰρ οὗτοι καὶ |steal |do, try, attack καὶ οὐκ
 |ward off, drive off |someone , ἀλλ' |when, τι |carry off, seize
 |refrain, be at some |else's; alien |after
 |distance
 ἢ |steal , ὅρᾳς ὅτι σὺ πρῶτος, ὥς οὐκ ἀναγκαῖον ὄν
 τὸ |steal , |blame τὸν |steal καὶ |carry off, seize καὶ
 οὐ |acknowledge; , ἀλλὰ |punish , οὕτω μέντοι, ἔφη, καὶ
 |pardon
 οἱ καλοὶ οὐκ |force, compel ἐρᾶν ἑαυτῶν οὐδ' |send flying at
 ἀνθρώπους ὧν μὴ δεῖ, ἀλλὰ τὰ μοχθηρὰ ἀνθρώπια
 πασῶν οἶμαι τῶν ἐπιθυμιῶν ἀκρατὴ ἐστὶ, κἄπειτα |love,
 |blame οἱ δὲ γὰρ καλοὶ κἀγαθοὶ |wish, covet καὶ
 |gold coin καὶ ἵππων ἀγαθῶν καὶ γυναικῶν καλῶν, ὅμως
 πάντων τούτων δύνανται |ward off, drive off, refrain, |πτεσθαι
 |be at some distance
 αὐτῶν παρὰ τὸ δίκαιον. ἐγὼ |at least ἤ then αὐτήν ἐωρακὼς
 καὶ πάνυ καλῆς δοξάσης μοι εἶναι ὅμως καὶ παρὰ σοί εἰμι
 καὶ |ride καὶ τᾶλλα τὰ ἐμοὶ |belong to, it be- |accomplish, |yea
 |seems |produce
 μὰ Δι', ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος· ἴσως γὰρ θάττον ἀπηλθες ἢ ἐν

such men, but they are worthless scamps, and that is why, though they are always praying to die and be put out of their misery and though ten thousand avenues lie open by which to escape from life, they never take one of them. These are the very men who are prepared to steal and purloin the goods of others, and yet you know yourself, when they do it, you are the first to say stealing is not done under compulsion, and you blame the thief and the robber; you do not pity him, you punish him. In the same way, beautiful creatures do not compel others to love them or pursue them when it is wrong, but these good-for- nothing scoundrels have no self-control, and then they lay the blame on love. But the nobler type of man, the true gentleman, beautiful and brave, though he desire gold and splendid horses and lovely women, can still abstain from each and all alike, and lay no finger on them against the law of honour. Take my own case," he added, "I have seen this lady myself, and passing fair I found her, and yet here I stand before you, and am still your trooper and can still perform my duty."

"I Do not deny it," said Cyrus; "probably you came away in

*vocabulary***αἶθω** set on fire ~ether**ἀναλάμπω** flame up**ἄπτω** set on fire; attach; mid: touch, seize ~haptic**ἀχάριστος** ungracious, unpleasant
~eucharist**διαλύω** break up; relax, weaken**εἴσειμι** go in; come in range; come to mind ~ion**εἰσοράω** look at, see; treat with respect
~panorama**ἐκὼν** willingly, on purpose; giving in too easily**ἐνδιατρίβω** (ιῑ) spent time, keep doing**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee**ἔρως** -τος (m) love, desire ~erotic**θαρρέω** be of good heart**θαρσέω** be of good heart**θάρσος** boldness, over-boldness**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider
~theater**θεραπεύω** help, serve ~therapy**θιγγάνω** touch**καίω** burn ~caustic**μηδέποτε** never**νεανίσκος** (ᾱ) young man**ξύλον** piece of wood ~xylophone**οἰκέτης** -ου (m, f) household; house slave**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless**ὄψις** ὄψεως (f) sight, view

~thanatopsis

συμβουλευώ give advice; (mid) consult
~volunteer**συσκευάζω** pack up**τοίνυν** well, then**ὕφάπτω** set on fire from underneath**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics**χαρίζομαι** gratify ~charisma

ὅσῳ χρόνῳ ἔρως πέφυκε συσκευάζεσθαι ἄνθρωπον. καὶ πυρὸς γάρ τοι ἔστι θιγόντα μὴ εὐθὺς καίεσθαι καὶ τὰ ξύλα οὐκ εὐθὺς ἀναλάμπει· ὅμως δ' ἔγωγε οὔτε πυρὸς ἐκὼν εἶναι ἄπτομαι οὔτε τοὺς καλοὺς εἰσορῶ. οὐδέ γε σοὶ συμβουλεύω, ἔφη, ὦ Ἀράσπα, ἐν τοῖς καλοῖς ἐὰν τὴν ὄψιν ἐνδιατρίβειν· ὥς τὸ μὲν πῦρ τοὺς ἀπτομένους καίει, οἱ δὲ καλοὶ καὶ τοὺς ἄπωθεν θεωμένους ὑφάπτουσιν, ὥστε αἰθεσθαι τῷ ἔρωτι. Θάρρει, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε· οὐδ' ἐὰν μηδέποτε παύσωμαι θεώμενος, οὐ μὴ κρατηθῶ ὥστε ποιεῖν τι ὧν μὴ χρὴ ποιεῖν. Κάλλιστα, ἔφη, λέγεις· φύλαττε τοῖνυν, ἔφη, ὥσπερ σε κελεύω καὶ ἐπιμελοῦ αὐτῆς· ἴσως γὰρ ἂν πάνυ ἡμῖν ἐν καιρῷ γένοιτο αὕτη ἡ γυνή. τότε μὲν δὴ ταῦτ' εἰπόντες διελύθησαν.

Ὁ Δὲ νεανίσκος ἅμα μὲν ὁρῶν καλὴν τὴν γυναῖκα, ἅμα δὲ αἰσθανόμενος τὴν καλοκάγαθίαν αὐτῆς, ἅμα δὲ θεραπεύων αὐτὴν καὶ οἰόμενος χαρίζεσθαι αὐτῇ, ἅμα δὲ αἰσθανόμενος οὐκ ἀχάριστον οὖσαν, ἀλλ' ἐπιμελομένην διὰ τῶν αὐτῆς οἰκετῶν ὥς καὶ εἰσιόντι εἶη αὐτῷ τὰ

ὅσῳ χρόνῳ |love, πέφυκε |pack up ἄνθρωπον. καὶ
 |desire
 πρὸς γάρ τοι ἔστι |touch μὴ εὐθὺς |burn καὶ τὰ
 |piece of wood ἧς |flame up |anyway, nevertheless ἔτι πυρὸς
 |willingly αἱ ἄπτομαι οὔτε τοὺς καλοὺς |look at, see; treat /ε
 |with respect
 σοὶ |give advice; ἔφη, ὦ Ἀράσπα, ἐν τοῖς καλοῖς ἐὰν
 |(mid) consult
 τὴν |sight |spent time, ὡς τὸ μὲν πῦρ τοὺς ἀπτομένους
 |keep doing
 |burn, οἱ δὲ καλοὶ καὶ τοὺς ἄπωθεν θεωμένους |set on fire from
 |underneath
 ὥστε |set on fire τῷ |love, Θάρρει, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε· οὐδ'
 |desire
 ἐὰν |never |stop θεωμένος, οὐ μὴ κρατηθῶ ὥστε
 ποιεῖν τι ὧν μὴ χρὴ ποιεῖν. Κάλλιστα, ἔφη, λέγεις·
 φύλαττε |well, then ἔφη, ὥσπερ σε κελεύω καὶ |take care
 |of, oversee
 αὐτῆς· ἴσως γὰρ ἂν |altogether, very καιρῷ γένοιτο αὕτη ἡ
 γυνή. τότε μὲν δὴ ταυτ' εἰπόντες |break up; re-
 |lax, weaken
 Ὁ Δὲ |young man ἅμα μὲν ὁρῶν καλὴν τὴν γυναῖκα,
 ἅμα δὲ |perceive τὴν καλοκάγαθίαν αὐτῆς, ἅμα δὲ
 |help, serve αὐτὴν καὶ οἰόμενος |gratify αὐτῇ, ἅμα δὲ
 |perceive οὐκ |ungracious, οὔσαν, ἀλλ' ἐπιμελομένην
 |unpleasant
 διὰ τῶν αὐτῆς |household; καὶ |go in εἷη αὐτῷ τὰ
 |house slave

time. Love takes a little while to seize and carry off his victim. A man may touch fire for a moment and not be burnt; a log will not kindle all at once; and yet for all that, I am not disposed to play with fire or look on beauty. You yourself, my friend, if you will follow my advice, will not let your own eyes linger there too long; burning fuel will only burn those who touch it, but beauty can fire the beholder from afar, until he is all aflame with love.”

”Oh, fear me not, Cyrus,” answered he; ”if I looked till the end of time I could not be made to do what ill befits a man.”

”A Fair answer,” said Cyrus. ”Guard her then, as I bid you, and be careful of her. This lady may be of service to us all one day.”

With these words they parted. But afterwards, after the young man saw from day to day how marvellously fair the woman was, and how noble and gracious in herself, after he took care of her, and fancied that she was not insensible to what he did, after she set herself, through her attendants, to care for his wants and see that all things were ready for him when he came in,

*vocabulary***ἄημι** blow**αἰσχύνω** (ῶ) spoil, disgrace, disfigure, mar**ἁλίσκομαι** be captured ~helix**ἀσθενέω** be weak, sick**ἐθελοντής** -οῦ (m, 1) a volunteer**ἐνδέω** tie to, entangle; lack**ἐπικαίριος** at a fitting time; serious; vital**ἔρως** -τος (m) love, desire ~erotic**θαυμαστός** wonderful; admirable**καταμένω** stay; not change**κινδυνεύω** encounter danger; (+inf)

there is a danger that

ὅμως anyway, nevertheless**οὐπώ** no longer**πότε** when?**σαφής** clear, understandable**συγκαλέω** call together ~gallo**συνέρχομαι** come together**τιμάω** (ῖ) honor, exalt**τιμόω** honor, exalt**τοιόσδε** such**ὑπηρετέω** serve**χαρίζομαι** gratify ~charisma

δέοντα καὶ εἴ ποτε ἀσθενήσειεν, ὥς μηδενὸς ἐνδέοιτο, ἐκ πάντων τούτων ἠλίσκετο ἔρωτι, καὶ ἴσως οὐδὲν θαυμαστὸν ἔπασχε. καὶ ταῦτα μὲν δὴ οὕτως ἐπράττετο.

Βουλόμενος δὲ ὁ Κῦρος ἐθελοντὰς μένειν μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ τοὺς τε Μῆδους καὶ τοὺς συμμάχους, συνεκάλεσε πάντας τοὺς ἐπικαιρίους· ἐπεὶ δὲ συνῆλθον, ἔλεξε τοιάδε. Ἄνδρες Μῆδοι καὶ πάντες οἱ παρόντες, ἐγὼ ὑμᾶς οἶδα σαφῶς ὅτι οὔτε χρημάτων δεόμενοι σὺν ἐμοὶ ἐξήλθετε οὔτε Κναξάρη νομίζοντες τοῦτο ὑπηρετεῖν, ἀλλ' ἐμοὶ βουλόμενοι τοῦτο χαρίζεσθαι καὶ ἐμὲ τιμῶντες νυκτοπορεῖν καὶ κινδυνεύειν σὺν ἐμοὶ ἠθελήσατε. καὶ χάριν τούτων ἐγὼ ὑμῖν ἔχω μὲν, εἰ μὴ ἀδικῶ· ἀποδιδόναι δὲ ἀξίαν οὕπω δύναμιν ἔχειν μοι δοκῶ. καὶ τοῦτο μὲν οὐκ αἰσχύνομαι λέγων· τὸ δ' Ἐὰν μένητε παρ' ἐμοί, ἀποδώσω, τοῦτο, εὖ ἴστε, ἔφη, αἰσχυνοίμην ἂν εἰπεῖν· νομίζω γὰρ ἂν ἑμαυτὸν εὐοκέναι λέγοντι ταῦτα ἔνεκα τοῦ ὑμᾶς μᾶλλον ἐθέλειν παρ' ἐμοὶ καταμένειν. ἀντὶ δὲ τούτου τάδε λέγω· ἐγὼ γὰρ ὑμῖν, κἂν ἤδη ἀπίητε Κναξάρη πειθόμενοι, ὅμως, ἂν ἀγαθόν

δέοντα καὶ εἴ ποτε |be weak, sick , ὥς μηδενὸς |tie to
 ἐκ πάντων τούτων |be captured |love, , καὶ |equal οὐδὲν
 |wonderful; |admirable ἔπασχε. καὶ ταῦτα μὲν δὴ οὕτως ἐπράττετο.
 Βουλόμενος δὲ ὁ Κῦρος |a volunteer μένειν μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ τούς
 τε Μήδους καὶ τοὺς συμμάχους, |call together πάντας τοὺς
 |at a fitting time; |serious; vi-|come together ἔξε |such Ἄνδρες
 |tal
 Μῆδοι καὶ πάντες οἱ παρόντες, ἐγὼ ὑμᾶς οἶδα |clear, under-
 |standable
 οὔτε |possession, |money, |business οὐδὲ μὲνοι σὺν ἐμοὶ ἐξήλθετε οὔτε Κναζάρη
 |consider |customary; |serve , ἀλλ' ἐμοὶ βουλόμενοι τοῦτο
 |believe
 |gratify καὶ ἐμὲ τιμῶντες νυκτοπορεῖν καὶ |encounter danger; (+inf)
 |there is a danger that
 σὺν ἐμοὶ ἠθελήσατε. καὶ |grace τούτων ἐγὼ ὑμῖν ἔχω
 μέν, εἰ μὴ |be, |do |repay δὲ ἀξίαν |no longer ἄμιν ἔχειν
 |wrong;
 μοι δοκῶ. |wrong |someone καὶ τοῦτο μὲν οὐκ |spoil, |disgrace λέγων· τὸ δ'
 Ἐὰν μένητε παρ' ἐμοί, |repay , τοῦτο, εὖ ἴστε, ἔφη,
 |spoil, disgrace ἂν εἰπείν· |consider , |customary; |believe ἐμαυτὸν |seem, |seem
 |likely, |beseem
 λέγοντι ταῦτα |because, that ἡμᾶς μᾶλλον ἐθέλειν παρ' ἐμοὶ
 |stay; not change ἵτι δὲ τούτου τάδε λέγω· ἐγὼ γὰρ ὑμῖν, καὶ
 ἤδη |be absent, |go ξάρη πειθόμενοι, |anyway, |nevertheless
 |away, |return

and that he should lack for nothing if ever he were sick, after all this, love entered his heart and took possession, and it may be there was nothing surprising in his fate. So at least it was.

Meanwhile Cyrus, who was anxious that the Medes and the allies should stay with him of their own free choice, called a meeting of their leading men, and when they were come together he spoke as follows:

"Sons of the Medes and gentlemen all, I am well aware it was not from need of money that you went out with me, nor yet in order to serve Cyaxares; you came for my sake. You marched with me by night, you ran into danger at my side, simply to do me honour. Unless I were a miscreant, I could not but be grateful for such kindness. But I must confess that at present I lack the ability to make a fit requital. This I am not ashamed to tell you, but I would feel ashamed to add, 'If you will stay with me, I will be sure to repay you,' for that would look as though I spoke to bribe you into remaining. Therefore I will not say that; I will say instead, 'Even if you listen to Cyaxares and go back to-day, I will

vocabulary

αἰσχύνω (ῶ) spoil, disgrace, disfigure, mar

ἀλίσκομαι be captured ~helix

ἀπολείπω leave behind, fail ~eclipse

ἀπολιμπάνω leave behind, fail

εἰκῇ haphazardly; in vain

ἐμπεδόω confirm, ratify

ἐντεῦθεν thence

ἐξιμι go forth; is possible ~ion

ἐξίημι send forth, allow forth ~jet

ἐπαινέω concur, praise, advise

ἔρως -τος (m) love, desire ~erotic

ἡγεμών -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide, chief ~hegemony

μέλισσα bee

μεταμέλομαι (impers.+dat.) cause regret to; (mp) regret

ὅπου where

ὄρκος what is sworn by, witness, oath ~orc

πειράζω test a person ~pierce

περιφανής conspicuous, notorious

ποῖ whither? how long?

προδίδωμι betray

σμῆνος -ους (n, 3) swarm

συγγενής inborn, kin to

ὑπάγω lead under the yoke, lead away from ~demagogue

φύσις -εως (f) nature (of a thing)

~physics

φύω produce, beget; clasp ~physics

τι πράξω, πειράσομαι οὕτω ποιεῖν ὥστε καὶ ὑμᾶς ἐμὲ ἐπαινέιν. οὐ γὰρ δὴ αὐτός γε ἄπειμι, ἀλλὰ καὶ Ὑρκανίοις τοὺς ὄρκους καὶ τὰς δεξιὰς ἅς ἔδωκα ἐμπεδώσω καὶ οὐποτε τούτους προδιδούς ἀλώσομαι, καὶ τῷ νῦν διδόντι Γωβρύα καὶ τείχη ἡμῖν καὶ χώραν καὶ δύναμιν πειράσομαι ποιεῖν μὴ μεταμελήσαι τῆς πρὸς ἐμὲ ὁδοῦ. καὶ τὸ μέγιστον δὴ, θεῶν οὕτω διδόντων περιφανῶς ἀγαθὰ καὶ φοβοίμην ἂν αὐτοὺς καὶ αἰσχυνοίμην ἀπολιπὼν ταῦτα εἰκὴ ἀπελθεῖν. ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν οὕτως, ἔφη, ποιήσω· ὑμεῖς δὲ ὅπως γινώσκετε οὕτω καὶ ποιεῖτε, καὶ ἐμοὶ εἶπατε ὅτι ἂν ὑμῖν δοκῇ. ὁ μὲν οὕτως εἶπε.

Πρῶτος δ' ὁ φήσας ποτὲ συγγενὴς τοῦ Κύρου εἶναι εἶπεν· Ἄλλ' ἐγὼ μὲν, ἔφη, ὦ βασιλεῦ· βασιλεὺς γὰρ ἔμοιγε δοκεῖς σὺ φύσει πεφυκέναι οὐδὲν ἥττον ἢ ὁ ἐν τῷ σμήνει φνόμενος τῶν μελιττῶν ἡγεμών· ἐκείνῳ τε γὰρ αἱ μέλιτται ἐκοῦσαι μὲν πείθονται, ὅπου δ' ἂν μένη, οὐδεμία ἐντεῦθεν ἀπέρχεται· ἐὰν δέ ποι ἐξή, οὐδεμία αὐτοῦ ἀπολείπεται· οὕτω δεινός τις ἔρως αὐταῖς τοῦ

τι πράξω, πειράσομαι οὕτω ποιεῖν ὥστε καὶ ὑμᾶς ἐμέ

|concur . οὐ γὰρ δὴ αὐτός γε |be absent, go away, return ἔτι καὶ Ὑρκανίοις

τοὺς |oath καὶ τὰς |right-hand ἔδωκα |confirm, ratify καὶ

οὐποτε τούτους |betray |be captured , καὶ τῷ νῦν διδόντι

Γωβρύᾳ καὶ |outdoor, wall αἱ |place καὶ δύναμιν πειράσομαι

ποιεῖν μὴ μεταμελήσαι τῆς πρὸς ἐμέ ὁδοῦ. καὶ τὸ

μέγιστον δὴ, θεῶν οὕτω διδόντων |conspicuous, notorious ἀγαθὰ καὶ

|scare, scare ἂν αὐτοὺς καὶ |spoil, disgrace ἀπολιπὼν ταῦτα away

|haphazardly; in vain, ὃ μὲν οὖν οὕτως, ἔφη, ποιήσω· ὑμεῖς

δὲ ὅπως γινώσκετε οὕτω καὶ ποιεῖτε, καὶ ἐμοὶ εἶπατε ὅ

τι ἂν ὑμῖν δοκῇ. ὁ μὲν οὕτως εἶπε.

Πρῶτος δ' ὁ φήσας ποτὲ |inborn, kin to τῷ Κύρου εἶναι

εἶπεν· Ἄλλ' ἐγὼ μέν, ἔφη, ὦ βασιλεῦ· βασιλεὺς γὰρ

ἔμοιγε δοκεῖς σὺ φύσει πεφυκέναι οὐδὲν ἡττον ἢ ὁ ἐν

τῷ |swarm |produce, τῶν |bee |leader ἐκείνῳ τε beget; clasp

γὰρ αἱ |bee ἐκοῦσαι μὲν πείθονται, |where δ' ἂν μένη,

οὐδεμία |thence |go away, depart ἃν δέ ποι ἐξίῃ, οὐδεμία

αὐτοῦ ἀπολείπεται· οὕτω δεινός τις |love, desire ἡ ταῖς τοῦ

still act so that you shall praise me, I will not forget you in the day of my good fortune.’ For myself, I will never go back; I cannot, for I must confirm my oath to the Hyrcanians and the pledge I gave them; they are my friends and I shall never be found a traitor to them. Moreover, I am bound to Gobryas, who has offered us the use of his castle, his territory, and his power; and I would not have him repent that he came to me. Last of all, and more than all, when the great gods have showered such blessings on us, I fear them and I reverence them too much to turn my back on all they have given us. This, then, is what I myself must do; it is for you to decide as you think best, and you will acquaint me with your decision.”

So he spoke, and the first to answer was the Mede who had claimed kinship with Cyrus in the old days.

“Listen to me,” he said, “O king! For king I take you to be by right of nature; even as the king of the hive among the bees, whom all the bees obey and take for their leader of their own free will; where he stays they stay also, not one of them departs, and where he goes, not one of them fails to follow; so deep a desire is in them to be ruled by him.

*vocabulary***ἀκολουθέω** follow**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not
needing ~Sp. sin**ἀνέχω** raise; mid: endure, submit**ἀπαλείφω** erase**ἀπολείπω** leave behind, fail ~eclipse**ἀποστρέφω** turn back, turn off course
~atrophy**δεῦρο** here, come here!**διάκειμαι** be in a condition**διακέομαι** repair**ἐγγίγνομαι** live in ~genus**ἐθελούσιος** voluntary, optional**ἐκὼν** willingly, on purpose; giving in
too easily**ἐπιθυμέω** (ὀ) wish, covet**εὐεργετέω** be a benefactor**θαρρέω** be of good heart**θαρσέω** be of good heart**καρτερέω** be patient**μήποτε** absolutely never**οἴκαδε** homeward ~economics**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless**ὀρμέω** be anchored**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon,
recommend, encourage**παραπλήσιος** similar to**Πέρσης** Persian**σιωπάω** be silent**στρατεία** expedition, campaign**συνέπομαι** go along with ~sequel**σχεδόν** near, approximately at
~ischemia

ἄρχεσθαι ὑπ' ἐκείνου ἐγγίγνεται. καὶ πρὸς σέ δέ μοι
δοκοῦσι παραπλησίως πως οἱ ἄνθρωποι οὕτω διακείσθαι.
καὶ γὰρ εἰς Πέρσας ὅτε παρ' ἡμῶν ἀπήεις, τίς Μήδων
ἢ νέος ἢ γέρων σοῦ ἀπελείφθη τὸ μή σοι ἀκολουθεῖν
ἔστε Ἀστυάγης ἡμᾶς ἀπέστρεψεν; ἐπειδὴ δ' ἐκ Περσῶν
βοηθὸς ἡμῖν ὠρμήθης, σχεδὸν αὖ ἐωρῶμεν τοὺς φίλους
σου πάντας ἐθελουσίους συνεπομένους. ὅτε δ' αὖ τῆς
δεῦρο στρατείας ἐπεθύμησας, πάντες σοι Μῆδοι ἐκόντες
ἠκολούθησαν. νῦν δ' αὖ οὕτως ἔχομεν ὥς σὺν μὲν σοὶ
ὅμως καὶ ἐν τῇ πολεμίᾳ ὄντες θαρροῦμεν, ἄνευ δέ σοῦ
καὶ οἴκαδε ἀπιέναι φοβούμεθα. οἱ μὲν οὖν ἄλλοι ὅπως
ποιήσουσιν αὐτοὶ ἐροῦσιν· ἐγὼ δέ, ὦ Κῦρε, καὶ ὦν ἐγὼ
κρατῶ καὶ μενοῦμεν παρὰ σοὶ καὶ ὀρώντες σέ ἀνεξόμεθα
καὶ καρτερήσομεν ὑπὸ σοῦ εὐεργετούμενοι.

Ἐπὶ τούτῳ ἔλεξεν ὁ Τιγράνης ὧδε· Σὺ, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε,
μήποτε θαυμάσης ἂν ἐγὼ σιωπῶ· ἢ γὰρ ψυχὴ, ἔφη, οὐχ
ὥς βουλευσούσα παρεσκεύασται ἀλλ' ὥς ποιήσουσα ὅ τι
ἂν παραγγέλλης. ὁ δὲ Ὑρκάνιος εἶπεν· Ἄλλ' ἐγὼ

ἄρχεσθαι ὑπ' ἐκείνου |live in καὶ πρὸς σέ δέ μοι
 δοκοῦσι |similar to |somehow ἄνθρωποι οὕτω διακεῖσθαι.
 καὶ γὰρ εἰς Πέρσας ὅτε παρ' ἡμῶν |be absent, go Μήδων
 |away, return
 ἢ νέος ἢ |old; old man ἀπελείφθη τὸ μή σοι |follow
 ἔστε Ἀστυάγης ἡμᾶς |turn back , ἐπειδὴ δ' ἐκ Περσῶν
 βοηθὸς ἡμῖν ὠρμήθης, |about αὐτὸν ἐωρῶμεν τοὺς φίλους
 σου πάντας |voluntary, |go along with ὅτε δ' αὐτῇς
 |optional
 |here, |expedition, |wish, covet , πάντες σοι Μῆδοι |willingly
 |come |campaign
 |here!
 |follow νῦν δ' αὐτὸς οὕτως ἔχομεν ὥς σὺν μὲν σοὶ
 |anyway, nevertheless... λεμῖα ὄντες θαρροῦμεν, |away from; not having;
 |not needing
 καὶ |home- |be absent, go ζούμεθα. οἱ μὲν οὖν ἄλλοι ὅπως
 |ward |away, return
 ποιήσουσιν αὐτοὶ ἐροῦσιν· ἐγὼ δέ, ὦ Κῦρε, καὶ ὦν ἐγὼ
 |rule καὶ μενοῦμεν παρὰ σοὶ καὶ ὀρώντες σέ |raise;
 |endure
 καὶ |be patient ὑπὸ σοῦ |be a benefactor .
 Ἐπὶ τούτῳ ἔλεξεν ὁ Τιγράνης |thus Σύ, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε,
 |absolutely|marvel ἂν ἐγὼ |be silent ἢ γὰρ ψυχὴ, ἔφη, οὐχ
 |never
 ὥς | (mp) to deliber- |prepare, render ἀλλ' ὥς ποιήσουσα ὅτι
 |ate
 ἂν |transmit; order, summon, |recommend, encourage
 |recommmend, encourage

Even thus, I believe, do our men feel towards you. Do you remember the day you left us to go home to Persia? Was there one of us, young or old, who did not follow you until Astyages turned us back? And later, when you returned to bring us aid, did we not see for ourselves how your friends poured after you? And again, when you had set your heart on this expedition, we know that the Medes flocked to your standard with one consent. To-day we have learnt to feel that even in an enemy's country we may be of good heart if you are with us, but, without you, we should be afraid even to return to our homes. The rest may speak for themselves, and tell you how they will act, but for myself, Cyrus, and for those under me, I say we will stand by you; we shall not grow weary of gazing at you, and we will continue to endure your benefits."

Thereupon Tigranes spoke:

"Do not wonder, Cyrus, if I am silent now. The soul within me is ready, not to offer counsel, but to do your bidding." And the Hyrcanian chieftain said, "For my part, if

*vocabulary***αἰτέω** ask for ~etiology**άνθρωπινος** human**άποτρέπω** divert from ~trophy**άρκέω** satisfy; ward off, defend; suffice**δαίμων** -ονος (m, 3) a god, fate, doom
~demon**διαλαμβάνω** distribute**έξάγω** lead out ~demagogue**έπεύχομαι** exult (over); pray ~vow**έπιβουλή** a plot, scheme ~volunteer**εὐδαίμων** blessed with a good genius**ήγεμών** -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide,
chief ~hegemony**ήδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism**οἶκαδε** homeward ~economics**ὀμνυμι** (ὀ) swear**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle
~hoplite**Πέρσης** Persian**πλουτίζω** enrich**πρέπω** be conspicuous, preeminent
~refurbish**σκηνή** tent; stage**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military
unit**τιμάω** (τι) honor, exalt**τιμόω** honor, exalt**τοιόσδε** such**ὕπάγω** lead under the yoke, lead away
from ~demagogue**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch
~phylactery

μέν, ὦ Μῆδοι, εἰ νῦν ἀπέλθοιτε, δαίμονος ἂν φαίην
 τὴν ἐπιβουλὴν εἶναι τὸ μὴ ἐᾶσαι ὑμᾶς μέγα εὐδαίμονας
 γενέσθαι· ἀνθρωπίνῃ δὲ γνώμῃ τίς ἂν ἢ φευγόντων
 πολεμίων ἀποτρέποιτο ἢ ὅπλα παραδιδόντων οὐκ ἂν
 λαμβάνοι ἢ ἑαυτοὺς διδόντων καὶ τὰ ἑαυτῶν οὐκ ἂν
 δέχοιτο, ἄλλως τε καὶ τοῦ ἡγεμόνος ἡμῖν ὄντος τοιούτου
 ὃς ἐμοὶ δοκεῖ, ὡς ὄμνυμι ὑμῖν πάντας τοὺς θεούς, εὖ ποιῶν
 ἡμᾶς μᾶλλον ἥδεσθαι ἢ ἑαυτὸν πλουτίζων. ἐπὶ τούτῳ
 πάντες οἱ Μῆδοι τοιάδ' ἔλεγον· Σὺ, ὦ Κῦρε, καὶ ἐξήγαγες
 ἡμᾶς καὶ οἴκαδε ὅταν ἀπιέναι καιρὸς δοκῇ, σὺν σοὶ ἡμᾶς
 ἄγε. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ταῦτα ἀκούσας ἐπηύξατο· Ἄλλ', ὦ Ζεῦ
 μέγιστε, αἰτοῦμαί σε, δὸς τοὺς ἐμὲ τιμῶντας νικῆσαί με εὖ
 ποιῶντα. ἐκ τούτου ἐκέλευσε τοὺς μὲν ἄλλους φυλακὰς
 καταστήσαντας ἀμφ' αὐτοὺς ἤδη ἔχειν, τοὺς δὲ Πέρσας
 διαλαβεῖν τὰς σκηνάς, τοῖς μὲν ἱππεῦσι τὰς τούτοις
 πρεπούσας, τοῖς δὲ πεζοῖς τὰς τούτοις ἀρκούσας· καὶ
 οὕτω καταστήσασθαι ὅπως ποιῶντες οἱ ἐν ταῖς σκηναῖς
 πάντα τὰ δέοντα φέρωσιν εἰς τὰς τάξεις τοῖς Πέρσαις

μέν, ὦ Μῆδοι, εἰ νῦν ἀπέλθοιτε, | a god, fate, doom, ¹ ² ³ ⁴ ⁵ ⁶ ⁷ ⁸ ⁹ ¹⁰ ¹¹ ¹² ¹³ ¹⁴ ¹⁵ ¹⁶ ¹⁷ ¹⁸ ¹⁹ ²⁰ ²¹ ²² ²³ ²⁴ ²⁵ ²⁶ ²⁷ ²⁸ ²⁹ ³⁰ ³¹ ³² ³³ ³⁴ ³⁵ ³⁶ ³⁷ ³⁸ ³⁹ ⁴⁰ ⁴¹ ⁴² ⁴³ ⁴⁴ ⁴⁵ ⁴⁶ ⁴⁷ ⁴⁸ ⁴⁹ ⁵⁰ ⁵¹ ⁵² ⁵³ ⁵⁴ ⁵⁵ ⁵⁶ ⁵⁷ ⁵⁸ ⁵⁹ ⁶⁰ ⁶¹ ⁶² ⁶³ ⁶⁴ ⁶⁵ ⁶⁶ ⁶⁷ ⁶⁸ ⁶⁹ ⁷⁰ ⁷¹ ⁷² ⁷³ ⁷⁴ ⁷⁵ ⁷⁶ ⁷⁷ ⁷⁸ ⁷⁹ ⁸⁰ ⁸¹ ⁸² ⁸³ ⁸⁴ ⁸⁵ ⁸⁶ ⁸⁷ ⁸⁸ ⁸⁹ ⁹⁰ ⁹¹ ⁹² ⁹³ ⁹⁴ ⁹⁵ ⁹⁶ ⁹⁷ ⁹⁸ ⁹⁹ ¹⁰⁰ ¹⁰¹ ¹⁰² ¹⁰³ ¹⁰⁴ ¹⁰⁵ ¹⁰⁶ ¹⁰⁷ ¹⁰⁸ ¹⁰⁹ ¹¹⁰ ¹¹¹ ¹¹² ¹¹³ ¹¹⁴ ¹¹⁵ ¹¹⁶ ¹¹⁷ ¹¹⁸ ¹¹⁹ ¹²⁰ ¹²¹ ¹²² ¹²³ ¹²⁴ ¹²⁵ ¹²⁶ ¹²⁷ ¹²⁸ ¹²⁹ ¹³⁰ ¹³¹ ¹³² ¹³³ ¹³⁴ ¹³⁵ ¹³⁶ ¹³⁷ ¹³⁸ ¹³⁹ ¹⁴⁰ ¹⁴¹ ¹⁴² ¹⁴³ ¹⁴⁴ ¹⁴⁵ ¹⁴⁶ ¹⁴⁷ ¹⁴⁸ ¹⁴⁹ ¹⁵⁰ ¹⁵¹ ¹⁵² ¹⁵³ ¹⁵⁴ ¹⁵⁵ ¹⁵⁶ ¹⁵⁷ ¹⁵⁸ ¹⁵⁹ ¹⁶⁰ ¹⁶¹ ¹⁶² ¹⁶³ ¹⁶⁴ ¹⁶⁵ ¹⁶⁶ ¹⁶⁷ ¹⁶⁸ ¹⁶⁹ ¹⁷⁰ ¹⁷¹ ¹⁷² ¹⁷³ ¹⁷⁴ ¹⁷⁵ ¹⁷⁶ ¹⁷⁷ ¹⁷⁸ ¹⁷⁹ ¹⁸⁰ ¹⁸¹ ¹⁸² ¹⁸³ ¹⁸⁴ ¹⁸⁵ ¹⁸⁶ ¹⁸⁷ ¹⁸⁸ ¹⁸⁹ ¹⁹⁰ ¹⁹¹ ¹⁹² ¹⁹³ ¹⁹⁴ ¹⁹⁵ ¹⁹⁶ ¹⁹⁷ ¹⁹⁸ ¹⁹⁹ ²⁰⁰ ²⁰¹ ²⁰² ²⁰³ ²⁰⁴ ²⁰⁵ ²⁰⁶ ²⁰⁷ ²⁰⁸ ²⁰⁹ ²¹⁰ ²¹¹ ²¹² ²¹³ ²¹⁴ ²¹⁵ ²¹⁶ ²¹⁷ ²¹⁸ ²¹⁹ ²²⁰ ²²¹ ²²² ²²³ ²²⁴ ²²⁵ ²²⁶ ²²⁷ ²²⁸ ²²⁹ ²³⁰ ²³¹ ²³² ²³³ ²³⁴ ²³⁵ ²³⁶ ²³⁷ ²³⁸ ²³⁹ ²⁴⁰ ²⁴¹ ²⁴² ²⁴³ ²⁴⁴ ²⁴⁵ ²⁴⁶ ²⁴⁷ ²⁴⁸ ²⁴⁹ ²⁵⁰ ²⁵¹ ²⁵² ²⁵³ ²⁵⁴ ²⁵⁵ ²⁵⁶ ²⁵⁷ ²⁵⁸ ²⁵⁹ ²⁶⁰ ²⁶¹ ²⁶² ²⁶³ ²⁶⁴ ²⁶⁵ ²⁶⁶ ²⁶⁷ ²⁶⁸ ²⁶⁹ ²⁷⁰ ²⁷¹ ²⁷² ²⁷³ ²⁷⁴ ²⁷⁵ ²⁷⁶ ²⁷⁷ ²⁷⁸ ²⁷⁹ ²⁸⁰ ²⁸¹ ²⁸² ²⁸³ ²⁸⁴ ²⁸⁵ ²⁸⁶ ²⁸⁷ ²⁸⁸ ²⁸⁹ ²⁹⁰ ²⁹¹ ²⁹² ²⁹³ ²⁹⁴ ²⁹⁵ ²⁹⁶ ²⁹⁷ ²⁹⁸ ²⁹⁹ ³⁰⁰ ³⁰¹ ³⁰² ³⁰³ ³⁰⁴ ³⁰⁵ ³⁰⁶ ³⁰⁷ ³⁰⁸ ³⁰⁹ ³¹⁰ ³¹¹ ³¹² ³¹³ ³¹⁴ ³¹⁵ ³¹⁶ ³¹⁷ ³¹⁸ ³¹⁹ ³²⁰ ³²¹ ³²² ³²³ ³²⁴ ³²⁵ ³²⁶ ³²⁷ ³²⁸ ³²⁹ ³³⁰ ³³¹ ³³² ³³³ ³³⁴ ³³⁵ ³³⁶ ³³⁷ ³³⁸ ³³⁹ ³⁴⁰ ³⁴¹ ³⁴² ³⁴³ ³⁴⁴ ³⁴⁵ ³⁴⁶ ³⁴⁷ ³⁴⁸ ³⁴⁹ ³⁵⁰ ³⁵¹ ³⁵² ³⁵³ ³⁵⁴ ³⁵⁵ ³⁵⁶ ³⁵⁷ ³⁵⁸ ³⁵⁹ ³⁶⁰ ³⁶¹ ³⁶² ³⁶³ ³⁶⁴ ³⁶⁵ ³⁶⁶ ³⁶⁷ ³⁶⁸ ³⁶⁹ ³⁷⁰ ³⁷¹ ³⁷² ³⁷³ ³⁷⁴ ³⁷⁵ ³⁷⁶ ³⁷⁷ ³⁷⁸ ³⁷⁹ ³⁸⁰ ³⁸¹ ³⁸² ³⁸³ ³⁸⁴ ³⁸⁵ ³⁸⁶ ³⁸⁷ ³⁸⁸ ³⁸⁹ ³⁹⁰ ³⁹¹ ³⁹² ³⁹³ ³⁹⁴ ³⁹⁵ ³⁹⁶ ³⁹⁷ ³⁹⁸ ³⁹⁹ ⁴⁰⁰ ⁴⁰¹ ⁴⁰² ⁴⁰³ ⁴⁰⁴ ⁴⁰⁵ ⁴⁰⁶ ⁴⁰⁷ ⁴⁰⁸ ⁴⁰⁹ ⁴¹⁰ ⁴¹¹ ⁴¹² ⁴¹³ ⁴¹⁴ ⁴¹⁵ ⁴¹⁶ ⁴¹⁷ ⁴¹⁸ ⁴¹⁹ ⁴²⁰ ⁴²¹ ⁴²² ⁴²³ ⁴²⁴ ⁴²⁵ ⁴²⁶ ⁴²⁷ ⁴²⁸ ⁴²⁹ ⁴³⁰ ⁴³¹ ⁴³² ⁴³³ ⁴³⁴ ⁴³⁵ ⁴³⁶ ⁴³⁷ ⁴³⁸ ⁴³⁹ ⁴⁴⁰ ⁴⁴¹ ⁴⁴² ⁴⁴³ ⁴⁴⁴ ⁴⁴⁵ ⁴⁴⁶ ⁴⁴⁷ ⁴⁴⁸ ⁴⁴⁹ ⁴⁵⁰ ⁴⁵¹ ⁴⁵² ⁴⁵³ ⁴⁵⁴ ⁴⁵⁵ ⁴⁵⁶ ⁴⁵⁷ ⁴⁵⁸ ⁴⁵⁹ ⁴⁶⁰ ⁴⁶¹ ⁴⁶² ⁴⁶³ ⁴⁶⁴ ⁴⁶⁵ ⁴⁶⁶ ⁴⁶⁷ ⁴⁶⁸ ⁴⁶⁹ ⁴⁷⁰ ⁴⁷¹ ⁴⁷² ⁴⁷³ ⁴⁷⁴ ⁴⁷⁵ ⁴⁷⁶ ⁴⁷⁷ ⁴⁷⁸ ⁴⁷⁹ ⁴⁸⁰ ⁴⁸¹ ⁴⁸² ⁴⁸³ ⁴⁸⁴ ⁴⁸⁵ ⁴⁸⁶ ⁴⁸⁷ ⁴⁸⁸ ⁴⁸⁹ ⁴⁹⁰ ⁴⁹¹ ⁴⁹² ⁴⁹³ ⁴⁹⁴ ⁴⁹⁵ ⁴⁹⁶ ⁴⁹⁷ ⁴⁹⁸ ⁴⁹⁹ ⁵⁰⁰ ⁵⁰¹ ⁵⁰² ⁵⁰³ ⁵⁰⁴ ⁵⁰⁵ ⁵⁰⁶ ⁵⁰⁷ ⁵⁰⁸ ⁵⁰⁹ ⁵¹⁰ ⁵¹¹ ⁵¹² ⁵¹³ ⁵¹⁴ ⁵¹⁵ ⁵¹⁶ ⁵¹⁷ ⁵¹⁸ ⁵¹⁹ ⁵²⁰ ⁵²¹ ⁵²² ⁵²³ ⁵²⁴ ⁵²⁵ ⁵²⁶ ⁵²⁷ ⁵²⁸ ⁵²⁹ ⁵³⁰ ⁵³¹ ⁵³² ⁵³³ ⁵³⁴ ⁵³⁵ ⁵³⁶ ⁵³⁷ ⁵³⁸ ⁵³⁹ ⁵⁴⁰ ⁵⁴¹ ⁵⁴² ⁵⁴³ ⁵⁴⁴ ⁵⁴⁵ ⁵⁴⁶ ⁵⁴⁷ ⁵⁴⁸ ⁵⁴⁹ ⁵⁵⁰ ⁵⁵¹ ⁵⁵² ⁵⁵³ ⁵⁵⁴ ⁵⁵⁵ ⁵⁵⁶ ⁵⁵⁷ ⁵⁵⁸ ⁵⁵⁹ ⁵⁶⁰ ⁵⁶¹ ⁵⁶² ⁵⁶³ ⁵⁶⁴ ⁵⁶⁵ ⁵⁶⁶ ⁵⁶⁷ ⁵⁶⁸ ⁵⁶⁹ ⁵⁷⁰ ⁵⁷¹ ⁵⁷² ⁵⁷³ ⁵⁷⁴ ⁵⁷⁵ ⁵⁷⁶ ⁵⁷⁷ ⁵⁷⁸ ⁵⁷⁹ ⁵⁸⁰ ⁵⁸¹ ⁵⁸² ⁵⁸³ ⁵⁸⁴ ⁵⁸⁵ ⁵⁸⁶ ⁵⁸⁷ ⁵⁸⁸ ⁵⁸⁹ ⁵⁹⁰ ⁵⁹¹ ⁵⁹² ⁵⁹³ ⁵⁹⁴ ⁵⁹⁵ ⁵⁹⁶ ⁵⁹⁷ ⁵⁹⁸ ⁵⁹⁹ ⁶⁰⁰ ⁶⁰¹ ⁶⁰² ⁶⁰³ ⁶⁰⁴ ⁶⁰⁵ ⁶⁰⁶ ⁶⁰⁷ ⁶⁰⁸ ⁶⁰⁹ ⁶¹⁰ ⁶¹¹ ⁶¹² ⁶¹³ ⁶¹⁴ ⁶¹⁵ ⁶¹⁶ ⁶¹⁷ ⁶¹⁸ ⁶¹⁹ ⁶²⁰ ⁶²¹ ⁶²² ⁶²³ ⁶²⁴ ⁶²⁵ ⁶²⁶ ⁶²⁷ ⁶²⁸ ⁶²⁹ ⁶³⁰ ⁶³¹ ⁶³² ⁶³³ ⁶³⁴ ⁶³⁵ ⁶³⁶ ⁶³⁷ ⁶³⁸ ⁶³⁹ ⁶⁴⁰ ⁶⁴¹ ⁶⁴² ⁶⁴³ ⁶⁴⁴ ⁶⁴⁵ ⁶⁴⁶ ⁶⁴⁷ ⁶⁴⁸ ⁶⁴⁹ ⁶⁵⁰ ⁶⁵¹ ⁶⁵² ⁶⁵³ ⁶⁵⁴ ⁶⁵⁵ ⁶⁵⁶ ⁶⁵⁷ ⁶⁵⁸ ⁶⁵⁹ ⁶⁶⁰ ⁶⁶¹ ⁶⁶² ⁶⁶³ ⁶⁶⁴ ⁶⁶⁵ ⁶⁶⁶ ⁶⁶⁷ ⁶⁶⁸ ⁶⁶⁹ ⁶⁷⁰ ⁶⁷¹ ⁶⁷² ⁶⁷³ ⁶⁷⁴ ⁶⁷⁵ ⁶⁷⁶ ⁶⁷⁷ ⁶⁷⁸ ⁶⁷⁹ ⁶⁸⁰ ⁶⁸¹ ⁶⁸² ⁶⁸³ ⁶⁸⁴ ⁶⁸⁵ ⁶⁸⁶ ⁶⁸⁷ ⁶⁸⁸ ⁶⁸⁹ ⁶⁹⁰ ⁶⁹¹ ⁶⁹² ⁶⁹³ ⁶⁹⁴ ⁶⁹⁵ ⁶⁹⁶ ⁶⁹⁷ ⁶⁹⁸ ⁶⁹⁹ ⁷⁰⁰ ⁷⁰¹ ⁷⁰² ⁷⁰³ ⁷⁰⁴ ⁷⁰⁵ ⁷⁰⁶ ⁷⁰⁷ ⁷⁰⁸ ⁷⁰⁹ ⁷¹⁰ ⁷¹¹ ⁷¹² ⁷¹³ ⁷¹⁴ ⁷¹⁵ ⁷¹⁶ ⁷¹⁷ ⁷¹⁸ ⁷¹⁹ ⁷²⁰ ⁷²¹ ⁷²² ⁷²³ ⁷²⁴ ⁷²⁵ ⁷²⁶ ⁷²⁷ ⁷²⁸ ⁷²⁹ ⁷³⁰ ⁷³¹ ⁷³² ⁷³³ ⁷³⁴ ⁷³⁵ ⁷³⁶ ⁷³⁷ ⁷³⁸ ⁷³⁹ ⁷⁴⁰ ⁷⁴¹ ⁷⁴² ⁷⁴³ ⁷⁴⁴ ⁷⁴⁵ ⁷⁴⁶ ⁷⁴⁷ ⁷⁴⁸ ⁷⁴⁹ ⁷⁵⁰ ⁷⁵¹ ⁷⁵² ⁷⁵³ ⁷⁵⁴ ⁷⁵⁵ ⁷⁵⁶ ⁷⁵⁷ ⁷⁵⁸ ⁷⁵⁹ ⁷⁶⁰ ⁷⁶¹ ⁷⁶² ⁷⁶³ ⁷⁶⁴ ⁷⁶⁵ ⁷⁶⁶ ⁷⁶⁷ ⁷⁶⁸ ⁷⁶⁹ ⁷⁷⁰ ⁷⁷¹ ⁷⁷² ⁷⁷³ ⁷⁷⁴ ⁷⁷⁵ ⁷⁷⁶ ⁷⁷⁷ ⁷⁷⁸ ⁷⁷⁹ ⁷⁸⁰ ⁷⁸¹ ⁷⁸² ⁷⁸³ ⁷⁸⁴ ⁷⁸⁵ ⁷⁸⁶ ⁷⁸⁷ ⁷⁸⁸ ⁷⁸⁹ ⁷⁹⁰ ⁷⁹¹ ⁷⁹² ⁷⁹³ ⁷⁹⁴ ⁷⁹⁵ ⁷⁹⁶ ⁷⁹⁷ ⁷⁹⁸ ⁷⁹⁹ ⁸⁰⁰ ⁸⁰¹ ⁸⁰² ⁸⁰³ ⁸⁰⁴ ⁸⁰⁵ ⁸⁰⁶ ⁸⁰⁷ ⁸⁰⁸ ⁸⁰⁹ ⁸¹⁰ ⁸¹¹ ⁸¹² ⁸¹³ ⁸¹⁴ ⁸¹⁵ ⁸¹⁶ ⁸¹⁷ ⁸¹⁸ ⁸¹⁹ ⁸²⁰ ⁸²¹ ⁸²² ⁸²³ ⁸²⁴ ⁸²⁵ ⁸²⁶ ⁸²⁷ ⁸²⁸ ⁸²⁹ ⁸³⁰ ⁸³¹ ⁸³² ⁸³³ ⁸³⁴ ⁸³⁵ ⁸³⁶ ⁸³⁷ ⁸³⁸ ⁸³⁹ ⁸⁴⁰ ⁸⁴¹ ⁸⁴² ⁸⁴³ ⁸⁴⁴ ⁸⁴⁵ ⁸⁴⁶ ⁸⁴⁷ ⁸⁴⁸ ⁸⁴⁹ ⁸⁵⁰ ⁸⁵¹ ⁸⁵² ⁸⁵³ ⁸⁵⁴ ⁸⁵⁵ ⁸⁵⁶ ⁸⁵⁷ ⁸⁵⁸ ⁸⁵⁹ ⁸⁶⁰ ⁸⁶¹ ⁸⁶² ⁸⁶³ ⁸⁶⁴ ⁸⁶⁵ ⁸⁶⁶ ⁸⁶⁷ ⁸⁶⁸ ⁸⁶⁹ ⁸⁷⁰ ⁸⁷¹ ⁸⁷² ⁸⁷³ ⁸⁷⁴ ⁸⁷⁵ ⁸⁷⁶ ⁸⁷⁷ ⁸⁷⁸ ⁸⁷⁹ ⁸⁸⁰ ⁸⁸¹ ⁸⁸² ⁸⁸³ ⁸⁸⁴ ⁸⁸⁵ ⁸⁸⁶ ⁸⁸⁷ ⁸⁸⁸ ⁸⁸⁹ ⁸⁹⁰ ⁸⁹¹ ⁸⁹² ⁸⁹³ ⁸⁹⁴ ⁸⁹⁵ ⁸⁹⁶ ⁸⁹⁷ ⁸⁹⁸ ⁸⁹⁹ ⁹⁰⁰ ⁹⁰¹ ⁹⁰² ⁹⁰³ ⁹⁰⁴ ⁹⁰⁵ ⁹⁰⁶ ⁹⁰⁷ ⁹⁰⁸ ⁹⁰⁹ ⁹¹⁰ ⁹¹¹ ⁹¹² ⁹¹³ ⁹¹⁴ ⁹¹⁵ ⁹¹⁶ ⁹¹⁷ ⁹¹⁸ ⁹¹⁹ ⁹²⁰ ⁹²¹ ⁹²² ⁹²³ ⁹²⁴ ⁹²⁵ ⁹²⁶ ⁹²⁷ ⁹²⁸ ⁹²⁹ ⁹³⁰ ⁹³¹ ⁹³² ⁹³³ ⁹³⁴ ⁹³⁵ ⁹³⁶ ⁹³⁷ ⁹³⁸ ⁹³⁹ ⁹⁴⁰ ⁹⁴¹ ⁹⁴² ⁹⁴³ ⁹⁴⁴ ⁹⁴⁵ ⁹⁴⁶ ⁹⁴⁷ ⁹⁴⁸ ⁹⁴⁹ ⁹⁵⁰ ⁹⁵¹ ⁹⁵² ⁹⁵³ ⁹⁵⁴ ⁹⁵⁵ ⁹⁵⁶ ⁹⁵⁷ ⁹⁵⁸ ⁹⁵⁹ ⁹⁶⁰ ⁹⁶¹ ⁹⁶² ⁹⁶³ ⁹⁶⁴ ⁹⁶⁵ ⁹⁶⁶ ⁹⁶⁷ ⁹⁶⁸ ⁹⁶⁹ ⁹⁷⁰ ⁹⁷¹ ⁹⁷² ⁹⁷³ ⁹⁷⁴ ⁹⁷⁵ ⁹⁷⁶ ⁹⁷⁷ ⁹⁷⁸ ⁹⁷⁹ ⁹⁸⁰ ⁹⁸¹ ⁹⁸² ⁹⁸³ ⁹⁸⁴ ⁹⁸⁵ ⁹⁸⁶ ⁹⁸⁷ ⁹⁸⁸ ⁹⁸⁹ ⁹⁹⁰ ⁹⁹¹ ⁹⁹² ⁹⁹³ ⁹⁹⁴ ⁹⁹⁵ ⁹⁹⁶ ⁹⁹⁷ ⁹⁹⁸ ⁹⁹⁹ ¹⁰⁰⁰

you Medes turn back to-day I shall say it was the work of some evil genius, who could not brook the fulfilment of your happiness. For no human heart could think of retiring when the foe is in flight, refusing to receive his sword when he surrenders it, rejecting him when he offers himself and all that he calls his own; above all, when we have a prince of men for our leader, one who, I swear it by the holy gods, takes delight to do us service, not to enrich himself."

Thereupon the Medes cried with one consent:

"It was you, Cyrus, who led us out, and it is you who must lead us home again, when the right moment comes."

And when Cyrus heard that, he prayed aloud:

"O Most mighty Zeus, I supplicate thee, suffer me to outdo these friends of mine in courtesy and kindly dealing."

Upon that he gave his orders. The rest of the army were to place their outposts and see to their own concerns, while the Persians took the tents allotted to them, and divided them among their cavalry and infantry, to suit the needs of either arm. Then they arranged for the stewards to wait on them in future, bring them

vocabulary

ἀλίσκομαι be captured ~helix
ἀπομάχομαι fight off
ἀριθμός number
γέρον wicker object
δείλη afternoon ~diem
διάγω lead through; pass a time
 ~demagogue
δισχίλιοι 2000 ~kilo-
ἔπω (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of
ἔρυμα -τος (n, 3) protection ~serve
ἐρυμνός fortified, impregnable
θεραπεύω help, serve ~therapy
θεράπων -οντος (m, 3) helper, henchman, servant ~therapy
καινέω freshen, innovate, make strange
καινός new, fresh, strange
καινώ freshen, innovate, make strange

κολάζω punish
κράτιστος best
μέτωπον forehead, front
ὀπισθεν behind, hereafter
ὀπισθοφύλαξ rear guard ~phylactery
πάμπολος very great
Πέρσης Persian
πλάγιος sideways; treacherous
πρόβατον cattle, flocks, herds
προσάγω bring to a place
 ~demagogue
προσήκω belong to, it beseems
πρόσθεν before (time, space)
προστίθημι add; impose; (mp) agree; side with ~thesis
στρατιά army ~strategy
τάξις -εως (f) arrangement, military unit
χωρίον area; downwards

καὶ τοὺς ἵππους τεθεραπευμένους παρέχωσι, Πέρσαις δὲ
μηδὲν ἄλλο ἢ ἔργον ἢ τὰ πρὸς τὸν πόλεμον ἐκπονεῖν.
ταύτην μὲν οὖν οὕτω διῆγον τὴν ἡμέραν.

5.2

Πρῶ δ' ἀναστάντες ἐπορεύοντο πρὸς Γωβρύαν, Κῦρος
μὲν ἐφ' ἵππου καὶ οἱ Περσῶν ἵππεῖς γεγεννημένοι εἰς
δισχιλίους· οἱ δὲ τὰ τούτων γέρρα καὶ τὰς κοπίδας
ἔχοντες ἐπὶ τούτοις εἶποντο, ἴσοι ὄντες τὸν ἀριθμόν· καὶ
ἢ ἄλλη δὲ στρατιὰ τεταγμένη ἐπορεύετο. ἕκαστον δ'
ἐκέλευσε τοῖς καινοῖς αὐτῶν θεράπουσιν εἰπεῖν ὅτι ὅστις
ἂν αὐτῶν ἢ τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων φαίνεται ὀπισθεν ἢ
τοῦ μετώπου πρόσθεν ἢ ἢ κατὰ τὰ πλάγια ἔξω τῶν
ἐν τάξει ἰόντων ἀλίσκῃται, κολασθήσεται. δευτεραῖοι
δὲ ἀμφὶ δεῖλην γίνονται πρὸς τῷ Γωβρύα χωρίῳ, καὶ
ὀρώσιν ὑπερίσχυρόν τε τὸ ἔρυμα καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν τειχῶν
πάντα παρεσκευασμένα ὥς ἂν κράτιστα ἀπομάχοιτο· καὶ
βοῦς δὲ πολλοὺς καὶ πάμπολλα πρόβατα ὑπὸ τὰ ἔρυμνά
προσηγμένα ἐώρων. πέμπας δ' ὁ Γωβρύας πρὸς

καὶ τοὺς ἵππους |help, serve |furnish , Πέρσαις δὲ
 μηδὲν ἄλλο ἢ ἔργον ἢ τὰ πρὸς τὸν πόλεμον ἐκπονεῖν.
 ταύτην μὲν οὖν οὕτω |lead through; |μέραν.
 |pass a time

5.2

Πρῶ δ' |stand up; arouse... οὐρέοντο πρὸς Γωβρύαν, Κῦρος
 μὲν ἐφ' ἵππου καὶ οἱ Περσῶν |rider γεγενημένοι εἰς
 |2000 οἱ δὲ τὰ τούτων |wicker καὶ τὰς κοπίδας
 |object
 ἔχοντες ἐπὶ τούτοις εἶποντο, |equal ὄντες τὸν |number καὶ
 ἡ ἄλλη δὲ στρατιὰ |arrange ἐπορεύετο. ἕκαστον δ'
 ἐκέλευσε τοῖς καινοῖς αὐτῶν |companion εἰπεῖν ὅτι ὅστις
 ἂν αὐτῶν ἢ τῶν |rear guard φαίνεται |behind, ἢ
 |hereafter
 τοῦ |forehead, πρόσθεν ἢ ἢ κατὰ τὰ πλάγια ἔξω τῶν
 |front
 ἐν τάξει ἰόντων |be captured, |punish . δευτεραίῳι
 δὲ ἀμφὶ |afternoon ἔγνονται πρὸς τῷ Γωβρύᾳ |area; downwards
 ὁρώσιν ὑπερίσχυρόν τε τὸ |protection... ἐπὶ τῶν |outdoor wall
 πάντα |prepare, render ὥς ἂν |best |fight off καὶ
 |cow, ox; shield... καὶ πάμπολλα |cattle, flocks, τὰ τὰ |fortified
 |herds
 προσηγμένα ἐώρων. πέμψας δ' ὁ Γωβρύας πρὸς

all they needed, and keep their horses groomed, so that they themselves might be free for the work of war. Thus they spent that day.

5.2

But on the morrow they set out for their march to Gobryas. Cyrus rode on horseback at the head of his new Persian cavalry, two thousand strong, with as many more behind them, carrying their shields and swords, and the rest of the army followed in due order. The cavalry were told to make their new attendants understand that they would be punished if they were caught falling behind the rear-guard, or riding in advance of the column, or straggling on either flank. Towards evening of the second day the army found themselves before the castle of Gobryas, and they saw that the place was exceedingly strong and that all preparations had been made for the stoutest possible defence. They noticed also that great herds of cattle and endless flocks of sheep and goats had been driven up under the shelter of the castle walls. Then Gobryas sent

vocabulary

αἶξ αἰγός (m) goat

ἄλευρον flour

ἄλφιτον barley meal

ἀπαγγέλλω announce, order, promise
~angel

ἀσφαλής safe, easy, steady, careful

βρωτός food, meat

δειπνέω eat, dine

δειπνοποιέω make dinner

διαιρέω divide, distinguish, distribute

εἴσεμι go in; come in range; come to
mind ~ion

εἰσίημι (mid) speed to ~jet

ἐνδίδωμι hand over, lend, show, allow

ἐνδοθεν from within

ἐνδον in the house of; within

ἐξάγω lead out ~demagogue

ἐξεμι go forth; is possible ~ion

ἐπιλείπω fail, not work ~eclipse

εὐπέτης flying well

εὐπετής coming out well; (adv)
fortunately

ἰσχυρός (ō) strong, forceful, violent

οἷς sheep ~ewe

πάντοθεν from all directions

περιελαύνω drive around

πιστός faithful; trustworthy

πιστόω reassure; also (pass) promise

προσάγω bring to a place

~demagogue

προσέρχομαι come forward, surrender,
come inπρόσοδος (f) approach, procession; a
rent

στρατιά army ~strategy

τήχω melt

ὕς pig ~sow

φροντίς -τος (f) thought, care

ψευδής lying, false ~pseudo-

τὸν Κῦρον ἐκέλευσε περιελάσαντα ἰδεῖν ἥ ἢ πρόσδοδος
 εὐπετεστάτη, εἴσω δὲ πέμψαι πρὸς ἑαυτὸν τῶν πιστῶν
 τινας, οἵτινες αὐτῷ τὰ ἔνδον ἰδόντες ἀπαγγελοῦσιν. οὕτω
 δὲ ὁ Κῦρος αὐτὸς μὲν τῷ ὄντι βουλόμενος ἰδεῖν εἴ που
 εἶη αἰρέσιμον τὸ τεῖχος, εἰ ψευδὴς φαίνοιτο ὁ Γωβρύας,
 περιήλανε πάντοθεν, ἐώρα τε ἰσχυρότερα πάντα ἢ
 προσελθεῖν· οὓς δ' ἔπεμψε πρὸς Γωβρύαν, ἀπήγγελλον
 τῷ Κύρῳ ὅτι τοσαῦτα εἶη ἔνδον ἀγαθὰ ὅσα ἐπ' ἀνθρώπων
 γενεάν, ὥς σφίσι δοκεῖν, μὴ ἂν ἐπιλιπεῖν τοὺς ἔνδον ὄντας.
 ὁ μὲν δὲ Κῦρος ἐν φροντίδι ἦν ὅ τι ποτ' εἶη ταῦτα, ὁ
 δὲ Γωβρύας αὐτός τε ἐξῆι πρὸς αὐτὸν καὶ τοὺς ἔνδοθεν
 πάντας ἐξῆγε φέροντας οἶνον, ἄλφιτα, ἄλευρα, ἄλλους
 δ' ἐλάννοντας βούς, αἰγας, οἶς, σὺς, καὶ εἴ τι βρωτόν,
 πάντα ἱκανὰ προσήγον ὥς δειπνήσαι πᾶσαν τὴν σὺν
 Κύρῳ στρατιάν. οἱ μὲν δὲ ἐπὶ τούτῳ ταχθέντες διήρουν
 τε ταῦτα καὶ ἐδειπνοποιοῦν. ὁ δὲ Γωβρύας, ἐπεὶ πάντες
 αὐτῷ οἱ ἄνδρες ἔξω ἦσαν, εἰσιέναι τὸν Κῦρον ἐκέλευσεν
 ὅπως νομίζοι ἀσφαλέστατα. προεισπέμψας

τὸν Κῦρον ἐκέλευσε |drive around ἰδεῖν ἥ ἡ |approach, procession; a
 |rent
 εὐπετεστάτῃ, εἴσω δὲ πέμψαι πρὸς ἑαυτὸν τῶν πιστῶν
 τινας, οἵτινες αὐτῷ τὰ |in the house of; announce, order, οὕτω
 |within |promise
 δὴ ὁ Κῦρος αὐτὸς μὲν τῷ ὄντι βουλόμενος ἰδεῖν εἴ ποῦ
 εἷη αἰρέσιμον τὸ τεῖχος, εἰ |lying, φαίνοιτο ὁ Γωβρύας,
 |false
 |drive around |from all directions .. τε |strong, force- πάντα ἥ
 |ful, violent
 |come forward, sūr- δ' ἔπεμψε πρὸς Γωβρύαν, |announce, or-
 |render, come in |der, promise
 τῷ Κύρῳ ὅτι |so much εἷη |in the house ἢ ὅσα ἐπ' ἀνθρώπων
 |of; within
 |birth, race ὁ σφίσι δοκεῖν, μὴ ἂν |fail, not work ἢ |in the house .
 |of; within
 ὁ μὲν δὴ Κῦρος ἐν |thought, care ὅ τι ποτ' εἷη ταῦτα, ὁ
 δὲ Γωβρύας αὐτὸς τε |go forth; ὁ αὐτὸν καὶ τοὺς ἔνδοθεν
 |is possible
 πάντας |lead out ἔροντας οἶνον, |barley , |flour , ἄλλους
 |meal
 δ' ἐλαύνοντας βοῦς, |goat , |sheep|pig καὶ εἴ τι |food, meat
 πάντα ἱκανὰ |bring to a place |eat, dine πάσαν τὴν σὺν
 Κύρῳ |army οἱ μὲν δὲ ἐπὶ τούτῳ ταχθέντες |divide, distinguish,
 |distribute
 τε ταῦτα καὶ |make dinner ὁ δὲ Γωβρύας, ἐπεὶ πάντες
 αὐτῷ οἱ ἄνδρες ἔξω ἦσαν, εἰσιέναι τὸν Κῦρον ἐκέλευσεν
 ὅπως νομίζοι |safe, easy, steady, προεισπέμψας
 |careful

word to Cyrus, bidding him ride round and see where the place was easiest of approach, and meanwhile send his trustiest Persians to enter the fortress and bring him word what they found within. Cyrus, who really wished to see if the citadel admitted of attack in case Gobryas proved false, rode all round the walls, and found they were too strong at every point. Presently the messengers who had gone in brought back word that there were supplies enough to last a whole generation and still not fail the garrison. While Cyrus was wondering what this could mean, Gobryas himself came out, and all his men behind him, carrying wine and corn and barley, and driving oxen and goats and swine, enough to feast the entire host. And his stewards fell to distributing the stores at once, and serving up a banquet. Then Gobryas invited Cyrus to enter the castle now that all the garrison

*vocabulary***ἀληθεύω** speak truth; be true**ἄμετρος** immeasurable, immoderate**ἀψευδέω** be truthful**γαμέω** marry, take as a lover ~bigamy**δαρεικός** Persian coin**διατίθηναι** arrange; set out goods for sale ~thesis**δωρέω** give ~donate**εἴσεμι** go in; come in range; come to mind ~ion**ἐκφέρω** carry off ~bear**ἐνδόν** in the house of; within**ἐξάγω** lead out ~demagogue**ἐπιτρέπω** entrust, decide, allow ~trophy**ἰκετεύω** approach to beg**κάλλος** -εος (n, 3) beauty

~kaleidoscope

κάλπις -τος (f) pitcher**μέγεθος** -ους (n, 3) tall, big (person) ~megaton**οφείλω** owe, should, if only**παντοῖος** all kinds of**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)**προστίθηναι** add; impose; (mp) agree; side with ~thesis**πρόχοος** pouring vessel**πύλη** gate ~Thermopylae**τιμωρέω** (ι) (+dat) take vengeance, punish; aid one who has been attacked**τιμωρός** (ι) avenging**ὑπέχω** promise; hold out one's hand; submit to**ὑπισχνέομαι** promise, agree to do ~ischemia**ὑπόσχεσις** -τος (f) promise ~ischemia**φιάλη** jar ~vial

οὖν ὁ Κῦρος προσκόπους καὶ δύναμιν καὶ αὐτὸς οὕτως
 εἰσῆει. ἐπεὶ δ' εἰσῆλθεν ἀναπεπταμένος ἔχων τὰς πύλας,
 παρεκάλει πάντας τοὺς φίλους καὶ ἄρχοντας τῶν μεθ'
 ἑαυτοῦ. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἔνδον ἦσαν, ἐκφέρων ὁ Γωβρύας
 φιάλας χρυσᾶς καὶ πρόχους καὶ κάλπιδας καὶ κόσμον
 παντοῖον καὶ δαρεικοὺς ἀμέτρους τινὰς καὶ πάντα καλὰ
 πολλά, τέλος τὴν θυγατέρα, δεινόν τι κάλλος καὶ μέγεθος,
 πενθικῶς δ' ἔχουσαν τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ τεθνηκότος, ἐξάγων
 ὧδ' εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ σοι, ὦ Κῦρε, τὰ μὲν χρήματα ταῦτα
 δωροῦμαι, τὴν δὲ θυγατέρα ταύτην ἐπιτρέπω διαθέσθαι
 ὅπως ἂν σὺ βούλῃ· ἱκετεύομεν δέ, ἐγὼ μὲν καὶ πρόσθεν
 τοῦ υἱοῦ, αὕτη δὲ νῦν τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ τιμωρὸν γενέσθαι σε.

Ὁ Δὲ Κῦρος πρὸς ταῦτα εἶπεν· Ἄλλ' ἐγὼ σοὶ μὲν καὶ τότε
 ὑπεσχόμεν ἄψευδούντός σου τιμωρήσειν εἰς δύναμιν· νῦν
 δὲ ὅτε ἀληθεύοντά σε ὀρώ, ἤδη ὀφείλω τὴν ὑπόσχεσιν, καὶ
 ταύτῃ ὑπισχνούμαι τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα σὺν θεοῖς ποιήσειν. καὶ
 τὰ μὲν χρήματα ταῦτα, ἔφη, ἐγὼ μὲν δέχομαι, δίδωμι δ'
 αὐτὰ τῇ παιδί ταύτῃ κάκείνῃ ὥς ἂν γήμη

οὖν ὁ Κῦρος προσκόπους καὶ δύναμιν καὶ αὐτὸς οὕτως

|go in . ἐπεὶ δ' εἰσῆλθεν ἀναπεπταμένας ἔχων τὰς |gate ,

|summon, exhort, τὰς τοὺς φίλους καὶ ἄρχοντας τῶν μεθ'
(pass) repent

ἑαυτοῦ. ἐπειδὴ δὲ |in the hōuse of;|carry off ὁ Γωβρύας
|within

|jar χρυσᾶς καὶ |pouring καὶ |pitcher καὶ |order;
|vessel |adornment

|all kinds of :αὶ |Persian coin |immeasurable, ἵς καὶ πάντα καλὰ
|immoderate

πολλά, |end τὴν θυγατέρα, δεινόν τι |beauty καὶ |tall, big ,

πενθικῶς δ' ἔχουσιν τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ τεθνηκότος, |lead out

ὧδ' εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ σοι, ὦ Κῦρε, τὰ μὲν χρήματα ταῦτα

δωροῦμαι, τὴν δὲ θυγατέρα ταύτην |entrust, de-|arrange; set out goods
|cide, allow |for sale

ὅπως ἂν σὺ βούλῃ· |approach to bēg, ἐγὼ μὲν καὶ πρόσθεν

τοῦ υἱοῦ, αὕτη δὲ νῦν τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ |avenging γενέσθαι σε.

Ὁ Δὲ Κῦρος πρὸς ταῦτα εἶπεν· Ἀλλ' ἐγὼ σοὶ μὲν καὶ τότε

|promise |be truthful σου |take vengeance,· δύναμιν· νῦν
|punish, aid

δὲ ὅτε |speak truth; σε ὁρῶ, ἤδη |owe, should, |promise , καὶ
|be true |if only

ταύτη |promise, agree τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα σὺν θεοῖς ποιήσιν. καὶ

τὰ μὲν χρήματα ταῦτα, ἔφη, ἐγὼ μὲν |accept, re-· ἴδωμι δ'
|ceive, await

αὐτὰ τῇ παιδὶ ταύτῃ κακέινω ὃς ἂν |marry, take
|as a lover

had left it, using every precaution he might think wise; and Cyrus took him at his word, and sent in scouts and a strong detachment before he entered the palace himself. Once within, he had the gates thrown open and sent for all his own friends and officers. And when they joined him, Gobryas had beakers of gold brought out, and pitchers, and goblets, and costly ornaments, and golden coins without end, and all manner of beautiful things, and last of all he sent for his own daughter, tall and fair, a marvel of beauty and stateliness, still wearing mourning for her brother. And her father said to Cyrus, "All these riches I bestow on you for a gift, and I put my daughter in your hands, to deal with as you think best. We are your suppliants; I but three days gone for my son, and she this day for her brother; we beseech you to avenge him."

And Cyrus made answer:

"I Gave you my promise before that if you kept faith with me I would avenge you, so far as in me lay, and to-day I see the debt is due, and the promise I made to you I repeat to your daughter; God helping me, I will perform it. As for these costly gifts," he added, "I accept them, and I give them for a dowry to your daughter, and to him who may win her hand in marriage. One gift only I

vocabulary

ἄημι blow

ἄρnuμαι get, win

ἀσεβέω be impious

δῆλος visible, conspicuous

δωρέω give ~donate

ἐγχειρίζω entrust

ἐκὼν willingly, on purpose; giving in too easily

ἐρομαι ask a question, ask about, go searching through

ἐρυμνός fortified, impregnable

ἡδύς sweet, pleasant ~hedonism

ἡώς ἡῶθι (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene

πανταχοῦ everywhere; completely

παντοδαπής of every kind, manifold

παντοδαπός of every kind, manifold

πλοῦτος wealth ~plutocrat

προίημι send forth, abandon ~jet

συνθήκη combination; agreement

συντίθημι hearken, mark ~thesis

τυραννίς -δος (f) tyranny

ὑπάγω lead under the yoke, lead away from ~demagogue

ὑποπτεύω guess, observe, be suspicious of

ψεύδω be false, deceive; (mid) to lie ~pseudo-

αὐτήν. ἐν δὲ δῶρον ἄπειμι ἔχων παρὰ σοῦ ἀνθ' οὗ οὐδ' ἂν τὰ ἐν Βαβυλῶνι, εἰ ἐκεῖ πλείστα ἐστίν, οὐδὲ τὰ πανταχοῦ ἀντὶ τούτου οὐ σύ μοι δεδώρησαι ἥδιον ἂν ἔχων ἀπέλθοιμι. καὶ ὁ Γωβρύας θαυμάσας τε τί τοῦτ' εἶη καὶ ὑποπτεύσας μὴ τὴν θυγατέρα λέγοι, οὕτως ἤρετο· Καὶ τί τοῦτ' ἔστιν, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε; καὶ ὁ Κῦρος ἀπεκρίνατο· Ὅτι, ἔφη, ἐγώ, ὦ Γωβρύα, πολλοὺς μὲν οἶμαι εἶναι ἀνθρώπους οἳ οὔτε ἀσεβεῖν ἂν θέλοιεν οὔτε ἀδικεῖν οὔτε ἂν ψεύδονται ἐκόντες εἶναι· διὰ δὲ τὸ μηδένα αὐτοῖς ἠθελῆκεναι προέσθαι μήτε χρήματα πολλὰ μήτε τυραννίδα μήτε τείχη ἐρυμνὰ μήτε τέκνα ἀξιέραστα, ἀποθνήσκουσι πρότερον πρὶν δῆλοι γενέσθαι οἷοι ἦσαν· ἐμοὶ δὲ σὺ νυνὶ καὶ τείχη ἐρυμνὰ καὶ πλοῦτον παντοδαπὸν καὶ δύναμιν τὴν σὴν καὶ θυγατέρα ἀξιόκτητον ἐγχειρίσας πεποίηκάς με δῆλον γενέσθαι πᾶσιν ἀνθρώποις ὅτι οὗτ' ἂν ἀσεβεῖν περὶ ξένους θέλοιμι οὗτ' ἂν ἀδικεῖν χρημάτων ἕνεκα οὔτε συνθήκας ἂν ψευδοίμην ἐκὼν εἶναι. τούτων ἐγώ, εὖ ἴσθι, ἕως ἂν ἀνὴρ δίκαιος ὦ καὶ δοκῶν εἶναι

αὐτήν. ἐν δὲ |gift |be absent, go away, return ν παρὰ σοῦ ἀνθ' οὗ
 οὐδ' ἂν τὰ ἐν Βαβυλῶνι, εἰ ἐκεῖ πλείστα ἐστίν, οὐδὲ
 τὰ |everywhere; |completely ἰντὶ τούτου οὗ σύ μοι δεδώρησαι |sweet
 ἂν ἔχων ἀπέλθοιμι. καὶ ὁ Γωβρύας |marvel τε τί
 τοῦτ' εἴη καὶ |guess, observe, |be suspicious of ἡ τὴν θυγατέρα λέγοι, οὕτως
 ἤρετο· Καὶ τί τοῦτ' ἐστίν, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε; καὶ ὁ Κῦρος
 ἀπεκρίνατο· Ὅτι, ἔφη, ἐγώ, ὦ Γωβρύα, πολλοὺς μὲν
 οἶμαι εἶναι ἀνθρώπους οἳ οὔτε |be impious ἢ θέλοιεν οὔτε
 ἀδικεῖν οὔτε ἂν |be false, de-|willingly |ceive; (mid) εἶναι· διὰ δὲ τὸ μηδένα
 αὐτοῖς ἠθελῆκεναι |send forth, |abandon |nei- |ther |possession, .. |business |neither
 |tyranny |neither |outdoor|fortified |neither|child ἀξίεραστα,
 ἀποθνήσκουσι πρότερον πρὶν |visible, , .. |θαι οἳ οἱ ἦσαν·
 ἐμοὶ δὲ σὺ νυνὶ καὶ |out- |door |fortified καὶ |wealth παντοδαπὸν
 καὶ δύναμιν τὴν σὴν καὶ θυγατέρα ἀξιόκτητον |entrust
 πεποήκάς με |visible, , .. |θαι πᾶσιν ἀνθρώποις ὅτι οὗτ'
 ἂν |be impious ρὶ ξένους θέλοιμι οὗτ' ἂν ἀδικεῖν |possession, |money, |busi-
 ἔνεκα οὔτε συνθήκας ἂν |be false, de-|willingly |ceive; (mid) αἰ. τούτων
 ἐγώ, εὖ ἴσθι, ἕως ἂν ἀνὴρ |to lie δικαίος ὦ καὶ δοκῶν εἶναι

will take with me when I go, but that is a thing so precious that if I changed it for all the wealth of Babylon or the whole world itself I could not go on my way with half so blithe a heart."

And Gobryas wondered what this rare thing could be, half suspecting it might be his daughter. "What is it, my lord?" said he. And Cyrus answered, "I will tell you. A man may hate injustice and impiety and lies, but if no one offers him vast wealth or unbridled power or impregnable fortresses or lovely children, he dies before he can show what manner of man he is. But you have placed everything in my hands to-day, this mighty fortress, treasures of every kind, your own power, and a daughter most worthy to be won. And thus you have shown all men that I could not sin against my friend and my host, nor act unrighteously for the sake of wealth, nor break my plighted word of my own free will. This is your gift, and, so long as I am a just man and known to be such, receiving the

vocabulary

ἄημι blow

αἰτέω ask for ~etiology

ἀπορέω be confused, distressed

ἀρετή goodness, excellence

βλάπτω break, make fail

γαμέω marry, take as a lover ~bigamy

γελάω laugh, smile, laugh at

δείκνυμι (ὄ) show, point out

ἐνταῦθα there, here

ἐπαινέω concur, praise, advise

ἐπιδείκνυμι (ὄ) display, exhibit

ἐπιλήθω mp: forget ~Lethe

ζηλόω emulate, praise

πειράζω test a person ~pierce

πιστός faithful; trustworthy

πολλαπλάσιος many times more

ποῦ where?

προαίρέω produce; (m) prefer

υφίημι lower; admit; slack off ~jet

τοιούτος ἐπαινώμαι ὑπ' ἀνθρώπων, οὔποτ' ἐπιλήσομαι,
 ἀλλὰ πειράσομαί σε ἀντιτιμῆσαι πᾶσι τοῖς καλοῖς. καὶ
 ἀνδρὸς δ', ἔφη, τῇ θυγατρὶ μὴ φοβοῦ ὥς ἀπορήσεις ἀξίου
 ταύτης· πολλοὶ γὰρ καὶ ἀγαθοὶ φίλοι εἰσὶν ἐμοί· ὧν τις
 γαμεῖ ταύτην· εἰ μέντοι χρήμαθ' ἔξει τοσαῦτα ὅσα σὺ
 δίδως ἢ καὶ ἄλλα πολλαπλάσια τούτων, οὐκ ἂν ἔχοιμι
 εἰπεῖν· σὺ μέντοι εὖ ἴσθι ὅτι εἰσὶ τινες αὐτῶν οἱ ὧν μὲν
 σὺ δίδως χρημάτων οὐδὲ μικρὸν τούτων ἔνεκά σε μᾶλλον
 θαυμάζουσιν· ἐμὲ δὲ ζηλοῦσι νυνὶ καὶ εὗχονται πᾶσι θεοῖς
 γενέσθαι ποτὲ ἐπιδείξασθαι ὥς πιστοὶ μὲν εἰσιν οὐδὲν
 ἡττον ἐμοῦ τοῖς φίλοις, τοῖς δὲ πολεμίοις ὥς οὔποτ' ἂν
 ὑφείντο ζῶντες, εἰ μὴ τις θεὸς βλάπτοι· ἀντὶ δ' ἀρετῆς καὶ
 δόξης ἀγαθῆς ὅτι οὐδ' ἂν τὰ Σύρων πρὸς τοῖς σοῖς καὶ
 Ἀσσυρίων πάντα προέλουντο· τοιούτους ἄνδρας εὖ ἴσθι
 ἐνταῦθα καθημένους. καὶ ὁ Γωβρύας εἶπε γελάσας· Πρὸς
 τῶν θεῶν, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, δείξον δὴ μοι ποῦ οὗτοί εἰσιν,
 ἵνα σε τούτων τινὰ αἰτήσωμαι παῖδά μοι γενέσθαι. καὶ ὁ
 Κῦρος εἶπεν· Ἀμέλει, ἔφη, οὐδὲν ἐμοῦ σε δεήσει

τοιούτος |concur ὑπ' ἀνθρώπων, οὐποτ' |mp: forget
 ἀλλὰ πειράσομαί σε ἀντιτιμῆσαι πᾶσι τοῖς καλοῖς. καὶ
 ἀνδρὸς δ', ἔφη, τῇ |daughter μὴ |scare, ὥς |be confused, ἰξίου
 |scare |distressed
 ταύτης· πολλοὶ γὰρ καὶ ἀγαθοὶ φίλοι εἰσὶν ἐμοί· ὧν τις
 |marry, take |την· εἰ |however |possession, "so much" |so much ὅσα σὺ
 |as a lover |money, business
 δίδως ἢ καὶ ἄλλα |many times more . οὕτων, οὐκ ἂν ἔχοιμι
 εἰπεῖν· σὺ |however ὃ ἴσθι ὅτι εἰσὶ τινες αὐτῶν οἳ ὧν μὲν
 σὺ δίδως |possession, money, |small τούτων |because, that ἄλλον
 |business
 |marvel ἐμὲ δὲ ζηλοῦσι νυνὶ καὶ |declare; pray ἵσι θεοῖς
 γενέσθαι ποτὲ |display, exhibit ὥς |faithful; εἰσιν οὐδὲν
 |trustworthy
 ἦττον ἐμοῦ τοῖς φίλοις, τοῖς δὲ πολεμίοις ὥς οὐποτ' ἂν
 |lower; admit; τες, εἰ μὴ τις θεὸς |break, make fail ἵσι |excellence ὃ
 |slack off
 δόξης ἀγαθῆς ὅτι οὐδ' ἂν τὰ Σύρων πρὸς τοῖς σοῖς καὶ
 Ἀσσυρίων πάντα |produce; (m) prefer ἵτους ἀνδρας εὖ ἴσθι
 |there, |sit καὶ ὁ Γωβρύας εἶπε |laugh, Πρὸς
 |here |smile
 τῶν θεῶν, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, |show δὴ μοι |where? τοί εἰσιν,
 ἵνα σε τούτων τινὰ |ask for παῖδά μοι γενέσθαι. καὶ ὁ
 Κῦρος εἶπεν· Ἀμέλει, ἔφη, οὐδὲν ἐμοῦ σε δεήσει

praise of my fellow-men, I will never forget it; I will strive to repay you with every honour I can give. Doubt not," he added, "but that you will find a husband worthy of your daughter. I have many a good man and true among my friends, and one of them will win her hand; but I could not say whether he will have less wealth, or more, than what you offer me. Only of one thing you may be certain; there are those among them who will not admire you one whit the more because of the splendour of your gifts; they will only envy me and supplicate the gods that one day it will be given to them to show that they too are loyal to their friends, that they too will never yield to their foes while life is in them, unless some god strike them down; that they too would never sacrifice virtue and fair renown for all the wealth you proffer and all the treasure of Syria and Assyria to boot. Such is the nature, believe me, of some who are seated here."

And Gobryas smiled. "By heaven,

*vocabulary***ἀνίημι** urge, impel; release ~jet**ἄρνημαι** get, win**βρῶμα** -τος (n, 3) food; hole eaten in something ~voracious**δείκνυμι** (ῶ) show, point out**δειπνέω** eat, dine**δεξιὰ** right-hand ~dextrous**ἐνδον** in the house of; within**ἐξάγω** lead out ~demagogue**ἔξιμι** go forth; is possible ~ion**ἔπειμι** lie upon; approach ~ion**ἔπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of**ἔρομαι** ask a question, ask about, go searching through**εὐνή** bed; (pl) anchor stones**κατακλίνω** (ι) lay down ~incline**κατανοέω** notice, realize, learn**κλίνη** (ι) bed, couch ~clinic**κλίνω** (ι) lean, recline ~incline**μετριότης** -τος (f, 3) moderation; elegance**ναός** (ᾱ) temple, shrine ~nostalgia**νῆ** yea**οἶκion** abode, nest ~economics**ὀπόσος** as many as, how many, how great**παραλαμβάνω** receive, undertake, associate with**παρατίθηναι** put near, put at risk ~thesis**πότερος** which, whichever of two**πρόβατον** cattle, flocks, herds**στιβάς** -δος (f, 3) mattress**συνδειπνέω** eat with**σύνδειπνον** common meal or banquet**ὕμέτερος** (ῶ) yours**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics

πυνθάνεσθαι, ἀλλ' ἂν σὺν ἡμῖν ἔπῃ, αὐτὸς σὺ ἔξεις καὶ ἄλλῳ δεικνύναι αὐτῶν ἕκαστον.

Τοσαῦτ' εἰπὼν δεξιάν τε λαβὼν τοῦ Γωβρύα καὶ ἀναστὰς ἐξήει, καὶ τοὺς μεθ' αὐτοῦ ἐξῆγεν ἅπαντας· καὶ πολλὰ δεομένου τοῦ Γωβρύα ἔνδον δειπνεῖν οὐκ ἠθέλησεν, ἀλλ' ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ ἐδείπνει καὶ τὸν Γωβρύαν σύνδειπνον παρέλαβεν. ἐπὶ στιβάδος δὲ κατακλινεῖς ἤρετο αὐτὸν ὧδε· Εἰπέ μοι, ἔφη, ὦ Γωβρύα, πότερον οἶε σοὶ εἶναι πλείω ἢ ἐκάστῳ ἡμῶν στρώματα; καὶ ὃς εἶπεν· Ὑμῖν νῆ Δί' εὖ οἶδ' ὅτι, ἔφη, καὶ στρώματα πλείω ἐστὶ καὶ κλῖναι, καὶ οἰκία γε πολὺ μείζων ἢ ὑμετέρα τῆς ἐμῆς, οἳ γε οἰκία μὲν χρήσθε γῇ τε καὶ οὐρανῷ, κλῖναι δ' ὑμῖν εἰσιν ὀπόσαι εὔναι γένοιντ' ἂν ἐπὶ γῆς· στρώματα δὲ νομίζετε οὐχ ὅσα πρόβατα φύει, ἀλλ' ὅσα ὄρη τε καὶ πεδία ἀνίησι. τὸ μὲν δὴ πρῶτον συνδειπνῶν αὐτοῖς ὁ Γωβρύας καὶ ὁρῶν τὴν φαυλότητα τῶν παρατιθεμένων βρωμάτων πολὺ σφᾶς ἐνόμιζεν ἐλευθεριωτέρους εἶναι αὐτῶν· ἐπεὶ δὲ κατενόησε τὴν μετριότητα τῶν συσσίτων· ἐπ' οὐδενὶ γὰρ

|learn, inquire, ἀλλ' ἂν σὺν ἡμῶν ἔπη, αὐτὸς σὺ ἔξεις καὶ
|(+gen) hear of

ἄλλω |show αὐτῶν ἕκαστον.

|so much εἰπὼν δεξιάν τε λαβὼν τοῦ Γωβρύα καὶ ἀναστὰς

|go forth; τοὺς μεθ' αὐτοῦ |lead out ἵπαντας· καὶ πολλὰ
|is possible

δεομένου τοῦ Γωβρύα |in the|eat, dine οὐκ ἠθέλησεν, ἀλλ'
|house
ἐν τῷ |army camp |eat, of; |and τὸν Γωβρύαν σύνδειπνον
|within

|receive, undertake, |mattress δὲ |lay down ἤρετο αὐτὸν |thus
|associate with

Εἰπέ μοι, ἔφη, ὦ Γωβρύα, |which, ἅϊ σοὶ εἶναι πλείω ἢ
|whichever

ἐκάστω ἡμῶν στρώματα; καὶ ὃς εἶπεν· Ὑμῶν νῆ Δί' εὖ

οἶδ' ὅτι, ἔφη, καὶ στρώματα πλείω ἐστὶ καὶ κλῖναι, καὶ

οἰκία γε πολὺ μείζων ἢ |yours τῆς ἐμῆς, οἷ γε |building,
|house

μὲν χρῆσθε γῇ τε καὶ οὐρανῷ, κλῖναι δ' ὑμῖν εἰσιν |as/how many/great

|bed; (pl) an- τ' ἂν ἐπὶ γῆς· στρώματα δὲ |consider ὅς-ῶσα
|chor stones |tomary; believe

|cattle, flocks, ἵει, ἀλλ' ὅσα |mountain μὲν |plain, |urge, τὸ μὲν
|herds |sea |impel;
δὴ πρῶτον |eat with αὐτοῖς ὁ Γωβρύας καὶ ὀρών τὴν
|release

φαυλότητα τῶν |put near, put at |food πολὺ σφᾶς
|risk

|consider ὅς-ῆριωτέρους εἶναι αὐτῶν· ἐπεὶ δὲ |notice, real-
|tomary; believe |ize, learn

τὴν |moderation; τῶν συσσίτων· ἐπ' οὐδενὶ γὰρ
|elegance

I wish you would point them out to me, and I would beg you to give me one of them to be my son-in-law.” And Cyrus said, “You will not need to learn their names from me; follow us, and you will be able to point them out yourself.”

With these words he rose, clasped the hand of Gobryas, and went out, all his men behind him. And though Gobryas pressed him to stay and sup in the citadel, he would not, but took his supper in the camp and constrained Gobryas to take his meal with them. And there, lying on a couch of leaves, he put this question to him, “Tell me, Gobryas, who has the largest store of coverlets, yourself, or each of us?” And the Assyrian answered, “You, I know, have more than I, more coverlets, more couches, and a far larger dwelling-place, for your home is earth and heaven, and every nook may be a couch, and for your coverlets you need not count the fleeces of your flocks, but the brushwood, and the herbage of hill and plain.”

Nevertheless, when the meal began, it must be said that Gobryas, seeing the poverty of what was set before him, thought at first that his own men were far more open-handed than the Persians. But his mood changed as he watched the grace and decorum of the company; and saw

vocabulary

αἰσχροῦς shameful
ἀρπαγή seizure; rape
ἀρπάζω carry off, seize ~harpoon
βέλτιστος best, noblest
βρώμα -τος (n, 3) food; hole eaten in something ~voracious
ἐκπλήσσω panic, be knocked out
 ~plectrum
ἐμβαίνω step on, board ~basis
ἐννοέω consider
ἐπερωτάω consult, ask
ἐρωτάω ask about something
εὐωχία partying
ἡδύς sweet, pleasant ~hedonism
ἡνίκα when
θηριώδης savage, wild
ἵππεύω ride
ἵππικός of horses ~hippo
καταφανής clearly seen
κινέω (i) set in motion, move, remove

~kinetic

μέτριος medium, moderate
νεώς νῶ (m, 2) temple, shrine
ὄμμα -τος (n, 3) eye
παιδεύω raise; train
παίζω play ~pediatrician
παρατίθημι put near, put at risk
 ~thesis
Πέρσης Persian
πόσις -ος (m) (m) husband, master; (f) a drink ~potent
πῶμα -τος (n, 3) cover; drink ~pastor
σῖτος grain, bread, food ~parasite
σκώπτω joke
στρατεία expedition, campaign
συμμάχομαι fight with
ταράσσω mess things up ~trachea
ὑβρις -εως (f) pride, insolence, outrage
φρόνιμος sensible, prudent
χαλεπαίνω be violent, rage

βρώματι οὐδὲ πώματι Πέρσης ἀνὴρ τῶν πεπαιδευμένων
 οὐτ' ἂν ὄμμασιν ἐκπεπληγμένος καταφανῆς γένοιτο οὔτε
 ἀρπαγῇ οὔτε τῷ νῶ μὴ οὐχὶ προσκοπεῖν ἅπερ ἂν καὶ
 μὴ ἐπὶ σίτῳ ὦν· ἀλλ' ὥσπερ οἱ ἵππικοὶ διὰ τὸ μὴ
 ταραττεσθαι ἐπὶ τῶν ἵππων δύνανται ἅμα ἱππεύοντες
 καὶ ὁρᾶν καὶ ἀκούειν καὶ λέγειν τὸ δέον, οὕτω κακείνοι
 ἐν τῷ σίτῳ οἴονται δεῖν φρόνιμοι καὶ μέτριοι φαίνεσθαι·
 τὸ δὲ κεκινήσθαι ὑπὸ τῶν βρωμάτων καὶ τῆς πόσεως
 πάννυ αὐτοῖς ὑκὸν καὶ θηριῶδες δοκεῖ εἶναι· ἐνενόησε
 δὲ αὐτῶν καὶ ὡς ἐπηρώτων τε ἀλλήλους τοιαῦτα οἶα
 ἐρωτηθῆναι ἥδιον ἢ μὴ καὶ ἔσκωπτον οἶα σκωφθῆναι
 ἥδιον ἢ μὴ· ἅ τε ἔπαιζον ὡς πολὺ μὲν ὕβρεως ἀπῆν, πολὺ
 δὲ τοῦ αἰσχροῦ τι ποιεῖν, πολὺ δὲ τοῦ χαλεπαίνεσθαι πρὸς
 ἀλλήλους· μέγιστον δ' αὐτῷ ἔδοξεν εἶναι τὸ ἐν στρατείᾳ
 ὄντας τῶν εἰς τὸν αὐτὸν κίνδυνον ἐμβαινόντων μηδεὶν
 οἶεσθαι δεῖν πλείω παρατίθεσθαι, ἀλλὰ τοῦτο νομίζειν
 ἡδίστην εὐωχίαν εἶναι τοὺς συμμάχεσθαι μέλλοντας ὅτι
 βελτίστους παρασκευάζειν· ἡνίκα δὲ Γωβρύας ὡς εἰς οἶκον

|food οὐδὲ |cover; Πέρσης ἀνὴρ τῶν |raise; train
 |drink
 οὗτ' ἂν |eye |panic, be knocked |clearly seen γένοιτο οὔτε
 |out
 ἀρπαγῇ οὔτε τῷ νῷ μὴ οὐχὶ προσκοπεῖν ἅπερ ἂν καὶ
 μὴ ἐπὶ σίτῳ ὦν· ἀλλ' ὥσπερ οἱ |of horses διὰ τὸ μὴ
 |mess things up ἐπὶ τῶν ἵππων δύνανται ἅμα |ride
 καὶ ὁρᾶν καὶ ἀκούειν καὶ λέγειν τὸ δέον, οὕτω κακείνοι
 ἐν τῷ σίτῳ οἴονται δεῖν |sensible, καὶ |medium, ραίνεσθαι·
 |prudent |moderate
 τὸ δὲ κεκινήσθαι ὑπὸ τῶν |food καὶ τῆς |(m) husband, mas-
 |ter; (f) a drink
 πάνυ αὐτοῖς ὑικὸν καὶ |savage, wild ὅκεῖ εἶναι· |consider
 δὲ αὐτῶν καὶ ὥς |consult, ask τε ἀλλήλους τοιαῦτα οἶα
 ἐρωτηθῆναι ἥδιον ἢ μὴ καὶ |joke οἶα |joke
 ἥδιον ἢ μὴ· ἅ τε |play ὥς πολὺ μὲν |hubris ἀπῆν, πολὺ
 δὲ τοῦ |shameful τι ποιεῖν, πολὺ δὲ τοῦ |be violent, rage πρὸς
 ἀλλήλους· μέγιστον δ' αὐτῷ ἔδοξεν εἶναι τὸ ἐν |expedition,
 |campaign
 ὄντας τῶν εἰς τὸν αὐτὸν κίνδυνον |step on, board μηδενὸς
 οἶεσθαι δεῖν πλείω |put near, put at, ἀλλὰ τοῦτο νομίζειν
 |risk
 ἡδίστην |partying εἶναι τοὺς |fight with μέλλοντας ὅτι
 |best, noblest παρασκευάζειν· |when δὲ Γωβρύας ὡς εἰς οἶκον

that not a single Persian who had been schooled would ever gape, or snatch at the viands, or let himself be so absorbed in eating that he could attend to nothing else; these men prided themselves on showing their good sense and their intelligence while they took their food, just as a perfect rider sits his horse with absolute composure, and can look and listen and talk to some purpose while he puts him through his paces. To be excited or flustered by meat and drink was in their eyes something altogether swinish and bestial. Nor did Gobryas fail to notice that they only asked questions which were pleasant to answer, and only jested in a manner to please; all their mirth was as far from impertinence and malice as it was from vulgarity and unseemliness. And what struck him most was their evident feeling that on a campaign, since the danger was the same for all, no one was entitled to a larger share than any of his comrades; on the contrary, it was thought the perfection of the feast to perfect the condition of those who were to share the fighting. And thus when he rose to return home, the story runs that

*vocabulary***ἀσθενής** weak**βέλτιστος** best, noblest**ἐκάτερος** each of two**ἐκπωμα** -τος (n, 3) drinking cup**ἐλαχύς** small; comp.: less ~light**ἐξοπλίζω** prepare, arm ~hoplite**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee**ἐπισκοπέω** look upon, inspect**ἱμάτιον** toga, cloth**ἰσχυρός** (ῥ) strong, forceful, violent**κτάομαι** acquire, possess**πρόειμι** to have been before, earlier

~ion

προσέχω direct to; think about**προσήκω** belong to, it beseems**ὑπάγω** lead under the yoke, lead away

from ~demagogue

φίλιος friendly**χρυσίον** (ῥ) gold coin

ἀπὼν ἀνίστατο, εἰπεῖν λέγεται· Οὐκέτι θαυμάζω, ὦ Κῦρε, εἰ ἐκπώματα μὲν καὶ ἱμάτια καὶ χρυσίον ἡμεῖς ὑμῶν πλέονα κεκτήμεθα, αὐτοὶ δὲ ἐλάττονος ὑμῶν ἄξιοί ἐσμεν. ἡμεῖς μὲν γὰρ ἐπιμελούμεθα ὅπως ἡμῖν ταῦτα ὡς πλείστα ἔσται, ὑμεῖς δέ μοι δοκεῖτε ἐπιμέλестhai ὅπως αὐτοὶ ὡς βέλτιστοι ἔσεσθε. ὁ μὲν ταῦτ' εἶπεν· ὁ δὲ Κῦρος, Ἄγ', ἔφη, ὦ Γωβρύα, ὅπως πρὸ παρέσῃ ἔχων τοὺς ἰππέας ἐξωπλισμένους, ἵνα καὶ τὴν δύναμίν σου ἴδωμεν, καὶ ἅμα διὰ τῆς σῆς χώρας ἄξεις ἡμᾶς, ὅπως ἂν εἰδῶμεν ἅ τε δεῖ φίλια καὶ πολέμια ἡμᾶς νομίζειν.

Τότε μὲν δὴ ταῦτ' εἰπόντες ἀπῆλθον ἑκάτερος ἐπὶ τὰ προσήκοντα.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡμέρα ἐγένετο, παρῆν ὁ Γωβρύας ἔχων τοὺς ἰππέας, καὶ ἤγειτο. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος, ὥσπερ προσήκει ἀνδρὶ ἄρχοντι, οὐ μόνον τῷ πορεύεσθαι τὴν ὁδὸν προσεῖχε τὸν νοῦν, ἀλλ' ἅμα προΐων ἐπεσκοπεῖτο εἴ τι δυνατὸν εἴη τοὺς πολεμίους ἀσθενεστέρους ποιεῖν ἢ αὐτοὺς ἰσχυροτέρους. καλέσας οὖν τὸν Ὑρκάνιον καὶ τὸν Γωβρύαν τούτους γὰρ

be absent, stand up; arouse ἵ' λέγεται· |no more|marvel ὦ Κῦρε,
 go away, drinking cup μὲν καὶ |toga, cloth καὶ |gold coin ἡμεῖς ὑμῶν
 return
 πλέονα |acquire , αὐτοὶ δὲ |small ὑμῶν |worthy. ὕμην.

ἡμεῖς μὲν γὰρ |take care of, oversee ὅπως ἡμῖν ταῦτα ὡς πλείιστα
 ἔσται, ὑμεῖς δέ μοι δοκεῖτε ἐπιμέλестhai ὅπως αὐτοὶ ὡς

|best, noblest ἔσεσθε. ὁ μὲν ταῦτ' εἶπεν· ὁ δὲ Κῦρος, Ἄγ',
 ἔφη, ὦ Γωβρύα, ὅπως πρῶ παρέση ἔχων τοὺς |rider

|prepare, arm , ἵνα καὶ τὴν δύναμίν σου ἴδωμεν, καὶ ἅμα
 διὰ τῆς σῆς |place ἄξεις ἡμᾶς, ὅπως ἂν εἰδῶμεν ἃ τε δεῖ

|friendly καὶ πολέμια ἡμᾶς |consider . cus-
 |tomary; believe

Τότε μὲν δὴ ταῦτ' εἰπόντες ἀπῆλθον |each of two ἑπὶ τὰ

|belong to, it.
 |beseems

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡμέρα ἐγένετο, παρῆν ὁ Γωβρύας ἔχων τοὺς

|rider , καὶ ἡγείτο. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος, ὥσπερ |belong to, ἀνδρὶ
 |it beseems

ἄρχοντι, οὐ μόνον τῷ πορεύεσθαι τὴν ὁδὸν |direct to; ὃν
 |think about

νοῦν, ἀλλ' ἅμα |to have|look upon, inspect . |powerful, εἴη τοὺς
 |been
 |possible

πολεμίους |weak before, ποιεῖν ἢ αὐτοὺς |strong, forceful,
 |earlier |violent

καλέσας οὖν τὸν Ὑρκάνιον καὶ τὸν Γωβρύαν τούτους γὰρ

he said:

"I Begin to understand, Cyrus, how it is that while we have more goblets and more gold, more apparel and more wealth than you, yet we ourselves are not worth as much. We are always trying to increase what we possess, but you seem to set your hearts on perfecting your own souls."

But Cyrus only answered:

"My friend, be here without fail to-morrow, and bring all your cavalry in full armour, so that we may see your power, and then lead us through your country and show us who are hostile and who are friendly."

Thus they parted for the time and each saw to his own concerns.

But when the day dawned Gobryas appeared with his cavalry and led the way. And Cyrus, as a born general would, not only supervised the march, but watched for any chance to weaken the enemy and add to his own strength. With this in view, he summoned the Hyrcanian chief and Gobryas himself; for they were the two

vocabulary

ἀλλότριος someone else's; alien ~alien
ἀποβαίνω leave, get off; turn out
 ~basis
ἀποστροφή turning back, away
ἀποσφάλλω balk at the fruits of; drive
 from one's course
ἐνταῦθα there, here
ἐξαμαρτάνω miss; err, do wrong
ἐπικρατέω rule over
ἐπίσταμαι know how, understand
 ~station
ἐφίστημι set; (mp) come/be near,
 direct, stop ~station
ἰσχυρός (ῥ) strong, forceful, violent
μέλω concern, interest, be one's

responsibility

μισέω (ι) hate, wish to prevent
 ~misogyny
μῖσος -εος (n, 3) hate
ὅπη wherever, however
περαίνω finish, accomplish
πιστός faithful; trustworthy
πιστώ reassure; also (pass) promise
πολεμικός warlike, hostile ~polemic
σκεπτέος thing to consider, one who
 must consider
σκέπτομαι look, look at, watch
 ~skeptic
στρατεύω make an expedition, war,
 campaign ~strategy

ἐνόμιζεν εἰδέναι μάλιστα ὦν αὐτὸς ᾧετο δεῖσθαι μαθεῖν,
 Ἐγὼ τοι, ἔφη, ὦ ἄνδρες φίλοι, οἶμαι σὺν ὑμῖν ἂν ὡς
 πιστοῖς βουλευόμενος περὶ τοῦ πολέμου τοῦδε οὐκ ἂν
 ἐξαμαρτάνειν· ὁρῶ γὰρ ὅτι μᾶλλον ὑμῖν ἢ ἐμοὶ σκεπτέον
 ὅπως ὁ Ἀσσύριος ἡμῶν μὴ ἐπικρατήσῃ. ἐμοὶ μὲν γάρ,
 ἔφη, τῶνδε ἀποσφαλέντι ἔστιν ἴσως καὶ ἄλλη ἀποστροφή·
 ὑμῖν δ', εἰ οὗτος ἐπικρατήσῃ, ὁρῶ ἅμα πάντα τὰ ὄντα
 ἀλλότρια γιγνόμενα. καὶ γὰρ ἐμοὶ μὲν πολέμιός ἐστιν, οὐκ
 ἐμὲ μισῶν, ἀλλ' οἰόμενος ἀσύμφορον αὐτῷ μεγάλους εἶναι
 ἡμᾶς, καὶ στρατεύει διὰ τοῦτο ἐφ' ἡμᾶς· ὑμᾶς δὲ καὶ μισεῖ,
 ἀδικεῖσθαι νομίζων ὑφ' ὑμῶν. πρὸς ταῦτα ἀπεκρίναντο
 ἀμφοτέρωτεροι κατὰ ταῦτά, περαίνειν ὅ τι μέλλει ὡς ταῦτ'
 εἰδόσι σφίσι καὶ μέλον αὐτοῖς ἰσχυρῶς ὅπη τὸ μέλλον
 ἀποβήσοιτο.

Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἤρξατο ὧδε· λέξατε δὴ μοι, ἔφη, ὑμᾶς
 νομίζει μόνους πολεμικῶς ἔχειν ὁ Ἀσσύριος πρὸς ἑαυτόν, ἢ
 ἐπίστασθε καὶ ἄλλον τινὰ αὐτῷ πολέμιον; αἱ μὰ Δί', ἔφη,
 ὁ Ὑρκάνιος, πολεμιώτατοι μὲν εἰσιν αὐτῷ Καδούσιοι,

|consider ^{᾿cūs-}ι μάλιστα ὧν αὐτὸς ᾿ετο δεῖσθαι |learn
|tomary; believe

Ἐγώ τοι, ἔφη, ὦ ἄνδρες φίλοι, οἶμαι σὺν ὑμῖν ἂν ὥς

πιστοῖς |(mp) to deliberate . ἐρὶ τοῦ πολέμου τοῦδε οὐκ ἂν

|miss; err, do wrong ὃ γὰρ ὅτι μᾶλλον ὑμῖν ἢ ἐμοὶ σκεπτέον

ὅπως ὁ Ἀσσύριος ἡμῶν μὴ ἐπικρατήσῃ. ἐμοὶ μὲν γάρ,

ἔφη, τῶνδε |balk, divert ἔστιν |equal καὶ ἄλλη |turning back, away

ὑμῖν δ', εἰ οὗτος ἐπικρατήσῃ, ὀρώ ἅμα πάντα τὰ ὄντα

|someone , ἠγνόμενα. καὶ γὰρ ἐμοὶ μὲν πολέμιός ἐστιν, οὐκ
|else's; alien

ἐμὲ μισῶν, ἀλλ' οἰόμενος ἀσύμφορον αὐτῷ μεγάλους εἶναι

ἡμᾶς, καὶ |make an expedition, . ο ἐφ' ἡμᾶς ὡμᾶς δὲ καὶ |hate
|war, campaign

|be, do wrong;|consider ^{᾿cūs-}ῖμων. πρὸς ταῦτα |to separate; reject; (mp)
|wrong some-|tomary; believe |answer, defend oneself

|one
|both κατὰ ταῦτά, |finish, ὅ τι μέλλει ὥς ταῦτ'
|accomplish

εἰδόσι σφίσι καὶ |be in/on the mind|strong, |wherever, ,μέλλον
|forceful, |however

|leave, get off;
|turn out

|there, here δὴ ἤρξατο |thus λέξατε δὴ μοι, ἔφη, ὡμᾶς

|consider, custom-|warlike, ἔχειν ὁ Ἀσσύριος πρὸς ἑαυτόν, ἢ
|ary; believe |hostile

ἐπίστασθε καὶ ἄλλον τινὰ αὐτῷ πολέμιον; αἱ μὰ Δί, ἔφη,

ὁ Ὑρκάνιος, πολεμώτατοι μὲν εἰσιν αὐτῷ Καδούσιοι,

he thought most likely to give him the information that he needed.

"My friends," said he, "I think I shall not err if I trust to your fidelity and consult you about the campaign. You, even more than I, are bound to see that the Assyrians do not overpower us. For myself, if I fail, there may well be some loophole of escape. But for you, if the king conquers, I see nothing but enmity on every side. For, although he is my enemy, he bears me no malice, he only feels that it is against his interest for me to be powerful and therefore he attacks me. But you he hates with a bitter hatred, believing he is wronged by you."

To this his companions answered that he must finish what he had to say; they were well aware of the facts, and had the deepest interest in the turn events might take.

Thereupon Cyrus put his questions: "Does the king suppose that you alone are his enemies, or do you know of others who hate him too?" "Certainly we do," replied the Hyrcanian, "the Cadousians are his

*vocabulary***ἄλκιμος** brave; sturdily made

~Alexander

ἀσθενέω be weak, sick**βασιλεις** kingly**δήτα** emphatic δή**ἐκτέμνω** cut out, fell ~tonsure**ἐπαινέω** concur, praise, advise**ἐπιβαίνω** (+gen) set foot on, board,
climb ~basis**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism**καταστρέφω** overturn, subdue

~catastrophe

κατηγορέω accuse; indicate**ναός** (ᾱ) temple, shrine ~nostalgia**νεανίσκος** (ᾱ) young man**νῆ** yea**ὄμορος** bordering**οὐκοῦν** not so?; and so**παλλακή** sex slave**πη** somewhere, somehow**πότερος** which, whichever of two**συλλαμβάνω** seize, capture;
understand ~epilepsy**συμπίνω** (ι) drink together**σφόδρα** very much**σφοδρός** vehement**ὕβριζω** insult, treat outrageously

ἔθνος πολὺ τε καὶ ἄλκιμον· Σάκαι γε μὴν ὄμοροι ἡμῖν,
 οἳ κακὰ πολλὰ πεπόνθασιν ὑπὸ τοῦ Ἀσσυρίου· ἐπειρᾶτο
 γὰρ κακείνους ὥσπερ καὶ ἡμᾶς καταστρέψασθαι. Οὐκοῦν,
 ἔφη, οἴεσθε νῦν αὐτοὺς ἀμφοτέρους ἡδέως ἂν ἐπιβῆναι
 μεθ' ἡμῶν τῷ Ἀσσυρίῳ; ἔφασαν καὶ σφόδρ' ἄν, εἰ πῇ
 γε δύναιτο συμμεῖξαι. Τί δ', ἔφη, ἐν μέσῳ ἐστὶ τοῦ
 συμμεῖξαι; Ἀσσύριοι, ἔφασαν, τὸ αὐτὸ ἔθνος δι' οὐπὲρ
 νυνὶ πορεύῃ. ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα ἤκουσεν ὁ Κῦρος, Τί γάρ,
 ἔφη, ὦ Γωβρύα, οὐ σὺ τοῦ νεανίσκου τούτου ὃς νῦν εἰς
 τὴν βασιλείαν καθέστηκεν ὑπερηφανίαν πολλήν τινα τοῦ
 τρόπου κατηγόρεις; οἰαῦτα γάρ, οἶμαι, ἔφη ὁ Γωβρύας,
 ἔπαθον ὑπ' αὐτοῦ. Πότερα δῆτα, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, εἰς σέ
 μόνον τοιοῦτος ἐγένετο ἢ καὶ εἰς ἄλλους τινάς; Νῆ Δί',
 ἔφη ὁ Γωβρύας, καὶ εἰς ἄλλους γε πολλούς· ἀλλὰ τοὺς μὲν
 ἀσθενοῦντας οἷα ὑβρίζει τί δεῖ λέγειν; ἐνὸς δὲ ἀνδρὸς πολὺν
 δυνατωτέρου ἢ ἐγὼ υἱόν, καὶ ἐκείνου ἐταῖρον ὄντα ὥσπερ
 τὸν ἐμόν, συμπίνοντα παρ' ἑαυτῷ συλλαβὼν ἐξέτεμεν, ὥς
 μὲν τινες ἔφασαν, ὅτι ἡ παλλακὴ αὐτοῦ ἐπήνεσεν αὐτὸν

|tribe πολὺ τε καὶ |brave; Σάκαι γε μὴν |bordering, ἡν,
 |sturdily
 οἱ κακὰ πολλὰ πεποιθήσιν ὑπὸ τοῦ Ἀσσυρίου· |try, test
 γὰρ κάκείνους ὥσπερ καὶ ἡμᾶς |overturn, subdue . |not so?; and so
 ἔφη, οἶεσθε νῦν αὐτοὺς |both |sweet ἂν |(+gen) set foot on,
 |board, climb
 μεθ' ἡμῶν τῷ Ἀσσυρίῳ; ἔφασαν καὶ σφόδρ' ἂν, εἰ πῇ
 γε δύναιντο συμμείξαι. Τί δ', ἔφη, ἐν μέσῳ ἐστὶ τοῦ
 συμμείξαι; Ἀσσύριοι, ἔφασαν, τὸ αὐτὸ |tribe δι' οὐπερ
 νυνὶ πορεύη. ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα ἤκουσεν ὁ Κῦρος, Τί γάρ,
 ἔφη, ὦ Γωβρύας, οὐ σὺ τοῦ νεανίσκου τούτου ὃς νῦν εἰς
 τὴν βασιλείαν |set down, land; |τερηφανίαν πολλήν τινα τοῦ
 |become, be
 |turn; |accuse; , οἰαῦτα γάρ, οἶμαι, ἔφη ὁ Γωβρύας,
 |manner, |indicate
 |kind, |emphatic δὴ ὁ Κῦρος, εἰς σὲ
 |fashion |which, |whichever
 ἑπύθην ὑπ' αὐτοῦ. |emphatic δὴ ὁ Κῦρος, εἰς σὲ
 μόνον τοιοῦτος ἐγένετο ἢ καὶ εἰς ἄλλους τινάς; Νῆ Δί,
 ἔφη ὁ Γωβρύας, καὶ εἰς ἄλλους γε πολλούς· ἀλλὰ τοὺς μὲν
 ἀσθενούντας οἷα |insult τί δεῖ λέγειν; ἐνὸς δὲ ἀνδρὸς πολὺ
 |powerful, ἢ ἐγὼ υἱόν, καὶ ἐκείνου ἐταῖρον ὄντα ὥσπερ
 |possible
 τὸν ἐμόν, |drink παρ' ἐαυτῷ |seize, |cut out, fell ὅς
 |together |capture;
 μέν τινες ἔφασαν, ὅτι ἢ |sex slave αὐτοῦ |concur αὐτὸν
 |understand

bitterest foes, and they are both numerous and warlike. Then there are the Sakians, our neighbours, who have suffered severely at his hands, for he tried to subdue them as he subdued us."

"Then you think," said Cyrus, "that they would be glad to attack him in our company?" "Much more than glad," answered they; "if they could manage to join us." "And what stands in their way?" asked he. "The Assyrians themselves," said they, "the very people among whom you are marching now." At that Cyrus turned to Gobryas:

"And what of this lad who is now on the throne? Did you not charge him with unbridled insolence?"

"Even so," replied Gobryas, "and I think he gave me cause." "Tell me," said Cyrus, "were you the only man he treated thus, or did others suffer too?"

"Many others," said Gobryas, "but some of them were weak, and why should I weary you with the insults they endured? I will tell you of a young man whose father was a much greater personage than I, and who was himself, like my own son, a friend and comrade of the prince. One day at a drinking-bout this monster had the youth seized and mutilated, and why? Some say simply because a paramour of his own

*vocabulary***ἀπάγω** lead away, back ~demagogue**ἀποφέρω** carry off, carry back ~bear**εὐνοῦχος** eunuch**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism**μακαρίζω** congratulate ~macarism**ναός** (ᾱ) temple, shrine ~nostalgia**νή** yea**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle

~hoplite

οὐκοῦν not so?; and so**παλλακίς** -δος (f) sex slave**παρίημι** dangle; pass over, allow ~jet**πειράζω** test a person ~pierce**σπείρω** sow ~diaspora**τελευτάω** bring about, finish ~apostle**τοιόσδε** such

ὥς καλὸς εἶη καὶ ἐμακάρισε τὴν μέλλουσαν αὐτῷ γυναῖκα
 ἔσεσθαι· ὥς δ' αὐτὸς νῦν λέγει, ὅτι ἐπείρασεν αὐτοῦ τὴν
 παλλακίδα. καὶ νῦν οὗτος εὐνοῦχος μὲν ἐστὶ, τὴν δ' ἀρχὴν
 ἔχει, ἐπεὶ ὁ πατὴρ αὐτοῦ ἐτελεύτησεν. Οὐκοῦν, ἔφη, οἶε
 ἂν καὶ τοῦτον ἡδέως ἡμᾶς ἰδεῖν, εἰ οἴοιτο αὐτῷ βοηθοὺς
 ἂν γενέσθαι; Εὐ μὲν οὖν, ἔφη, οἶδα, ὁ Γωβρύας· ἀλλ'
 ἰδεῖν τοι αὐτὸν χαλεπὸν ἐστίν, ὦ Κῦρε. Πῶς; ἔφη ὁ
 Κῦρος. Ὅτι εἰ μέλλει τις ἐκείνῳ συμμείξειν, παρ' αὐτὴν
 τὴν Βαβυλῶνα δεῖ παριέναι. Τί οὖν, ἔφη, τοῦτο χαλεπόν;
 Ὅτι νῆ Δί, ἔφη ὁ Γωβρύας, οἶδα ἐξελθοῦσαν ἂν δύναμιν
 ἐξ αὐτῆς πολλαπλασίαν ἥς σὺ ἔχεις νῦν· εὐ δ' ἴσθι ὅτι καὶ
 δι' αὐτὸ τοῦτο ἡττόν σοι νῦν ἢ τὸ πρότερον Ἀσσύριοι καὶ
 τὰ ὄπλα ἀποφέρουσι καὶ τοὺς ἵππους ἀπάγουσιν, ὅτι τοῖς
 ἰδοῦσιν αὐτῶν ὀλίγη ἔδοξεν εἶναι ἡ σὴ δύναμις· καὶ ὁ λόγος
 οὗτος πολλὸς ἤδη ἔσπαρται· δοκεῖ δέ μοι, ἔφη, βέλτιον εἶναι
 φυλαττομένους πορεύεσθαι.

Καὶ ὁ Κῦρος ἀκούσας τοῦ Γωβρύα τοιαῦτα τοιάδε πρὸς
 αὐτὸν ἔλεξε. καλῶς μοι δοκεῖς λέγειν, ὦ Γωβρύα,

ὥς καλὸς εἶη καὶ |congratulate ἤν μέλλουσαν αὐτῷ γυναῖκα
 ἔσεσθαι· ὥς δ' αὐτὸς νῦν λέγει, ὅτι ἐπείρασεν αὐτοῦ τὴν
 |sex slave . καὶ νῦν οὗτος |eunuch μέν ἐστι, τὴν δ' ἀρχὴν
 ἔχει, ἐπεὶ ὁ πατὴρ αὐτοῦ |bring about, |not so?; and so ἴει
 |finish
 ἂν καὶ τοῦτον |sweet ἡμᾶς ἰδεῖν, εἰ οἴοιτο αὐτῷ βοηθοὺς
 ἂν γενέσθαι; Εὐ μὲν οὖν, ἔφη, οἶδα, ὁ Γωβρύας· ἀλλ'
 ἰδεῖν τοι αὐτὸν |hard to bear τιν, ὦ Κῦρε. |how?, why?, ὁ
 Κῦρος. "Ὅτι εἰ μέλλει τις ἐκείνῳ |mix , παρ' αὐτὴν
 τὴν Βαβυλῶνα δεῖ |dangle; pass ἰ οὖν, ἔφη, τοῦτο |hard to bear
 |over, allow
 "Ὅτι νῆ Δί, ἔφη ὁ Γωβρύας, οἶδα ἐξελθοῦσαν ἂν δύναμιν
 ἐξ αὐτῆς πολλαπλασίαν ἥς σὺ ἔχεις νῦν· εὐ δ' ἴσθι ὅτι καὶ
 δι' αὐτὸ τοῦτο ἡττόν σοι νῦν ἢ τὸ πρότερον Ἀσσύριοι καὶ
 τὰ |tool |carry off καὶ τοὺς ἵππους |lead away, back τοῖς
 ἰδοῦσιν αὐτῶν ὀλίγη ἔδοξεν εἶναι ἢ σὴ δύναμις· καὶ ὁ λόγος
 οὗτος πολὺς ἤδη |sow δοκεῖ δέ μοι, ἔφη, βέλτιον εἶναι
 |guard; watch πορεύεσθαι.

Καὶ ὁ Κῦρος ἀκούσας τοῦ Γωβρύα τοιαῦτα |such πρὸς
 αὐτὸν ἔλεξε. καλῶς μοι δοκεῖς λέγειν, ὦ Γωβρύα,

had praised the boy's beauty and said his bride was a woman to be envied. The king himself now asserts it was because he had tried to seduce his paramour. That young man, eunuch as he is, is now at the head of his province, for his father is dead."

"Well," rejoined Cyrus, "I take it, you believe he would welcome us, if he thought we came to help him?" "I am more than sure of that," said Gobryas, "but it is not so easy to set eyes on him." "And why?" asked Cyrus. "Because if we are to join him at all, we must march right past Babylon itself." "And where is the difficulty in that?" said Cyrus. "Heaven help us!" cried Gobryas. "The city has only to open her gates, and she can send out an army ten thousand times as large as yours. That is why," he added, "the Assyrians are less prompt than they were at bringing in their weapons and their horses, because those who have seen your army think it so very small, and their report has got about. So that in my opinion it would be better to advance with the utmost care."

Cyrus listened and replied.

"You do well, Gobryas, my friend, in urging

*vocabulary***ἄημι** blow**ἀπαλλάσσω** free from, remove; be freed, depart**ἀσφαλής** safe, easy, steady, careful**ἀφανής** unseen, occult, obscure**ἐγγίγνομαι** live in ~genus**ἐμφύω** plant; cling ~physics**ἐννοέω** consider**ἐπιδέω** fasten; lack**θαρρέω** be of good heart**θαρσέω** be of good heart**θάρσος** boldness, over-boldness**ἴσκω** imitate, liken to, guess ~victor**κλαίω** weep**κράτιστος** best**πορεία** gait, march**σάφα** with full understanding**σκοπάω** watch, observe**σκοπέω** behold, consider**σκοπός** (f) lookout, overseer, spy,

target ~telescope

στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**συμφορά** collecting; accident, misfortune**τόλμη** courage**τραῦμα** -τος (n, 3) injury**φρόνημα** -τος (n, 3) mind, spirit**φυγή** flight, means of escape ~fugitive

κελεύων ὡς ἀσφαλέστατα τὰς πορείας ποιεῖσθαι. ἔγωγ’
 οὖν σκοπῶν οὐ δύναμαι ἐννοῆσαι ἀσφαλεστέραν οὐδεμίαν
 πορείαν ἡμῖν τῆς πρὸς αὐτὴν Βαβυλῶνα εἶναι, εἰ ἐκεῖ
 τῶν πολεμίων ἐστὶ τὸ κράτιστον. πολλοὶ μὲν γάρ εἰσιν,
 ὡς σὺ φῆς· εἰ δὲ θαρρήσουσι, καὶ δεινοὶ ἡμῖν, ὡς ἐγώ
 φημι, ἔσονται. μὴ ὁρῶντες μὲν οὖν ἡμᾶς, ἀλλ’ οἰόμενοι
 ἀφανεῖς εἶναι διὰ τὸ φοβεῖσθαι ἐκείνους, σάφ’ ἴσθι, ἔφη,
 ὅτι τοῦ μὲν φόβου ἀπαλλάσσονται ὅς αὐτοῖς ἐνεγένετο,
 θάρρος δ’ ἐμφύσεται ἀντὶ τούτου τοσούτῳ μείζον ὅσω
 ἂν πλείονα χρόνον ἡμᾶς μὴ ὁρώσιν· ἦν δὲ ἤδη ἴωμεν
 ἐπ’ αὐτούς, πολλοὺς μὲν αὐτῶν εὐρήσομεν ἔτι κλαίοντας
 τοὺς ἀποθανόντας ὑφ’ ἡμῶν, πολλοὺς δ’ ἔτι τραύματα
 ἐπιδεδεμένους ἃ ὑπὸ τῶν ἡμετέρων ἔλαβον, πάντας δ’
 ἔτι μεμνημένους τῆς μὲν τοῦδε τοῦ στρατεύματος τόλμης,
 τῆς δ’ αὐτῶν φυγῆς τε καὶ συμφορᾶς. εὖ δ’ ἴσθι, ἔφη, ὦ
 Γωβρύα, ἵνα καὶ τοῦτ’ εἰδῆς, οἱ πολλοὶ ἄνθρωποι, ὅταν μὲν
 θαρρῶσιν, ἀνυπόστατον τὸ φρόνημα παρέχονται· ὅταν δὲ
 δείσωσιν, ὅσω ἂν πλείους ᾧσι, τοσούτῳ μείζω

κελεύων ὥς |safe, easy, steady, τὰς |gait, ποιείσθαι. ἔγωγ'
 |careful |march
 οὖν σκοπῶν οὐ δύναμαι |consider |safe, easy, steady, οὐδεμίαν
 |careful
 |gait, ἡμῖν τῆς πρὸς αὐτὴν Βαβυλῶνα εἶναι, εἰ ἐκεί
 |march
 τῶν πολεμίων ἐστὶ τὸ |best πολλοὶ μὲν γάρ εἰσιν,
 ὥς σὺ φήσῃ· εἰ δὲ |be of good heart ἢ δεινοὶ ἡμῖν, ὥς ἐγὼ
 φημι, ἔσονται. μὴ ὀρώντες μὲν οὖν ἡμᾶς, ἀλλ' οἰόμενοι
 |unseen, ὁ-αι διὰ τὸ φοβεῖσθαι ἐκείνους, |clearly ᾗτι, ἔφη,
 |cult, obscure
 ὅτι τοῦ μὲν |fear |free from, remove; ᾗ αὐτοῖς |live in
 |be freed, depart
 |boldness δ' |plant; cling ἀντὶ τούτου |so much μείζον ὅσω
 ἂν πλείονα χρόνον ἡμᾶς μὴ ὀρώσιν· ἣν δὲ ἤδη |imitate, liken to,
 |guess
 ἐπ' αὐτούς, πολλοὺς μὲν αὐτῶν εὐρήσομεν ἔτι |weep
 τοὺς ἀποθανόντας ὑφ' ἡμῶν, πολλοὺς δ' ἔτι |injury
 |fasten; lack ἃ ὑπὸ τῶν |our, my ἔλαβον, πάντας δ'
 ἔτι |remind; (mid) remember, turn one's army |courage ,
 |thoughts to
 τῆς δ' αὐτῶν |flight, means ὁ collecting; acci- δ' ἴσθι, ἔφη, ὦ
 |escape |dent, misfortune
 Γωβρυά, ἵνα καὶ τοῦτ' εἰδῆς, οἱ πολλοὶ ἄνθρωποι, |whenever
 θαρρῶσιν, ἀνυπόστατον τὸ |mind, παρέχονται· |whenever
 |spirit
 δείσωσιν, ὅσω ἂν πλείους ᾧσι, |so much μείζω

as much care as possible. But I cannot myself see a safer route for us than the direct advance on Babylon, if Babylon is the centre of the enemy's strength. They are numerous, you say, and if they are in good heart, we shall soon know it. Now, if they cannot find us and imagine that we have disappeared from fear of them, you may take it as certain that they will be quit of the terror we have inspired. Courage will spring up in its place, and grow the greater the longer we lie hid. But if we march straight on then, we shall find them still mourning for the dead whom we have slain, still nursing the wounds we have inflicted, still trembling at the daring of our troops, still mindful of their own discomfiture and flight. Gobryas," he added, "be assured of this; men in the mass, when aflame with courage, are irresistible, and when their hearts fail them, the more numerous they are the worse the panic

*vocabulary***ἄθροίζω** press close together; (mid)

muster

ἀκριβής (ι) exact**ἀνατρέφω** bring up**ἀπάγω** lead away, back ~demagogue**αὐξάνω** strengthen**ἐκπλήσσω** panic, be knocked out

~plectrum

ἐμβάλλω throw in; inspire a mental

state ~ballistic

ἐξίστημι displace, transform; (+gen)

give up ~station

θαρρέω be of good heart**θαρσέω** be of good heart**θάρσος** boldness, over-boldness**κατανοέω** notice, realize, learn**κατασβέννυμι** (ο) extinguish**κτάομαι** acquire, possess**μέγεθος** -ους (n, 3) tall, big (person)

~megaton

ναός (ᾱ) temple, shrine ~nostalgia**νῆ** yea**νίκη** (ι) victory ~Nike**ὁπότερος** which of two, either of two**ὀρθός** upright, straight; correct, just

~orthogonal

ὀρθόω stand up**παρακελεύομαι** recommend,

encourage

πολεμικός warlike, hostile ~polemic**προσάγω** bring to a place

~demagogue

πρόσθεν before (time, space)**προστίθηναι** add; impose; (mp) agree;

side with ~thesis

σκέπτομαι look, look at, watch

~skeptic

σφάλλω overthrow, balk, stagger**φρόνημα** -τος (n, 3) mind, spirit**χρῶμα** -τος (n, 3) color

καὶ ἐκπεπληγμένον μᾶλλον τὸν φόβον κέκτηνται. ἐκ πολλῶν μὲν γὰρ καὶ κακῶν λόγων ηὔξημένος αὐτοῖς πάρεστιν[, ἐκ πολλῶν δὲ καὶ πονηρῶν χρωμάτων, ἐκ πολλῶν δὲ καὶ δυσθύμων τε καὶ ἐξεστηκότων προσώπων ἡθροισται. ὥσθ' ὑπὸ τοῦ μεγέθους οὐ ράδιον αὐτόν ἐστιν οὔτε λόγοις κατασβέσαι οὔτε προσάγοντα πολεμίοις μένος ἐμβαλεῖν οὔτε ἀπάγοντα ἀναθρέψαι τὸ φρόνημα, ἀλλ' ὅσῳ ἂν μᾶλλον αὐτοῖς θαρρεῖν παρακελεύῃ, τοσούτῳ ἐν δεινότεροις ἡγούνται εἶναι. ἐκείνο μέντοι νῆ Δί', ἔφη, σκεψώμεθα ἀκριβῶς ὅπως ἔχει. εἰ μὲν γὰρ τὸ ἀπὸ τοῦδε αἱ νῦκαι ἔσονται ἐν τοῖς πολεμικοῖς ἔργοις ὁπότεροι ἂν πλείονα ὄχλον ἀπαριθμήσωσιν, ὀρθῶς καὶ σὺ φοβῇ περὶ ἡμῶν καὶ ἡμεῖς τῷ ὄντι ἐν δεινοῖς ἐσμεν· εἰ μέντοι ὥσπερ πρόσθεν διὰ τοὺς εὖ μαχομένους ἔτι καὶ νῦν αἱ μάχαι κρίνονται, θαρρῶν οὐδὲν ἂν σφαλείης· πολὺ μὲν γὰρ σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς πλείονας εὐρήσεις παρ' ἡμῖν τοὺς θέλοντας μάχεσθαι ἢ παρ' ἐκείνοις· ὥς δ' ἔτι μᾶλλον θαρρήσῃς, καὶ τόδε κατανόησον· οἱ μὲν γὰρ πολέμοι πολὺ

καὶ |panic, be knocked out μᾶλλον τὸν |fear |acquire ἐκ
πολλῶν μὲν γὰρ καὶ κακῶν λόγων |strengthen αὐτοῖς
πάρεστιν[, ἐκ πολλῶν δὲ καὶ |oppressed; |color , ἐκ
|knaveish;
πολλῶν δὲ καὶ δυσθύμων τε καὶ |useless |displace, trans-|face
|form; (+gen)
|press close together; ὑπὸ τοῦ |tall, big οὐ ῥάδιον αὐτόν
|(mid) muster
ἐστὶν οὔτε λόγοις |extinguish οὔτε |bring to a place . λεμίοις
|mind, |throw in; inspire |lead away,|bring up τὸ |mind, ,
|spirit, |back |spirit
|prowess
ἀλλ' ὅσῳ ἂν μᾶλλον αὐτοῖς θαρρεῖν |recommend, , |so much
|encourage
ἐν δεινότεροις ἡγούνται εἶναι. ἐκείνο |however ἡ Δ', ἔφη,
|look, look at, watch ὥς ὅπως ἔχει. εἰ μὲν γὰρ τὸ ἀπὸ τοῦδε
αἰ |victory ῥέσσονται ἐν τοῖς |warlike, ἔργοις |which of two,
|hostile |either of two
πλείονα |mob, crowd; trouble σιν, ὀρθῶς καὶ σὺν |scare, περὶ
|scare
ἡμῶν καὶ ἡμεῖς τῷ ὄντι ἐν δεινοῖς ἐσμεν· εἰ |however ὥσπερ
|away
πρόσθεν διὰ τοὺς εὖ μαχομένους ἔτι καὶ νῦν αἰ μάχαι
|separate , θαρρῶν οὐδὲν ἂν |overthrow, balk ἢ μὲν γὰρ σὺν
τοῖς θεοῖς πλείονας εὐρήσεις παρ' ἡμῖν τοὺς θέλοντας
μάχεσθαι ἢ παρ' ἐκείνοις· ὥς δ' ἔτι μᾶλλον θαρρήσ, καὶ
τόδε |notice, realize, οἱ μὲν γὰρ πολέμοι πολὺν
|learn

that seizes them. It comes upon them magnified by a thousand lies, blanched by a thousand pallors, it gathers head from a thousand terror-stricken looks, until it grows so great that no orator can allay it by his words, no general arouse the old courage by a charge, or revive the old confidence by retreat; the more their leader cheers them on, the worse do the soldiers take their case to be. Now by all means let us see exactly how things stand with us. If from henceforward victory must fall to those who can reckon the largest numbers, your fears for us are justified, and we are indeed in fearful danger; but if the old rule still holds, and battles are decided by the qualities of those who fight, then, I say, take heart and you will never fail. You will find far more stomach for the fight among our ranks than theirs. And to hearten you the more, take note

vocabulary

ἀκόλουθος following, attending
ἀποδιδράσκω escape
ἀτιμάζω (ι) insult, dishonor
γοργός fierce; vigorous
ἐλαχός small; comp.: less ~light
ἔξιμι go forth; is possible ~ion
ἔπω (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of
ἡσάομαι (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (active) defeat
θαρρέω be of good heart
θαρσέω be of good heart

ἰσχυρός (ῥ) strong, forceful, violent
καταθέω run down
κατακαίνω kill
ὄπλον tool, weapon, ship's tackle
 ~hoplite
ὄριον boundary
οὐδαμός not anyone
πρόβατον cattle, flocks, herds
προσγίγνομαι become ally to
σάφα with full understanding
τάξις -εως (f) arrangement, military unit

μὲν ἐλάττονές εἰσι νῦν ἢ πρὶν ἡττηθῆναι ὑφ' ἡμῶν, πολὺν δ' ἐλάττονες ἢ ὅτε ἀπέδρασαν ἡμᾶς· ἡμεῖς δὲ καὶ μείζονες νῦν, ἐπεὶ νενικήκαμεν, καὶ ἰσχυρότεροι, ἐπεὶ ὑμεῖς ἡμῖν προσγεγέννησθε· μὴ γὰρ ἔτι ἀτίμαξε μηδὲ τοὺς σοὺς, ἐπεὶ σὺν ἡμῖν εἰσι· σὺν γὰρ τοῖς νικῶσι, σάφ' ἴσθι, ὦ Γωβρύα, θαρροῦντες καὶ οἱ ἀκόλουθοι ἔπονται. μὴ λανθανέτω δέ σε μηδὲ τοῦτο, ἔφη, ὅτι ἔξεστι μὲν τοῖς πολεμίοις καὶ νῦν ἰδεῖν ἡμᾶς· γοργότεροι δέ, σάφ' ἴσθι, οὐδαμῶς ἂν αὐτοῖς φανείημεν ἢ ἰόντες ἐπ' ἐκείνους. ὥς οὖν ἐμοῦ ταῦτα γιγνώσκοντος ἄγε ἡμᾶς εὐθὺ τὴν ἐπὶ Βαβυλῶνος.

5.3

Οὕτω μὲν δὴ πορευόμενοι τεταρταῖοι πρὸς τοῖς ὁρίοις τῆς Γωβρύα χώρας ἐγένοντο. ὥς δὲ ἐν τῇ πολεμίᾳ ἦν, κατέστησε λαβὼν ἐν τάξει μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ τοὺς τε πεζοὺς καὶ τῶν ἱππέων ὅσους ἐδόκει καλῶς αὐτῷ ἔχειν· τοὺς δ' ἄλλους ἱππέας ἀφήκε καταθεῖν, καὶ ἐκέλευσε τοὺς μὲν ὅπλα ἔχοντας κατακαίνειν, τοὺς δ' ἄλλους καὶ πρόβατα ὅσα ἂν λάβωσι πρὸς αὐτὸν ἄγειν. ἐκέλευσε δὲ καὶ

μὲν |small εἰσι νῦν ἢ |be- (pass) be weaker, be over- γολὺ
 δ' |small ἢ ὅτε |escape for- come; (active) defeat
 νῦν, ἐπεὶ |win, defeat , καὶ |until, strong, force-, ἐπεὶ ὑμεῖς ἡμῖν
 |become ally to μὴ γὰρ ἔτι |dishonor |and not; not even, ἐπεὶ
 σὺν ἡμῖν εἰσι· σὺν γὰρ τοῖς |win, de-|clearly' θι, ὦ Γωβρύα,
 θαρροῦντες καὶ οἱ |following, ἔπονται. μὴ |escape notice;
 |attending (mp+gen) forget
 σε |and not; not even' -, ὅτι ἔξεστι μὲν τοῖς πολεμίοις καὶ
 νῦν ἰδεῖν ἡμᾶς· |fierce; δέ, |clearly' σθι, |not anyone ἔν
 |vigorous
 αὐτοῖς φανείημεν ἢ ἰόντες ἐπ' ἐκείνους. ὥς οὖν ἐμοῦ ταῦτα
 γιγνώσκοντος ἄγε ἡμᾶς εὐθὺ τὴν ἐπὶ Βαβυλῶνος.

5.3

Οὕτω μὲν δὴ πορευόμενοι τεταρταῖοι πρὸς τοῖς |boundary
 τῆς Γωβρύα |place ἐγένοντο. ὥς δὲ ἐν τῇ πολεμίᾳ ἦν,
 |set down, land; βῶν ἐν τάξει μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ τοὺς τε |on foot; footsoldier
 |become, be
 καὶ τῶν |rider ὅσους ἐδόκει καλῶς αὐτῷ ἔχειν· τοὺς
 δ' ἄλλους |rider ἀφῆκε |run down , καὶ ἐκέλευσε τοὺς μὲν
 |tool ἔχοντας |kill , τοὺς δ' ἄλλους καὶ |cattle, flocks,
 |herds
 ὅσα ἂν λάβωσι πρὸς αὐτὸν ἄγειν. ἐκέλευσε δὲ καὶ

of this: our enemies are far fewer now than when we worsted them, far weaker than when they fled from us, while we are stronger because we are conquerors, and greater because fortune has been ours; yes, and actually more numerous because you and yours have joined us, for I would not have you hold your men too low, now that they are side by side with us. In the company of conquerors, Gobryas, the hearts of the followers beat high. Nor should you forget," he added, "that the enemy is well able to see us as it is, and the sight of us will certainly not be more alarming if we wait for him where we are than if we advance against him. That is my opinion, and now you must lead us straight for Babylon."

5.3

And so the march continued, and on the fourth day they found themselves at the limit of the territory over which Gobryas ruled. Since they were now in the enemy's country Cyrus changed the disposition of his men, taking the infantry immediately under his own command, with sufficient cavalry to support them, and sending the rest of the mounted troops to scour the land. Their orders were to cut down every one with arms in his hands, and drive in the rest, with all the cattle they could find. The Persians were ordered to take part in

vocabulary

ἄνευ away from; not having; not
needing ~Sp. sin

ἄρα interrogative pcl

ἄρή bane, harm; prayer

ἄρῃν ἄρονός (m, 3) lamb, sheep; wool

ἄρης war, warlike spirit

δαρεικός Persian coin

ἐξαιρέω pick, steal; dedicate; destroy
~heresy

ἐπαινέω concur, praise, advise

κατακυλίνδω roll down, throw off

κατακυλίω roll down, throw off

λεία booty

λεῖος smooth

μεστός full

ξενίζω be host, treat as a guest

~xenophobe

ὀμότιμος (ῖ) equally honored

πείρω pierce, run through ~pierce

Πέρσης Persian

πτωχός poor, beggarly ~pudendum

στρατιά army ~strategy

συγκαλέω call together ~gallo

φανερός visible, conspicuous ~photon

φιάλη jar ~vial

χρυσός (ϝ) gold

χρυσόω (ϝ) make golden, gild

τοὺς Πέρσας συγκαταθεῖν· καὶ ἦκον πολλοὶ μὲν αὐτῶν
 κατακεκυλισμένοι ἀπὸ τῶν ἵππων, πολλοὶ δὲ καὶ λείαν
 πλείστην ἄγοντες. ὥς δὲ παρῆν ἡ λεία, συγκαλέσας
 τοὺς τε τῶν Μήδων ἄρχοντας καὶ τῶν Ὑρκανίων καὶ
 τοὺς ὁμοτίμους ἔλεξεν ὦδε. Ἄνδρες φίλοι, ἐξένισεν
 ἡμᾶς ἅπαντας πολλοῖς ἀγαθοῖς Γωβρύας. εἰ οὖν, ἔφη,
 τοῖς θεοῖς ἐξελόντες τὰ νομιζόμενα καὶ τῇ στρατιᾷ τὰ
 ἱκανὰ τὴν ἄλλην τούτῳ δοίημεν λείαν, ἂρ' ἄν, ἔφη,
 καλὸν ποιήσαιμεν τῷ εὐθὺς φανεροῖ εἶναι ὅτι καὶ τοὺς
 εὖ ποιούντας πειρώμεθα νικᾶν εὖ ποιούντες; ὥς δὲ τοῦτ'
 ἤκουσαν, πάντες μὲν ἐπήγουν, πάντες δ' ἐνεκωμιάζον· εἰς
 δὲ καὶ ἔλεξεν ὦδε· Πάνν, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, τοῦτο ποιήσωμεν·
 καὶ γάρ μοι δοκεῖ, ἔφη, ὁ Γωβρύας πτωχούς τινας ἡμᾶς
 νομίζειν, ὅτι οὐ δαρεικῶν μεστοὶ ἤκομεν οὐδὲ ἐκ χρυσῶν
 πίνομεν φιαλῶν· εἰ δὲ τοῦτο ποιήσομεν, γνοίη ἄν, ἔφη,
 ὅτι ἔστιν ἐλευθερίους εἶναι καὶ ἄνευ χρυσοῦ. Ἄγε δὴ, ἔφη,
 τὰ τῶν θεῶν ἀποδόντες τοῖς μάγοις καὶ ὅσα τῇ στρατιᾷ
 ἱκανὰ ἐξελόντες τᾶλλα καλέσαντες τὸν Γωβρύαν δότε

τοὺς Πέρσας συγκαταθεῖν· καὶ ^{|be present, ἰ}_{|have arrived} μὲν αὐτῶν
 κατακεκυλισμένοι ἀπὸ τῶν ἵππων, πολλοὶ δὲ καὶ λείαν
 πλείστην ἄγοντες. ὥς δὲ παρῆν ἡ λεία, ^{|call together}
 τοὺς τε τῶν Μήδων ἄρχοντας καὶ τῶν Ὑρκανίων καὶ
 τοὺς ^{|equally}_{|honored} ἔλεξεν ^{|thus} Ἄνδρες φίλοι, ^{|be host}
 ἡμᾶς ἅπαντας πολλοῖς ἀγαθοῖς Γωβρύας. εἰ οὖν, ἔφη,
 τοῖς θεοῖς ^{|pick, steal; dedi-}_{|cate; destroy} ^{|consider} ^{cus-}_{|tomary; believe} τῇ ^{|army} τὰ
^{|sufficient; ἰ}_{|fit, empowered} ἄλλην τούτῳ δοίημεν λείαν, ἂρ' ἄν, ἔφη,
 καλὸν ποιήσαιμεν τῷ εὐθὺς ^{|visible,}_{|conspicuous} αἰ ὅτι καὶ τοὺς
 εὖ ποιοῦντας πειρώμεθα ^{|win, defeat} οιοῦντες; ὥς δὲ τοῦτ'
 ἤκουσαν, πάντες μὲν ^{|concur} , πάντες δ' ἐνεκωμιάζον· εἰς
 δὲ καὶ ἔλεξεν ^{|thus} ^{|altogether, very} Κῦρε, τοῦτο ποιήσωμεν·
 καὶ γάρ μοι δοκεῖ, ἔφη, ὁ Γωβρύας ^{|poor,}_{|beggarly} τινὰς ἡμᾶς
^{|consider} , ^ἰ_{|custom-} ^{|Persian coin} ^{|full} ^{|be present, ἰ}_{|have arrived} ἐκ χρυσῶν
^{|drink} ^{|jar} εἰ δὲ τοῦτο ποιήσομεν, γνοίη ἄν, ἔφη,
 ὅτι ἔστιν ἐλευθερίους εἶναι καὶ ^{|away from; not ἰ}_{|ing; not needing} δῆ, ἔφη,
 τὰ τῶν θεῶν ^{|repay} τοῖς μάγοις καὶ ὅσα τῇ ^{|army}
^{|suffi-}_{|cient;} ^{|pick, steal; dedi-}_{|cate; destroy} α καλέσαντες τὸν Γωβρύαν δότε
^{|fit, em-}_{|pow-}_{|ered}

this raid, and though many came home with nothing for their trouble but a toss from their horses, others brought back a goodly store of booty.

When the spoil was all brought in, Cyrus summoned the officers of the Medes and the Hyrcanians, as well as his own peers, and spoke as follows:

"My friends, Gobryas has entertained us nobly; he has showered good things upon us. What say you then? After we have set aside the customary portion for the gods and a fair share for the army, shall we not give all the rest of the spoil to him? Would it not be a noble thing, a sign and symbol at the outset that we desire to outdo in well-doing those who do good to us?"

At that all his hearers with one consent applauded, and a certain officer rose and said:

"By all means, Cyrus, let us do so. I myself cannot but feel that Gobryas must have thought us almost beggars because we were not laden with coins of gold and did not drink from golden goblets. But if we do this, he will understand that men may be free and liberal without the help of gold."

"Come then," said Cyrus, "let us pay the priests our debt to heaven, select what the army requires, and then summon Gobryas and give the

*vocabulary***ἀνιάω** (ĩ) vex**ἀνίημι** urge, impel; release ~jet**ἀπαγγέλλω** announce, order, promise

~angel

ἀπάγω lead away, back ~demagogue**ἀσφαλής** safe, easy, steady, careful**δεσπότης** -ου (m, 1) master, despot**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous**ἐκπέμπω** send forth ~pomp**ἔξειμι** go forth; is possible ~ion**λάσκω** cry, crack, ring**λήγω** cease, (+gen+ppl) cause to cease
~lax**μεταμέλομαι** (impers.+dat.) cause

regret to; (mp) regret

μήποτε absolutely never**οὐπω** no longer**παρατάσσω** place beside**προσελαύνω** go to, approach ~elastic**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**σχολή** rest, leisure**τοιόσδε** such

αὐτῷ· οὕτω δὴ λαβόντες ἐκείνοι ὅσα ἔδει τὰλλα ἔδοσαν
τῷ Γωβρύᾳ.

Ἐκ τούτου δὴ ἦι πρὸς Βαβυλῶνα παραταξάμενος ὥσπερ
ὅτε ἡ μάχη ἦν. ὥς δ' οὐκ ἀντεξῆσαν οἱ Ἀσσύριοι,
ἐκέλευσεν ὁ Κῦρος τὸν Γωβρύαν προσελάσαντα εἰπεῖν ὅτι
εἰ βούλεται ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐξιὼν ὑπὲρ τῆς χώρας μάχεσθαι,
κἂν αὐτὸς σὺν ἐκείνῳ μάχοιτο· εἰ δὲ μὴ ἀμυνεῖ τῇ χώρᾳ,
ὅτι ἀνάγκη τοῖς κρατοῦσι πείθεσθαι. ὁ μὲν δὴ Γωβρύας
προσελάσας ἔνθα ἀσφαλὲς ἦν ταῦτα εἶπεν, ὁ δ' αὐτῷ
ἐξέπεμψεν ἀποκρινόμενον τοιάδε· Δεσπότης ὁ σὸς λέγει,
ὦ Γωβρύα, Οὐχ ὅτι ἀπέκτεινά σου τὸν υἱὸν μεταμέλει
μοι, ἀλλ' ὅτι οὐ καὶ σὲ προσαπέκτεινα. μάχεσθαι δὲ ἐὰν
βούλησθε, ἦκετε εἰς τριακοστὴν ἡμέραν· νῦν δ' οὐπω ἡμῖν
σχολή· ἔτι γὰρ παρασκευαζόμεθα. ὁ δὲ Γωβρύας εἶπεν·
Ἀλλὰ μήποτε σοι λήξειεν αὕτη ἡ μεταμέλεια· δηλον γὰρ
ὅτι ἀνιῶ σέ τι, ἐξ οὗ αὕτη σε ἡ μεταμέλεια ἔχει.

Ὁ Μὲν δὴ Γωβρύας ἀπήγγειλε τὰ τοῦ Ἀσσυρίου· ὁ δὲ
Κῦρος ἀκούσας ταῦτα ἀπήγαγε τὸ στράτευμα· καὶ

αὐτῷ· οὕτω δὴ λαβόντες ἐκεῖνοι ὅσα ἔδει τὰλλα ἔδοσαν
τῷ Γωβρύᾳ.

Ἐκ τούτου δὴ ἦει πρὸς Βαβυλῶνα |place beside ὥσπερ
ὅτε ἡ μάχη ἦν. ὥς δ' οὐκ ἀντεξῆσαν οἱ Ἀσσύριοι,
ἐκέλευσεν ὁ Κῦρος τὸν Γωβρύαν |go to, approach εἰπεῖν ὅτι
εἰ βούλεται ὁ βασιλεὺς |go forth; ἴσῃ τῆς |place μάχεσθαι,
|is possible
κὰν αὐτὸς σὺν ἐκείνῳ μάχοιτο· εἰ δὲ μὴ |ward off; |place ,
|defend;
ὅτι |necessity τοῖς |rule πείθεσθαι. ὁ |have
|revenge
|go to, approach ὣνθα |safe, easy, ταῦτα εἶπεν, ὁ δ' αὐτῷ
|steady, careful
|send forth |to separate; reject; such |master, ὁ σὸς λέγει,
(mp) answer, de- |despot
ὦ Γωβρύᾳ, οὐχ ὅτι |kill σου τὸν υἱὸν |(impers.+dat.) cause
|regret to; (mp) regret
μοι, ἀλλ' ὅτι οὐ καὶ σὲ προσαπέκτεινα. μάχεσθαι δὲ ἐὰν
βούλησθε, |be present, ιακοστὴν ἡμέραν· νῦν δ' |no longer ἔν
|have arrived
|rest, ἔτι γὰρ |prepare, render . ὁ δὲ Γωβρύας εἶπεν·
|leisure
Ἀλλὰ |absolutely οἱ λήξειεν αὕτη ἡ μεταμέλεια· |visible, ἴσῃ
|never |conspicuous
ὅτι ἀνιῶ σέ τι, ἐξ οὗ αὕτη σε ἡ μεταμέλεια ἔχει.

Ὁ Μὲν δὴ Γωβρύας |announce, or- ἰ τοῦ Ἀσσυρίου· ὁ δὲ
|der, promise
Κῦρος ἀκούσας ταῦτα |lead away |army καὶ
|back

rest to him.”

So they took what they needed and gave all the rest to Gobryas.

Forthwith Cyrus pressed on towards Babylon, his troops in battle order. But as the Assyrians did not come out to meet them, he bade Gobryas ride forward and deliver this message:

”If the king will come out to fight for his land, I, Gobryas, will fight for him, but, if he will not defend his own country, we must yield to the conquerors.”

So Gobryas rode forward, just far enough to deliver the message in safety. And the king sent a messenger to answer him:

”Thy master says to thee: ‘It repents me, Gobryas, not that I slew thy son, but that I stayed my hand from slaying thee. And now if ye will do battle, come again on the thirtieth day from hence. We have no leisure now, our preparations are still on foot.’ ”

And Gobryas made answer:

”It repents thee: may that repentance never cease! I have begun to make thee suffer, since the day repentance took hold on thee.”

Then Gobryas brought back the words of the king to Cyrus, and Cyrus led his army off, and then

vocabulary

ἄρα interrogative pcl
ἄρή bane, harm; prayer
ἄρῃν ἄρνός (m, 3) lamb, sheep; wool
ἄρης war, warlike spirit
βλάπτω break, make fail
ἐκτέμνω cut out, fell ~tonsure
ἐπειδάν when, after
μηχανάομαι build, contrive
 ~mechanism
παρίημι dangle; pass over, allow ~jet
πρίαμαι buy
πρόβολος thing sticking out ~ballistic

πρόσειμι approach, draw near; add
 ~ion
προσίημι be allowed near
σκοπάω watch, observe
σκοπέω behold, consider
συγγίγνομαι associate with, meet, have
 sex ~genus
τοίνυν well, then
φρουράρχης -ου (m, 1) garrison
 commander
φρούραρχος garrison commander
φρούριον fort
ὠνέομαι buy

καλέσας τὸν Γωβρύαν Εἰπέ μοι, ἔφη, οὐκ ἔλεγες μέντοι σὺ ὅτι τὸν ἐκτμηθέντα ὑπὸ τοῦ Ἀσσυρίου οἶε ἂν σὺν ἡμῖν γενέσθαι; Εὖ μὲν οὖν, ἔφη, δοκῶ εἰδέναι· πολλὰ γὰρ δὴ ἔγωγε κάκεινος ἐπαρρησιασάμεθα πρὸς ἀλλήλους. Ὅποτε τοίνυν σοι δοκεῖ καλῶς ἔχειν, πρόσιθι πρὸς αὐτόν· καὶ πρῶτον μὲν οὕτω ποίει ὅπως ἂν αὐτοὶ ὅ τι ἂν λέγῃ εἰδῇτε· ἐπειδὰν δὲ συγγένῃ αὐτῷ, ἐὰν γνῶς αὐτὸν φίλον βουλόμενον εἶναι, τοῦτο δεῖ μηχανᾶσθαι ὅπως λάθῃ φίλος ὢν ἡμῖν· οὔτε γὰρ ἂν φίλους τις ποιήσειεν ἄλλως πως πλείω ἀγαθὰ ἐν πολέμῳ ἢ πολέμιος δοκῶν εἶναι οὔτ' ἂν ἐχθροὺς πλείω τις βλάψειεν ἄλλως πως ἢ φίλος δοκῶν εἶναι. Καὶ μὴν, ἔφη ὁ Γωβρύας, οἶδ' ὅτι κὰν πρίαίτο Γαδάτας τὸ μέγα τι ποιῆσαι κακὸν τὸν νῦν βασιλέα Ἀσσυρίων. ἀλλ' ὅ τι ἂν δύναιτο, τοῦτο δεῖ καὶ ἡμᾶς σκοπεῖν. λέγε δὴ μοι, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, εἰς τὸ φρούριον τὸ πρὸ τῆς χώρας, ὃ φατε Ὑρκανίοις τε καὶ Σάκαις ἐπιτετειχίσθαι τῇδε τῇ χώρᾳ πρόβολον εἶναι τοῦ πολέμου, ἄρ' ἂν, ἔφη, οἶε ὑπὸ τοῦ φρουράρχου παρεθῆναι τὸν

καλέσας τὸν Γωβρύαν Εἰπέ μοι, ἔφη, οὐκ ἔλεγες |however
 σὺ ὅτι τὸν |cut out, fell ὑπὸ τοῦ Ἀσσυρίου οἶε ἂν σὺν
 ἡμῖν γενέσθαι; Εὖ μὲν οὖν, ἔφη, δοκῶ εἰδέναι· πολλὰ
 γὰρ δὴ ἔγωγε κάκεινος ἐπαρρησιασάμεθα πρὸς ἀλλήλους.
 |when |well, then ι δοκεῖ καλῶς ἔχειν, πρόσιθι πρὸς αὐτόν·
 καὶ πρῶτον μὲν οὕτω ποίει ὅπως ἂν αὐτοὶ ὅ τι ἂν λέγῃ
 εἰδῇτε· |when, |after δὲ |associate with, |meet, have sex, εἰς γυνῶς αὐτὸν φίλον
 βουλόμενον εἶναι, τοῦτο δέ |build, contrive ὅπως |escape, notice; (mp+gen) |forget
 ὦν ἡμῖν· οὔτε γὰρ ἂν φίλους τις ποιήσειεν ἄλλως |somehow
 πλείω ἀγαθὰ ἐν πολέμῳ ἢ πολέμιος δοκῶν εἶναι οὐτ' ἂν
 |hated, distasteful τις |break, make fail |somehow ἴλος δοκῶν
 εἶναι. Καὶ μὲν, ἔφη ὁ Γωβρύας, οἶδ' ὅτι κὰν πρίατο
 Γαδάτας τὸ μέγα τι ποιῆσαι κακὸν τὸν νῦν βασιλέα
 Ἀσσυρίων. ἀλλ' ὅ τι ἂν δύναιτο, τοῦτο δέ καὶ ἡμᾶς
 σκοπεῖν. λέγε δὴ μοι, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, εἰς τὸ |fort
 τὸ |before, |place, ὅ φατε Ὑρκανίοις τε καὶ Σάκαις
 |forward
 ἐπιτετειχίσθαι τῇδε τῇ |place |thing |είναι τοῦ πολέμου,
 |sticking
 ἄρ' ἂν, ἔφη, οἶε ὑπὸ τοῦ φρουράρχου |out |dangle; pass |τὸν
 |over, allow

he summoned Gobryas and said to him:

"Surely you told me that you thought the man who was made an eunuch by the king would be upon our side?"

"And I am sure he will," answered Gobryas, "for we have spoken freely to each other many a time, he and I." "Then," said Cyrus, "you must go to him when you think the right moment has come: and you must so act at first that only he and you may know what he intends, and when you are closeted with him, if you find he really wishes to be a friend, you must contrive that his friendship remain a secret: for in war a man can scarcely do his friends more good than by a semblance of hostility, or his enemies more harm than under the guise of friendship." "Aye," answered Gobryas, "and I know that Gadatas would pay a great price to punish the king of Assyria. But it is for us to consider what he can best do." "Tell me now," rejoined Cyrus, "you spoke of an outpost, built against the Hyrcanians and the Sakians, which was to protect Assyria in time of war,—could the eunuch be admitted there by the commandant if he came with a

vocabulary

ἀντιλαμβάνω grasp; get instead, in turn

ἅπαξ once

ἀπομάχομαι fight off

γούν at least then

διαπράσσω travel over, accomplish
~practice

εἰκός likely

εἴπερ if indeed

ἐνδον in the house of; within

ἐξωθεν from outside

εὐνοῦχος eunuch

ἴσχω imitate, liken to, guess ~victor

ἰσχυρός (ῥ) strong, forceful, violent

κλῖμαξ -κος (f) ladder, staircase

~climax

κράτος strength, power; victory

~democracy

οὐκοῦν not so?; and so

πιστός faithful; trustworthy

προσάγω bring to a place

~demagogue

προσβάλλω hit, attack, approach;
attach, offer ~ballistic

προσποιέω give over to; pretend

~poet

σαφής clear, understandable

στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy

συμπαρασχευάζω help prepare

ὑπάγω lead under the yoke, lead away
from ~demagogue

ὑποχείριος under one's hand ~chiral

φρούριον fort

χωρίον area; downwards

εὐνοῦχον ἐλθόντα σὺν δυνάμει; Σαφῶς γ', ἔφη ὁ Γωβρύας,
 εἶπερ ἀνύποπτος ὢν, ὥσπερ νῦν ἐστίν, ἀφίκοιτο πρὸς
 αὐτόν. Οὐκοῦν, ἔφη, ἀνύποπτος ἂν εἴη, εἰ προσβάλοιμι
 μὲν ἐγὼ πρὸς τὰ χωρία αὐτοῦ ὡς λαβεῖν βουλόμενος,
 ἀπομάχοιτο δὲ ἐκείνος ἀνὰ κράτος· καὶ λάβοιμι μὲν αὐτοῦ
 τι ἐγώ, ἀντιλάβοι δὲ καὶ ἐκείνος ἡμῶν ἢ ἄλλους τινὰς ἢ καὶ
 ἀγγέλους πεμπομένους ὑπ' ἐμοῦ πρὸς τούτους οὓς φατε
 πολεμίους τῷ Ἀσσυρίῳ εἶναι· καὶ οἱ μὲν ληφθέντες λέγοιεν
 ὅτι ἐπὶ στρατεύματα ἔρχονται καὶ κλίμακας ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ
 φρούριον ἄξοντες, ὁ δ' εὐνοῦχος ἀκούσας προσποιήσαιο
 προαγγεῖλαι βουλόμενος ταῦτα παρῆναι; καὶ ὁ Γωβρύας
 εἶπεν ὅτι οὕτω μὲν γιγνομένων σαφῶς παρῆναι ἂν αὐτόν,
 καὶ δέοιτό γ' ἂν αὐτοῦ μένειν ἔστε σὺ ἀπέλθοις. Οὐκοῦν,
 ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, εἴ γε ἅπαξ εἰσέλθοι, δύναιτ' ἂν ἡμῖν
 ὑποχείριον ποιῆσαι τὸ χωρίον; Εἰκὸς γοῦν, ἔφη ὁ
 Γωβρύας, τὰ μὲν ἔνδον ἐκείνου συμπαρασκευάζοντος, τὰ
 δ' ἔξωθεν σοῦ ἰσχυρότερα προσάγοντος. Ἰθι οὖν, ἔφη, καὶ
 πειρῶ ταῦτα διδάξας καὶ διαπραξάμενος παρῆναι· πιστὰ

|eunuch ἐλθόντα σὺν δυνάμει; |clear, under-^{standable} φη ὁ Γωβρύας,
 |if indeed ὑπόπτος ὢν, ὥσπερ νῦν ἐστίν, |arrive πρὸς
 αὐτόν. |not so?; and, so, ἀνύποπτος ἂν εἴη, εἰ |hit, attack, approach; at-
 |tach, offer
 μὲν ἐγὼ πρὸς τὰ |area; down^{wards} ἵς λαβεῖν βουλόμενος,
 |fight off δὲ ἐκεῖνος ἀνὰ |strength, |vic-
 |power; tory
 τι ἐγώ, |grasp; get in^{stead}, in turn ἐκείνους ἡμῶν ἢ ἄλλους τινὰς ἢ καὶ
 |messenger πεμπομένους ὑπ' ἐμοῦ πρὸς τούτους οὓς φατε
 πολεμίους τῷ Ἀσσυρίῳ εἶναι· καὶ οἱ μὲν ληφθέντες λέγοιεν
 ὅτι ἐπὶ |army ἔρχονται καὶ κλίμακας ὥς ἐπὶ τὸ
 |fort ἄξοντες, ὁ δ' |eunuch ἀκούσας |give over to; pre-
 |tend
 προαγγεῖλαι βουλόμενος ταῦτα παρεῖναι; καὶ ὁ Γωβρύας
 εἶπεν ὅτι οὕτω μὲν γιγνομένων |clear, under-^{standable} εἴη ἂν αὐτόν,
 καὶ δέοιτό γ' ἂν αὐτοῦ μένειν ἔστε σὺ ἀπέλθοις. |not so?; and so
 ἔφη ὁ Κύρος, εἰ γε |once εἰσέλθοι, δύναιτ' ἂν ἡμῖν
 |under one's hand ἵσαι τὸ |area; down-|likely |at least then, ὁ
 |wards
 Γωβρύας, τὰ μὲν |in the house νυ συμπαρασκευάζοντος, τὰ
 |of; within
 δ' |from outside |strong, force-|bring to a place. |imitate, liken^{to}, καὶ
 |ful, violent |to, guess
 |try, test ταῦτα διδάξας καὶ |travel over, ac-^{complish} παρεῖναι· |faithful;
 |trustworthy

force at his back?" "Certainly he could," said Gobryas, "if he were as free from suspicion as he is to-day." "And free he would be," Cyrus went on, "if I were to attack his strongholds as though in earnest, and he were to repel me in force. I might capture some of his men, and he some of my soldiers, or some messengers sent by me to those you say are the enemies of Assyria, and these prisoners would let it be known that they were on their way to fetch an army with scaling-ladders to attack this fortress, and the eunuch, hearing their story, would pretend that he came to warn the commandant in time." "Undoubtedly," said Gobryas, "if things went thus, the commandant would admit him; he would even beg him to stay there until you withdrew."

"And then," Cyrus continued, "once inside the walls, he could put the place into our hands?" "We may suppose so," said Gobryas. "He would be there to settle matters within, and you would be redoubling the pressure from without."

"Then be off at once," said Cyrus, "and do your best to teach him his part, and when you have arranged affairs, come back to me; and as

vocabulary

ἀπαγγέλλω announce, order, promise
 ~angel
ἀπομάχομαι fight off
βασανίζω interrogate, test, torture
δείκνυμι (ὅ) show, point out
διαφεύγω escape, survive
ἐναντίον opposite, facing
ἐξαγγέλλω bring news out ~angel
ἐπιστέλλω send to, order
εὐνοῦχος eunuch
ἡδομαι be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism
ἰσχυρός (ὅ) strong, forceful, violent
καταλαμβάνω seize, understand, catch, overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy
κλίμαξ -κος (f) ladder, staircase
 ~climax

οἶχομαι come, go, leave, be gone
ὅποῖος whatever kind
προεῖπον foretell, proclaim, order before
προσβάλλω hit, attack, approach; attach, offer ~ballistic
στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy
συμπαρασκευάζω help prepare
συνεργός cooperating; colleague
συνομολογέω agree
συντίθημι hearken, mark ~thesis
συσκευάζω pack up
ὕστεραῖος the next; later
φρουράρχος garrison commander
φρούριον fort
χωρίον area; downwards

δὲ αὐτῷ οὐκ ἂν μείζω οὔτ' εἴποις οὔτε δείξαις ὧν αὐτὸς σὺ
 τυγχάνεις παρ' ἡμῶν εἰληφώς.

Ἐκ τούτου ὥχετο μὲν ὁ Γωβρύας· ἄσμενος δὲ ἰδὼν
 αὐτὸν ὁ εὐνούχος συνωμολόγει τε πάντα καὶ συνέθετο
 ἃ ἔδει. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀπήγγειλεν ὁ Γωβρύας ὅτι πάντα
 δοκοίη ἰσχυρῶς τῷ εὐνούχῳ τὰ ἐπισταλέντα, ἐκ τούτου
 τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ προσέβαλε μὲν ὁ Κῦρος, ἀπεμάχετο δὲ
 ὁ Γαδάτας. ἦν δὲ καὶ ὁ ἔλαβε χωρίον ὁ Κῦρος,
 ὁποῖον ἔφη ὁ Γαδάτας. τῶν δὲ ἀγγέλων οὓς ἔπεμψεν
 ὁ Κῦρος προειπὼν ἥ πορεύσονται, ὅπως ἄγοιεν τὰ
 στρατεύματα καὶ τὰς κλίμακας κομίζοιεν, τοὺς μὲν εἴασεν
 ὁ Γαδάτας διαφεύγειν· οὓς δ' ἔλαβε, βασανίζων ἐναντίον
 πολλῶν, ὡς ἤκουσεν ἐφ' ἃ ἔφασαν πορεύεσθαι, εὐθέως
 συσκευασάμενος ὡς ἐξαγγελῶν τῆς νυκτὸς ἐπορεύετο.
 τέλος δὲ πιστευθεὶς ὡς βοηθὸς εἰσέρχεται εἰς τὸ
 φρούριον· καὶ τέως μὲν συμπαρασκεύαζεν ὅ τι δύναιτο
 τῷ φρουράρχῳ· ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ Κῦρος ἦλθε, καταλαμβάνει τὸ
 χωρίον συνεργοὺς ποιησάμενος καὶ τοὺς παρὰ τοῦ Κύρου

δὲ αὐτῷ οὐκ ἂν μείζω οὔτ' εἴποις οὔτε |show ὧν αὐτὸς σὺ
 τυγχάνεις παρ' ἡμῶν εἰληφώς.

Ἐκ τούτου |come, go, μὲν ὁ Γωβρύας· |be pleased, ἐνjoy ὃν
 αὐτὸν ὁ |eunuch |agree τε πάντα καὶ |hearken, mark

ἃ ἔδει. ἐπεὶ δὲ |announce, or- ὁ Γωβρύας ὅτι πάντα
 |der, promise

δοκοίῃ |strong, forceful, |eunuch τὰ |send to, order , ἐκ τούτου
 |violent

τῇ |the next; hit, attack, approach; Κῦρος, |fight off δὲ
 |later |attach, offer

ὁ Γαδάτας. ἦν δὲ καὶ ὁ ἔλαβε |area; downwards, ,

|whatever kind ὁ Γαδάτας. τῶν δὲ |messenger οὓς ἔπεμψε

ὁ Κῦρος |foretell, proclaim, ρεύσονται, ὅπως ἄγοιεν τὰ
 |order before

|army καὶ τὰς κλίμακας |tend; bring back/away; ἄσεν
 |(mp) travel

ὁ Γαδάτας |escape, οὓς δ' ἔλαβε, |interrogate, ἐναντίον
 |survive |test, torture

πολλῶν, ὥς ἤκουσεν ἐφ' ἃ ἔφασαν πορεύεσθαι, εὐθέως

|pack up ὥς |bring news out ἤς νυκτὸς ἐπορεύετο.

|end δὲ πιστευθεὶς ὥς βοηθὸς εἰσέρχεται εἰς τὸ

|fort καὶ τέως μὲν συμπαρασκεύαζεν ὅ τι δύναίτο

τῷ |garrison ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ Κῦρος ἦλθε, |seize, understand, `catch, over-
 |commander |take; (mp) happen

|area; |cooperating; , γοιησάμενος καὶ τοὺς παρὰ τοῦ Κύρου
 |down- |colleague
 |wards

for pledges of good faith, you could offer him none better than those you received from us yourself.”

Then Gobryas made haste and was gone, and the eunuch welcomed him gladly; he agreed to everything and helped to arrange all that was needed. Presently Gobryas brought back word that he thought the eunuch had everything in readiness, and so, without more ado, Cyrus made his feigned attack on the following day, and was beaten off. But on the other hand there was a fortress, indicated by Gadatas himself, that Cyrus took. The messengers Cyrus had sent out, telling them exactly where to go, fell into the hands of Gadatas: some were allowed to escape—their business was to fetch the troops and carry the scaling-ladders—but the rest were narrowly examined in the presence of many witnesses, and when Gadatas heard the object of their journey he got his equipment together and set out in the night at full speed to take the news. In the end he made his way into the fortress, trusted and welcomed as a deliverer, and for a time he helped the commandant to the best of his ability. But as soon as Cyrus appeared he seized the place, aided by the Persian prisoners he had taken. This done, and having set things in order within the

vocabulary

αἰχμάλωτος captive ~acute
ἀναγκάζω force, compel
ἀποστερέω despoil, defraud
ἄρτι at the same time
ἀσπάζομαι greet, salute
ἀφαιρέω take away ~heresy
δεξιὰ right-hand ~dextrous
ἐκγονος offspring, descendant ~genus
ἐνδον in the house of; within
ἐνθάδε here, hither
εὐνοῦχος eunuch
ἴσχω imitate, liken to, guess ~victor

καταλείπω leave behind, abandon
 ~eclipse
κτάομαι acquire, possess
ὀφείλω owe, should, if only
πειράζω test a person ~pierce
προσθέω run to
προσκυνέω kow tow to; kiss
συνάγω assemble; join in battle
 ~demagogue
φίλιος friendly
χειρόν worse, more base, inferior,
 weaker
χωρίον area; downwards

αἰχμαλώτους. ἐπεὶ δὲ τοῦτο ἐγένετο, εὐθὺς Γαδάτας ὁ
 εὐνούχος τὰ ἔνδον καταστήσας ἐξῆλθε πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον,
 καὶ τῷ νόμῳ προσκυνήσας εἶπε, Χαῖρε, Κῦρε. Ἀλλὰ
 ποιῶ ταῦτ', ἔφη· σὺ γάρ με σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς οὐ κελεύεις
 μόνον ἀλλὰ καὶ ἀναγκάζεις χαίρειν. εὖ γὰρ ἴσθι, ἔφη,
 ὅτι ἐγὼ μέγα ποιοῦμαι φίλιον τοῦτο τὸ χωρίον τοῖς
 ἐνθάδε συμμάχοις καταλείπων· σοῦ δ', ἔφη, ὦ Γαδάτα,
 ὁ Ἀσσύριος παῖδας μὲν, ὡς ἔοικε, τὸ ποιεῖσθαι ἀφείλετο,
 οὐ μέντοι τό γε φίλους δύνασθαι κτᾶσθαι ἀπεστέρησεν·
 ἀλλ' εὖ ἴσθι ὅτι ἡμᾶς τοιούτους τῷ ἔργῳ τούτῳ φίλους
 πεποιήσαι, οἳ σοι, ἐὰν δυνώμεθα, πειρασόμεθα μὴ χείρους
 βοηθοὶ παραστήναι ἢ εἰ παῖδας ἐκγόνους ἐκέκτησο. ὁ μὲν
 ταῦτ' ἔλεγεν. ἐν δὲ τούτῳ ὁ Ὑρκάνιος ἄρτι ἡσθημένος
 τὸ γεγεννημένον προσθεὶ τῷ Κύρῳ καὶ λαβὼν τὴν δεξιὰν
 αὐτοῦ εἶπεν· ὦ μέγα ἀγαθὸν σὺ τοῖς φίλοις Κῦρε, ὡς
 πολλήν με τοῖς θεοῖς ποιεῖς χάριν ὀφείλεις ὅτι σοί με
 συνήγαγον. Ἰθι νυν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, καὶ λαβὼν τὸ χωρίον
 οὔπερ ἔνεκά με ἀσπάζῃ διατίθει αὐτὸ οὕτως ὥς

|captive . . . ἐπεὶ δὲ τοῦτο ἐγένετο, εὐθὺς Γαδάτας ὁ
 |eunuch τὰ |in the|set down, land; ἔξηλθε πρὸς τὸν Κύρον,
 |house |become, be
 καὶ τῷ νόμῳ |of; |how tow to; kiss ἔπε, Χαῖρε, Κύρε. Ἀλλὰ
 |within
 ποιῶ ταῦτ', ἔφη· σὺ γάρ με σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς οὐ κελεύεις
 μόνον ἀλλὰ καὶ |force, compel |rejoice . . . εὖ γὰρ ἴσθι, ἔφη,
 ὅτι ἐγὼ μέγα ποιῶμαι |friendly τοῦτο τὸ |area; downwāds
 |here, συμμάχοις |leave behind, σοῦ δ', ἔφη, ὦ Γαδάτα,
 |hither |abandon
 ὁ Ἀσσύριος παῖδας μέν, ὡς |seem, . . . seem εἶσθαι |take away ,
 |likely, beseem
 οὐ |however ὁ γε φίλους δύνασθαι κτᾶσθαι |despoil,
 |defraud
 ἀλλ' εὖ ἴσθι ὅτι ἡμᾶς τοιούτους τῷ ἔργῳ τούτῳ φίλους
 πεποιήσαι, οἳ σοι, ἐὰν δυνώμεθα, πειρασόμεθα μὴ |worse, more base
 βοηθοὶ |stand, be present ἢ παῖδας |offspring |acquire . . . ὁ μὲν
 ταῦτ' ἔλεγεν. ἐν δὲ τούτῳ ὁ Ὑρκάνιος |at the|perceive
 |same
 τὸ γεγενημένον |run to τῷ Κύρῳ καὶ λαβὼν τὴν δεξιὰν
 |time
 αὐτοῦ εἶπεν· ὦ μέγα ἀγαθὸν σὺ τοῖς φίλοις Κύρε, ὡς
 πολλήν με τοῖς θεοῖς ποιεῖς |grace |owe, should', if only' ,με
 |join . . . |imitate, liken | ὁ Κύρος, καὶ λαβὼν τὸ |area; downwards
 |to, guess
 οὐπὲρ |because, . . . |greet, διατίθει αὐτὸ οὕτως ὡς
 |that |salute

fortress, Gadatas went out to Cyrus, bowed before him according to the custom of his land, and said, "Cyrus, may joy be yours!"

"Joy is mine already," answered he, "for you, God helping you, have brought it to me. You must know," he added, "that I set great store by this fortress, and rejoice to leave it in the hands of my allies here. And for yourself, Gadatas," he added, "if the Assyrian has robbed you of the ability to beget children, remember he has not stolen your power to win friends; you have made us yours, I tell you, by this deed, and we will stand by as faithfully as sons and grandsons of your own."

So Cyrus spoke. And at that instant the Hyrcanian chief, who had only just learnt what had happened, came running up to him, and seizing him by the hand cried out:

"O Cyrus, you godsend to your friends! How often you make me thank the gods for bringing me to you!"

"Off with you, then," said Cyrus, "and occupy this fortress for which you bless me so. Take it and make the

vocabulary

δισμύριοι (ὅ) 20,000

δισχίλιοι 2000 ~kilo-

ἐκπληρόω fill, fulfill

ἐντεῦθεν thence

ἐπειδὴν when, after

κοινός communal, ordinary

μέλω concern, interest, be one's
responsibility

μυρίος (ὅ) 10,000 ~myriad

ὅπόσος as many as, how many, how
great

πελταστής -οῦ (m, 1) light troops
~pelt

πρόβολος thing sticking out ~ballistic

πρόθυμος (ὅ) willing, eager ~fume

προσήκω belong to, it seems

πρόσθεν before (time, space)

προστίθμι add; impose; (mp) agree;
side with ~thesis

σάκος shield, hide, sack

στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy

συλλέγω collect, assemble ~legion

σύφορος accompanying; suitable

συνέρχομαι come together

συστρατεύω join in an expedition

τετρακισχίλιοι 4000 ~kilo-

τοξότης -ου (m, 1) archer ~toxic

ὕμέτερος (ὅ) yours

φίλιος friendly

φρούριον fort

φῶλον race, tribe, class ~phylum

χίλιοι (τι) thousand ~kilo-

ἂν τῷ ὑμετέρῳ φύλῳ πλείστου ἄξιον ἦ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις
 συμμάχοις, μάλιστα δ', ἔφη, Γαδάτα τουτωῖ, ὃς ἡμῖν αὐτὸ
 λαβὼν παραδίδωσι.

Ἴ οὖν; ἔφη ὁ Ὑρκάνιος, ἐπειδὴν Καδούσιοι ἔλθωσι
 καὶ Σάκαι καὶ οἱ ἐμοὶ πολῖται, καλέσωμεν καὶ τούτων,
 ἵνα κοινῇ βουλευσώμεθα πάντες ὅσοις προσήκει πῶς ἂν
 συμφορώτατα χρώμεθα τῷ φρουρίῳ; ταῦτα μὲν οὕτω
 συνήνεσεν ὁ Κύρος· ἐπεὶ δὲ συνήλθον οἷς ἔμελε περὶ
 τοῦ φρουρίου, ἐβούλευσαντο κοινῇ φυλάττειν οἷσπερ
 ἀγαθὸν ἦν φίλιον ὄν, ὅπως αὐτοῖς μὲν πρόβολος εἴη
 πολέμου, τοῖς δ' Ἀσσυρίοις ἐπιτετειχισμένον. τούτων
 γενομένων πολὺ δὴ προθυμότερον καὶ πλείους καὶ
 Καδούσιοι συνεστρατεύοντο καὶ Σάκαι καὶ Ὑρκάνιοι· καὶ
 συνελέγη ἐντεῦθεν στράτευμα Καδουσίῳν μὲν πελτασταὶ
 εἰς δισμυρίους καὶ ἱππεῖς εἰς τετρακισχίλους, Σακῶν
 δὲ τοξόται εἰς μυρίους καὶ ἵπποτοξόται εἰς χιλίους· καὶ
 Ὑρκάνιοι δὲ πεζοὺς τε ὁπόσους ἐδύναντο προσεξέπεμψαν
 καὶ ἱππέας ἐξεπλήρωσαν εἰς δισχιλίους· τὸ γὰρ πρόσθεν

ἂν τῷ |yours |race, tribe, class πλείστου |worthy,] καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις
 συμμάχοις, μάλιστα δ', ἔφη, Γαδάτα τουτῶϊ, ὃς ἡμῖν αὐτὸ
 λαβὼν παραδίδωσι.

Ἴ οὖν; ἔφη ὁ Ὑρκάνιος, |when, after Καδούσιοι ἔλθωσι
 καὶ Σάκαι καὶ οἱ ἐμοὶ |townsman, free- |man, compatriot ὤμεν καὶ τούτων,
 ἵνα κοινῇ |(mp) to deliberate ἄντες ὅσοις |belong to, πῶς ἂν
 |accompanying; |suitable χρώμεθα τῷ |fort , ταῦτα μὲν οὕτω
 συνήγεσεν ὁ Κῦρος· ἐπεὶ δὲ |come together· |be in/on the mind
 τοῦ |fort , |(mp) to deliberate κοινῇ φυλάττειν οἷσπερ
 ἀγαθὸν ἦν |friendly ὃν, ὅπως αὐτοῖς μὲν |thing sticking out εἴη
 πολέμου, τοῖς δ' Ἀσσυρίοις ἐπιτετειχισμένον. τούτων
 γενομένων πολὺ δὴ |willing, eager καὶ πλείους καὶ
 Καδούσιοι |join in an expedition καὶ Σάκαι καὶ Ὑρκάνιοι· καὶ
 |collect, |assemble |thence |army Καδουσίων μὲν |light troops
 εἰς |20,000 καὶ ἵππεῖς εἰς |4000 , |shield, hide, sack
 δὲ |archer εἰς μυρίους καὶ ἵπποτοξόται εἰς χιλίους· καὶ
 Ὑρκάνιοι δὲ |on foot; |as/how many/great | |προσεξέπεμψαν
 |footsoldier
 καὶ ἱππέας |fill, fulfill εἰς |2000 τὸ γὰρ πρόσθεν

best use of it you can, for your own nation, and for all our allies, and above all for Gadatas, our friend, who won it and surrenders it to us.”

”Then,” said the chieftain, ”as soon as the Cadousians arrive and the Sakians and my countrymen, we must, must we not? call a council of them all, so that we may consult together, and see how best to turn it to account.”

Cyrus thought the proposal good, and when they met together it was decided to garrison the post with a common force, chosen from all who were concerned that it should remain friendly and be an outer balwark to overawe the Assyrians. This heightened the enthusiasm of them all, Cadousians, Sakians, and Hyrcanians, and their levies rose high, until the Cadousians sent in 20,000 light infantry and 4000 cavalry, and the Sakians 11,000 bowmen, 10,000 on foot and 1000 mounted, while the Hyrcanians were free to despatch all their reserves of infantry and make up their horsemen to a couple of thousand strong, whereas previously the larger portion of their cavalry had been left at home

vocabulary

ἀπάγω lead away, back ~demagogue
ἀποφέρω carry off, carry back ~bear
δειπνέω eat, dine
δεσπότης -ου (m, 1) master, despot
διασώζω preserve through
ἐκεῖσε thither
ἐμβάλλω throw in; inspire a mental state ~ballistic
ἡώς ἡῶθι (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene
καθέζομαι act: set, seat; pass: sit down, sit up
καταλαμβάνω seize, understand, catch, overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy
καταλείβω drip
καταλείπω leave behind, abandon

~eclipse

μείων less, smaller

οἴκοι at home ~economics

ὄπλον tool, weapon, ship's tackle

~hoplite

προσέρχομαι come forward, surrender, come in

πρόσχωρος neighboring

πρόσω forward, in the future; far

πύθω (ῶ) rot ~putrid

σπεύδω 'push on,' get going, hurry

~repudiate

στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy

συσκευάζω pack up

φρούριον fort

χωρίον area; downwards

καταλελειμμένοι ἦσαν πλείους οἴκοι αὐτοῖς ἵππεῖς, ὅτι καὶ οἱ Καδούσιοι καὶ οἱ Σάκαι τοῖς Ἀσσυρίοις πολέμοι ἦσαν. ὅσον δὲ χρόνον ἐκαθέζετο ὁ Κῦρος ἀμφὶ τὴν περὶ τὸ φρούριον οἰκονομίαν, τῶν Ἀσσυρίων τῶν κατὰ ταῦτα τὰ χωρία πολλοὶ μὲν ἀπῆγον ἵππους, πολλοὶ δὲ ἀπέφερον ὄπλα, φοβούμενοι ἤδη πάντας τοὺς προσχώρους.

Ἐκ δὲ τούτου προσέρχεται τῷ Κύρῳ ὁ Γαδάτας καὶ λέγει ὅτι ἤκουσιν αὐτῷ ἄγγελοι ὥς ὁ Ἀσσύριος, ἐπεὶ πύθοιτο τὰ περὶ τοῦ φρουρίου, χαλεπῶς τε ἐνέγκοι καὶ συσκευάζοιτο ὥς ἐμβαλὼν εἰς τὴν αὐτοῦ χώραν. ἐὰν οὖν ἀφῇς με, ὦ Κῦρε, τὰ τεῖχη ἂν πειραθείην διασῶσαι, τῶν δ' ἄλλων μείων λόγος. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπεν· Ἐὰν οὖν ἴης νῦν, πότε ἔσῃ οἴκοι; καὶ ὁ Γαδάτας εἶπεν· Εἰς τρίτην δειπνήσω ἐν τῇ ἡμετέρᾳ. Ἡ καὶ τὸν Ἀσσύριον, ἔφη, οἶε ἐκεῖ ἤδη καταλήψεσθαι; Εὐ μὲν οὖν, ἔφη, οἶδα· σπεύσει γὰρ ἕως ἔτι πρόσω δοκεῖς ἀπείναι. Ἐγὼ δ', ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ποσταῖος ἂν τῷ στρατεύματι ἐκείσε ἀφικοίμην; πρὸς τοῦτο δὴ ὁ Γαδάτας λέγει· Πολὺ ἤδη, ὦ δέσποτα, ἔχεις τὸ στράτευμα

καταλελειμμένοι ἦσαν πλείους |at home ἵπτοις |rider , ὅτι
καὶ οἱ Καδούσιοι καὶ οἱ Σάκαι τοῖς Ἀσσυρίοις πολέμιοι
ἦσαν. ὅσον δὲ χρόνον ἐκαθέζετο ὁ Κῦρος ἀμφὶ τὴν περὶ
τὸ |fort οἰκονομίαν, τῶν Ἀσσυρίων τῶν κατὰ ταῦτα
τὰ |area; downwards, ἐν |lead away, back , πολλοὶ δὲ |carry off
|tool , φοβούμενοι ἤδη πάντας τοὺς |neighboring .

Ἐκ δὲ τούτου |come forward, sur- render, come in Ὁ Κῦρος ὁ Γαδάτας καὶ λέγει
ὅτι |be present, have arrived |messenger ὅς ὁ Ἀσσύριος, ἐπεὶ πύθοιτο τὰ
περὶ τοῦ |fort , |hard to bear ἐνέγκοι καὶ |pack up
ὥς |throw in; inspire ἐν αὐτοῦ χώραν. ἔὰν οὖν ἀφῇς με, ὦ
Κῦρε, τὰ τείχη ἂν |try, test |preserve through , τῶν δ' ἄλλων
|less, smaller λόγος. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπεν· Ἐὰν οὖν ἦς νῦν, πότε
ἔσῃ |at home καὶ ὁ Γαδάτας εἶπεν· Εἰς |third |eat, dine ἐν
τῇ |our, my . Ἡ καὶ τὸν Ἀσσύριον, ἔφη, οἶε ἐκεῖ ἤδη
|seize, understand, catch, overtake; (mp) happen ἐν οὖν, ἔφη, οἶδα· σπεύσει γὰρ ἕως
ἔτι |forward, in the future; far |be absent, away, return ὡ δ', ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ποσταῖος
ἂν τῷ |army |thither arrive , πρὸς τοῦτο δὲ ὁ
Γαδάτας λέγει· Πολὺ ἤδη, ὦ |master, despot , ἔχεις τὸ |army

to support the Cadousians and Sakians against Assyria.

And while Cyrus was kept in the fortress, organising and arranging everything, many of the Assyrians from the country round brought in their horses and handed over their arms, being by this time in great dread of their neighbours.

Soon after this Gadatas came to Cyrus and told him that messengers had come to say that the king of Assyria, learning what had happened to the fortress, was beside himself with anger, and was preparing to attack his territory. "If you, Cyrus," said he, "will let me go now, I will try to save my fortresses: the rest is of less account." Cyrus said, "If you go now, when will you reach home?" And Gadatas answered, "On the third day from this I can sup in my own house." "Do you think," asked Cyrus, "that you will find the Assyrian already there?" "I am sure of it," he answered, "for he will make haste while he thinks you are still far off." "And I," said Cyrus, "when could I be there with my army?" But to this Gadatas made answer, "The army you have now, my lord, is very large,

*vocabulary***ἄγγέλλω** carry a message, announce

~angel

βλάπτω break, make fail**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish

~practice

εἰκός likely**ἐμβάλλω** throw in; inspire a mental state ~ballistic**ἐννοέω** consider**ἕξ** six ~hexagon**εὐεργέτης** -ου (m, 1) benefactor**μείων** less, smaller**οἴκησις** -εως (f) habitation**οἴχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone**πρόθυμος** (ῶ) willing, eager ~fume**συγκαλέω** call together ~gallo**τάχα** quickly, soon; perhaps

~tachometer

τιμωρέω (ι) (+dat) take vengeance, punish; aid one who has been attacked**τοίνυν** well, then

καὶ οὐκ ἂν δύναιο μείον ἢ ἐν ἑξ ἢ ἑπτὰ ἡμέραις ἐλθεῖν
 πρὸς τὴν ἐμὴν οἴκησιν. Σὺ μὲν τοίνυν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ἄπιθι
 ὡς τάχιστα· ἐγὼ δ' ὡς ἂν δυνατὸν ἦ πορεύσομαι. ὁ μὲν
 δὴ Γαδάτας ὥχετο· ὁ δὲ Κῦρος συνεκάλεσε πάντας τοὺς
 ἄρχοντας τῶν συμμάχων· καὶ ἤδη πολλοί τε ἐδόκουν καὶ
 καλοὶ κάγαθοὶ παρεῖναι· ἐν οἷς δὴ λέγει ὁ Κῦρος ταῦτα.

Ἄνδρες σύμμαχοι, Γαδάτας διέπραξεν ἃ δοκεῖ πᾶσιν ἡμῖν
 πολλοῦ ἄξια εἶναι, καὶ ταῦτα πρὶν καὶ ὅτιοῦν ἀγαθὸν ὑφ'
 ἡμῶν παθεῖν. νῦν δὲ ὁ Ἀσσύριος εἰς τὴν χώραν αὐτοῦ
 ἐμβαλεῖν ἀγγέλλεται, δῆλον ὅτι ἅμα μὲν τιμωρεῖσθαι
 αὐτὸν βουλόμενος, ὅτι δοκεῖ ὑπ' αὐτοῦ μεγάλα βεβλάφθαι·
 ἅμα δὲ ἴσως κακέينو ἐννοεῖται ὡς εἰ οἱ μὲν πρὸς ἡμᾶς
 ἀφιστάμενοι μηδὲν ὑπ' ἐκείνου κακὸν πείσονται, οἱ δὲ
 σὺν ἐκείνῳ ὄντες ὑφ' ἡμῶν ἀπολοῦνται, ὅτι τάχα οὐδένα
 εἰκὸς σὺν αὐτῷ βουλήσεσθαι εἶναι. νῦν οὖν, ὦ ἄνδρες,
 καλόν τι ἂν μοι δοκοῦμεν ποιῆσαι, εἰ προθύμως Γαδάτα
 βοηθήσαιμεν ἀνδρὶ εὐεργέτῃ· καὶ ἅμα δίκαια ποιοῦμεν ἂν
 χάριν ἀποδιδόντες· ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ

καὶ οὐκ ἂν δύναιο |less, smaller ἢ ἐν ἑξ ἡ |seven ἡμέραις ἐλθεῖν
 πρὸς τὴν ἐμὴν |habitation Σὺ μὲν |well, then ῥῆ ὁ Κῦρος, |be absent, go
 |away, return
 ὡς τάχιστα· ἐγὼ δ' ὡς ἂν |powerful, ἥ πορεύσομαι. ὁ μὲν
 |possible
 δὴ Γαδάτας |come, go ἰ δὲ Κῦρος |call together πάντας τοὺς
 ἄρχοντας τῶν συμμάχων· καὶ ἤδη πολλοί τε ἐδόκουν καὶ
 καλοὶ κάγαθοι παρεῖναι· ἐν οἷς δὴ λέγει ὁ Κῦρος ταῦτα.

Ἄνδρες σύμμαχοι, Γαδάτας |travel over, ἂ δοκεῖ πᾶσιν ἡμῖν
 |accomplish
 πολλοῦ |worthy εἶναι, καὶ ταῦτα |before, formerly; ἀγαθὸν ὑφ'
 |negated: until
 ἡμῶν παθεῖν. νῦν δὲ ὁ Ἀσσύριος εἰς τὴν |place αὐτοῦ
 |throw in; |carry a message; |visible, ἅμα μὲν |take vengeance,
 |inspire |announce |conspicuous |punish, aid
 αὐτὸν βουλόμενος, ὅτι δοκεῖ ὑπ' αὐτοῦ μεγάλα |break, make fail
 ἅμα δὲ |equal κάκεινο |consider ὡς εἰ οἱ μὲν πρὸς ἡμᾶς
 |stand apart; |μὴδὲν ὑπ' ἐκείνου κακὸν πείσονται, οἱ δὲ
 |exact payment
 σὺν ἐκείνῳ ὄντες ὑφ' ἡμῶν ἀπολοῦνται, ὅτι |quickly, soon;
 |perhaps
 |likely σὺν αὐτῷ βουλήσασθαι εἶναι. νῦν οὖν, ὦ ἄνδρες,
 καλόν τι ἂν μοι δοκοῦμεν ποιῆσαι, εἰ |willing, Γαδάτα
 |eager
 |rescue ἀνδρὶ |benefactor καὶ ἅμα δίκαια ποιοῦμεν ἂν
 |grace |repay ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ

and you could not reach my home in less than six days or seven.” “Well,” Cyrus replied, “be off yourself: make all speed, and I will follow as best I can.”

So Gadatas was gone, and Cyrus called together all the officers of the allies, and a great and goodly company they seemed, noble gentlemen, beautiful and brave. And Cyrus stood up among them all and said:

”My allies and my friends, Gadatas has done deeds that we all feel worthy of high reward, and that too before ever he had received any benefit from us. The Assyrians, we hear, have now invaded his territory, to take vengeance for the monstrous injury they consider he has done them, and moreover, they doubtless argue that if those who revolt to us escape scot-free, while those who stand by them are cut to pieces, ere long they will not have a single supporter on their side. To-day, gentlemen, we may do a gallant deed, if we rescue Gadatas, our friend and benefactor; and truly it is only just and right thus to repay gift for

vocabulary

ἀμελέω disregard; (impers.) of course
διάκειμαι be in a condition
εἰκός likely
ἐμπειρος experienced
ἐπαινέω concur, praise, advise
ἐπιθυμέω (ὄ) wish, covet
ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable
ἐσσόμαι (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (active) defeat
εὐεργετέω be a benefactor
ἡσάομαι (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (active) defeat
ἡττάομαι (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (active) defeat

ἰσχυρός (ὄ) strong, forceful, violent
καταλείπω leave behind, abandon
 ~eclipse
καταλιμπάνω leave behind, abandon
ὄχημα vehicle
πειράζω test a person ~pierce
ποῖος what kind
σύμφορος accompanying; suitable
συνδοκέω seem good also
τοίνυν well, then
ὑπερβάλλω cause to go beyond; delay
 ~ballistic
ὑποζύγιον beast of burden ~zygote
χαρίζομαι gratify ~charisma

σύμφορά γ' ἂν, ὥς ἐμοὶ δοκεῖ, πράξαιμεν ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς. εἰ γὰρ πᾶσι φαινοίμεθα τοὺς μὲν κακῶς ποιούντας νικᾶν πειρώμενοι κακῶς ποιούντες, τοὺς δ' εὐεργετοῦντας ἀγαθοῖς ὑπερβαλλόμενοι, εἰκὸς ἐκ τῶν τοιούτων φίλους μὲν πολλοὺς ἡμῖν βούλεσθαι γίγνεσθαι, ἐχθρὸν δὲ μηδένα ἐπιθυμεῖν εἶναι· εἰ δὲ ἀμελήσαι δόξαιμεν Γαδάτα, πρὸς τῶν θεῶν ποίοις λόγοις ἂν ἄλλον πείθοιμεν χαρίζεσθαι τι ἡμῖν; πῶς δ' ἂν τολμῶμεν ἡμᾶς αὐτοὺς ἐπαινεῖν; πῶς δ' ἂν ἀντιβλέψαι τις ἡμῶν δύναιτο Γαδάτα, εἰ ἡττώμεθ' αὐτοῦ εὖ ποιούντος τοσοῦτοι ὄντες ἑνὸς ἀνδρὸς καὶ τούτου οὕτω διακειμένου; ὁ μὲν οὕτως εἶπεν· οἱ δὲ πάντες ἰσχυρῶς συνεπήγνουν ταῦτα ποιεῖν.

Ἄγε τοίνυν, ἔφη, ἐπεὶ καὶ ὑμῖν συνδοκεῖ ταῦτα, ἐπὶ μὲν τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις καὶ ὀχήμασι καταλίπωμεν ἕκαστοι τοὺς μετ' αὐτῶν ἐπιτηδειοτάτους πορεύεσθαι. Γωβρύας δ' ἡμῖν ἀρχέτω αὐτῶν καὶ ἡγείσθω αὐτοῖς· καὶ γὰρ ὁδῶν ἔμπειρος καὶ τᾶλλα ἱκανός· ἡμεῖς δ', ἔφη, καὶ ἵπποις τοῖς δυνατωτάτοις καὶ ἀνδράσι πορευόμεθα, τὰ

|accompanying; ὅν, ὥς ἐμοὶ δοκεῖ, πράξαιμεν ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς.
|suitable

εἰ γὰρ πᾶσι φαινοίμεθα τοὺς μὲν κακῶς ποιῶντας

|win, defeat ὡς κεν κακῶς ποιῶντες, τοὺς δ' |be a benefactor

ἀγαθοῖς |cause to go beyond; |likely ἐκ τῶν τοιούτων φίλους
|delay

μὲν πολλοὺς ἡμῖν βούλεσθαι γίγνεσθαι, |hated, distasteful αὐτοῖς

|wish, covet εἶναι· εἰ δὲ |disregard δόξαιμεν Γαδάτα, πρὸς

τῶν θεῶν |what kind' /οις ἂν ἄλλον πείθοιμεν |gratify τι

ἡμῖν; πῶς δ' ἂν |dare ἡμᾶς αὐτοὺς |concur , πῶς δ' ἂν

ἀντιβλέψαι τις ἡμῶν δύναιτο Γαδάτα, εἰ ἡττώμεθ' αὐτοῦ

εὖ ποιῶντος |so much ὅντες ἐνὸς ἀνδρὸς καὶ τούτου οὕτω

|be in a condition' μὲν οὕτως εἶπεν· οἱ δὲ πάντες |strong, force-
|ful, violent

συνεπήγουν ταῦτα ποιῶν.

Ἄγε |well, then ἴβη, ἐπεὶ καὶ ὑμῖν |seem good also αὐτοῖς, ἐπὶ μὲν

τοῖς |beast of burden... |vehicle καταλίπωμεν ἕκαστοι τοὺς

μετ' αὐτῶν |fit, suitable πορεύεσθαι. Γωβρύας δ'

ἡμῖν ἀρχέτω αὐτῶν καὶ ἡγείσθω αὐτοῖς· καὶ γὰρ ὁδῶν

|experienced καὶ τὰλλα |sufficient; ἴβη, ὅς δ', ἔφη, καὶ ἵπποις τοῖς
|empowered

|powerful, καὶ ἀνδράσι πορευόμεθα, τὰ
|possible

gift, and boon for boon. Moreover, as it seems to me, what we accomplish will be much to our own interest. If all men see that we are ready to give blow for blow and sting for sting, while we outdo our benefactors in generous deeds, it is only natural that multitudes will long to be our friends, and no man care to be our foe. Whereas, if it be thought that we left Gادات in the lurch, how in heaven's name shall we persuade another to show us any kindness? How shall we dare to think well of ourselves again? How shall one of us look Gادات in the face, when all of us, so many and so strong, showed ourselves less generous than he, one single man and in so sore a plight?"

Thus Cyrus spoke, and all of them assented right willingly, and said it must be done.

"Come then," concluded Cyrus, "since you are all of one mind with me, let each of us choose an escort for our waggon and beasts of burden. Let us leave them behind us, and put Gobryas at their head. He is acquainted with the roads, and for the rest he is a man of skill. But we ourselves will push on with our stoutest men and our strongest horses, taking provision

vocabulary

ἄθρόος grouped
ἀποδιδράσκω escape
ἀριστάω eat lunch ~aristocrat
ἀσφαλής safe, easy, steady, careful
βραδύς slow, dull, late ~Sp.~gordo
δειπνέω eat, dine
διασπάω tear apart ~spatula
ἔπειμι lie upon; approach ~ion
ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable
ἔπω (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of
εὐτελής of little worth
ἡδύς sweet, pleasant ~hedonism
θαυμαστός wonderful; admirable
θωρακοφόρος (ἄ) wearing a

breastplate
καθεύδω lie down
κοῦφος light, nimble
μέτωπον forehead, front
ὀμαλός smooth ~homoerotic
πελταστής -οῦ (m, 1) light troops
 ~pelt
Πέρσης Persian
πλατύς extensive, wide
προτάσσω place in front
στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy
συσκευάζω pack up
ταξίαρχος military rank
τάξις -εως (f) arrangement, military unit
τοξότης -ου (m, 1) archer ~toxic

ἐπιτήδεια τριῶν ἡμερῶν λαβόντες· ὅσῳ δ' ἂν κουφότερον
 συσκευασώμεθα καὶ εὐτελέστερον, τοσούτῳ ἥδιον τὰς
 ἐπιούσας ἡμέρας ἀριστήσομέν τε καὶ δειπνήσομεν καὶ
 καθευδήσομεν. νῦν δ', ἔφη, πορευώμεθα ὧδε· πρώτους
 μὲν ἄγε σύ, Χρυσάντα, τοὺς θωρακοφόρους, ἐπεὶ ὁμαλή
 τε καὶ πλατεῖα ἡ ὁδός ἐστι, τοὺς ταξιάρχους ἔχων ἐν
 μετώπῳ πάντας· ἡ δὲ τάξις ἐκάστη ἐφ' ἐνὸς ἴτῳ· ἀθρόοι
 γὰρ ὄντες καὶ τάχιστα καὶ ἀσφαλέστατα πορευοίμεθ' ἄν.
 τούτου δ' ἔνεκα, ἔφη, κελεύω τοὺς θωρακοφόρους ἡγεῖσθαι
 ὅτι τοῦτο βραδύτατόν ἐστι τοῦ στρατεύματος· τοῦ δὲ
 βραδυτάτου ἡγουμένου ἀνάγκη ῥαδίως ἔπεσθαι πάντα
 τὰ θᾶπτον ἰόντα· ὅταν δὲ τὸ τάχιστον ἡγῇται ἐν νυκτί,
 οὐδέν ἐστι θαυμαστὸν καὶ διασπᾶσθαι τὰ στρατεύματα·
 τὸ γὰρ προταχθὲν ἀποδιδράσκει. ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις, ἔφη,
 Ἀρτάβαζος τοὺς Περσῶν πελταστὰς καὶ τοξότας ἀγέτω·
 ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις Ἀνδαμύας ὁ Μῆδος τὸ Μῆδων πεζόν· ἐπὶ
 δὲ τούτοις Ἑμβας τὸ Ἀρμενίων πεζόν· ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις
 Ἀρτούχας Ὑρκανίους· ἐπὶ δὲ

|fit, suitable *τριῶν ἡμερῶν λαβόντες· ὅσῳ δ' ἂν* |light, nimble
 |pack up *καὶ* |of little worth , *τοσοῦτω* |sweet *τὰς*
 |lie upon; approach *·* |eat lunch *τε καὶ* |eat, dine *καὶ*
 |lie down *·* *νῦν δ', ἔφη, πορευόμεθα ὧδε· πρῶτους*
μὲν ἄγε σύ, Χρυσάντα, τοὺς |wearing a breast-, *ἐπεὶ* |smooth
 |plate
τε καὶ |extensive, wide *ἵός ἐστι, τοὺς* |military rank *ἔχων ἐν*
forehead, πάντας· ἡ δὲ τάξις ἐκάστη ἐφ' ἐνὸς ἵτω· |grouped
 |front
γὰρ ὄντες καὶ τάχιστα καὶ |safe, easy, steady, *πορευοίμεθ' ἄν.*
 |careful
τούτου δ' ἔνεκα, ἔφη, κελεύω τοὺς |wearing a breast- *ἡγείσθαι*
 |plate
ὅτι τοῦτο |slow, dull, late *ἐστι τοῦ* |army *τοῦ δὲ*
|slow, dull, late ἡγουμένου ἀνάγκη |easy *ἔπεσθαι πάντα*
τὰ θάπτον ἰόντα· ὅταν δὲ τὸ τάχιστον ἡγῇται ἐν νυκτί,
οὐδέν ἐστι |wonderful; *καὶ* |tear apart *τὰ* |army
 |admirable
τὸ γὰρ |place in front |escape *·* *ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις, ἔφη,*
Ἀρτάβαζος τοὺς Περσῶν |light troops *καὶ* |archer *ἀγέτω·*
ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις Ἀνδαμύας ὁ Μῆδος τὸ Μήδων |on foot; footsoldier
δὲ τούτοις Ἑμβας τὸ Ἀρμενίων |on foot; footsoldier *·* *ύτοις*
Ἀρτούχας Ὑρκανίους· ἐπὶ δὲ

for three days and no more: the lighter and cheaper our gear the more gaily shall we break our fast and take our supper and sleep on the road. And now," said he, "let us arrange the order of the march. You, Chrysantas, must lead the van with your cuirassiers, since the road is broad and smooth, and you must put your brigadiers in the first line, each regiment marching in file, for if we keep close order we shall travel all the quicker and be all the safer. I put the cuirassiers in the front," he added, "because they are our heaviest troops, and if the heaviest are leading, the lighter cannot find it hard to follow: whereas where the swiftest lead and the march is at night, it is no wonder if the column fall to pieces: the vanguard is always running away. And behind the cuirassiers," he went on, "Artabazas is to follow with the Persian targeteers and the bowmen, and behind them Andamyas the Mede with the Median infantry, and then Embas and the Armenian infantry, and then Artouchas with the Hyrcanians, and then Thambradas

*vocabulary***ἀριστερός** left-hand**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee**ἔπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of**ἔσχατος** farthest, last**ἵππαρχος** horse-ruling (epithet of Poseidon) ~hippo**ἵππικός** of horses ~hippo**καθεύδω** lie down**κόσμιος** well-behaved**μέτωπον** forehead, front**πελταστής** -οῦ (m, 1) light troops

~pelt

Πέρσης Persian**πλαίσιον** frame, scaffolding**σάκος** shield, hide, sack**σεαυτοῦ** yourself**σκεῦος** -εος (n, 3) thing, tool, vessel**σκευοφόρος** pack animal, porter**συσκευάζω** pack up**ταξίαρχος** military rank**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military unit**τοξότης** -ου (m, 1) archer ~toxic**ὡσαύτως** in the same way

τούτοις Θαμβράδας τὸ Σακῶν πεζόν· ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις
 Δατάμας Καδουσίους. ἀγόντων δὲ καὶ οὗτοι πάντες
 ἐν μετώπῳ μὲν τοὺς ταξιάρχους ἔχοντες, δεξιὸν δὲ
 τοὺς πελταστάς, ἀριστεροὺς δὲ τοὺς τοξότας τοῦ ἑαυτῶν
 πλαισίου· οὕτω γὰρ πορευόμενοι καὶ εὐχρηστότεροι
 γίνονται. ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις οἱ σκευοφόροι, ἔφη, πάντων
 ἐπέσθων· οἱ δὲ ἄρχοντες αὐτῶν ἐπιμελείσθων ὅπως
 συνεσκευασμένοι τε ὧσι πάντα πρὶν καθεύδειν καὶ πρὶν
 σὺν τοῖς σκεύεσι παρῶσιν εἰς τὴν τεταγμένην χώραν καὶ
 ὅπως κοσμίως ἔπονται. ἐπὶ δὲ τοῖς σκευοφόροις, ἔφη,
 τοὺς Πέρσας ἱππέας Μαδάτας ὁ Πέρσης ἀγέτω, ἔχων
 καὶ οὗτος τοὺς ἑκατοντάρχους τῶν ἱππέων ἐν μετώπῳ·
 ὁ δ' ἑκατόνταρχος τὴν τάξιν ἀγέτω εἰς ἓνα, ὥσπερ οἱ
 πέζαρχοι. ἐπὶ τούτοις Ῥαμβάκας ὁ Μῆδος ὡσαύτως
 τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ ἱππέας· ἐπὶ τούτοις σύ, ὦ Τιγράνη, τὸ
 σεαυτοῦ ἱππικόν· καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι δὲ ἵππαρχοι μεθ' ὧν ἕκαστοι
 ἀφίκοντο πρὸς ἡμᾶς. ἐπὶ τούτοις Σάκαι ἄγετε· ἔσχατοι
 δέ, ὥσπερ ἦλθον, Καδούσιοι ἰόντων· Ἀλκεύνα, σὺ δὲ ὁ

τούτοις Θαμβράδας τὸ |shield, |on foot; footsoldier |νύτοις
 |hide, sack
 Δατάμας Καδουσίους. ἀγόντων δὲ καὶ οὗτοι πάντες
 ἐν |forehead, μὲν τοὺς |military rank ἔχοντες, |right-hand
 |front
 τοὺς |light troops , |left-hand δὲ τοὺς |archer τοῦ ἐαυτῶν
 πλαισίου· οὕτω γὰρ πορευόμενοι καὶ εὐχρηστότεροι
 γίνονται. ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις οἱ |pack animal, porter, πάντων
 ἐπέσθων· οἱ δὲ ἄρχοντες αὐτῶν |take care of, ὅπως
 |oversee
 |pack up τε ὥσι πάντα |be- |lie down καὶ πρὸς
 |fore,
 σὺν τοῖς |thing, tool, vessel ν εἰς τὴν |arrange |place καὶ
 |merry,
 ὅπως |well-behaved πωνται. ἐπὶ δὲ |negated:
 |until |pack animal, porter ,,
 τοὺς Πέρσας |rider Μαδάτας ὁ Πέρσης ἀγέτω, ἔχων
 καὶ οὗτος τοὺς ἑκατοντάρχους τῶν |rider ἐν |forehead,
 |front
 ὁ δ' ἑκατόνταρχος τὴν τάξιν ἀγέτω εἰς ἓνα, ὥσπερ οἱ
 πέζαρχοι. ἐπὶ τούτοις Ῥαμβάκας ὁ Μῆδος |in the same way
 τοὺς ἐαυτοῦ |rider ἐπὶ τούτοις σύ, ὦ Τιγράνη, τὸ
 |yourself |of horses καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι δὲ |horse-ruling ἐθ' ὧν ἕκαστοι
 |arrive πρὸς ἡμᾶς. ἐπὶ τούτοις Σάκαι ἄγετε· |farthest
 δέ, ὥσπερ ἦλθον, Καδούσιοι ἰόντων· Ἀλκεύνα, σὺ δὲ ὁ

with the Sakian foot, and finally Datamas with the Cadousians. All these officers will put their brigadiers in the first line, their targeteers on the right, and their bowmen on the left of their own squares: this is the order in which they will be of most use. All the baggage-bearers are to follow in the rear: and their officers must see that they get everything together before they sleep, and present themselves betimes in the morning, with all their gear, and always keep good order on the march. In support of the baggage-train," he added, "there will be, first, Madatas the Persian with the Persian cavalry, and he too must put his brigadiers in the front, each regiment following in single file, as with the infantry. Behind them Rambacas the Mede and his cavalry, in the same order, and then you, Tigranes, and yours, and after you the other cavalry leaders with the men they brought. The Sakians will follow you, and last of all will come the Cadousians, who were the last to join us, and you, Alkeunas, who are to command them,

*vocabulary***ἀγρυπνία** sleeplessness**ἀσκέω** work on**βραχύς** low, short**διαλέγω** go through, debate ~legion**ἐντέλλω** (mp) command**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee**ἔπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of**ἡνίκα** when**κέρας** -τος (n, 3) horn; military unit
~ceratopsia**λυμαίνομαι** (υ) abuse, violate,
desecrate**μνημονικός** mnemonic, reminding**νυκτερινός** nocturnal**οἴχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone**ὀνομάζω** to address, name ~name**ὀπισθεν** behind, hereafter**ὅπόσος** as many as, how many, how
great**οὐρά** tail**οὖς** οὔατος (n) ear**παρεγγυάω** entrust; pass an order**πορεία** gait, march**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark
~semaphore**σιωπή** silence**σκηνή** tent; stage**συντάσσω** gather, assemble ~syntax**σωφρονέω** be sane, moderate**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military
unit**ταράσσω** mess things up ~trachea**ὕστερον** later**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch
~phylactery

ἄγων αὐτοὺς ἐπιμελοῦ τὸ νῦν εἶναι πάντων τῶν ὀπισθεν καὶ μηδένα ἕα ὕστερον τῶν σῶν ἱππέων γίγνεσθαι. ἐπιμελείσθε δὲ τοῦ σιωπῇ πορεύεσθαι οἳ τε ἄρχοντες καὶ πάντες δὲ οἱ σωφρονοῦντες· διὰ γὰρ τῶν ὥτων ἐν τῇ νυκτὶ ἀνάγκη μᾶλλον ἢ διὰ τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν ἕκαστα καὶ αἰσθάνεσθαι καὶ πράττεσθαι· καὶ τὸαραχθῆναι δὲ ἐν τῇ νυκτὶ πολὺ μείζον ἐστι πρᾶγμα ἢ ἐν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ καὶ δυσκαταστατώτερον· οὗ ἔνεκα ἢ τε σιωπῇ ἀσκητέα καὶ ἡ τάξις φυλακτέα. τὰς δὲ νυκτερινὰς φυλακάς, ὅταν μέλλητε νυκτὸς ἀναστήσεσθαι, χρή ὡς βραχυτάτας καὶ πλείστας ποιεῖσθαι, ὡς μηδένα ἢ ἐν τῇ φυλακῇ ἀγρυπνία πολλή οὐσα λυμαίνεται ἐν τῇ πορείᾳ· ἡνίκα δ' ἂν ὥρα ἢ πορεύεσθαι, σημαίνειν τῷ κέρατι. ὑμεῖς δ' ἔχοντες ἂ δεί ἕκαστοι πάρεστε εἰς τὴν ἐπὶ Βαβυλῶνος ὁδόν· ὁ δ' ὁρμώμενος αἰὲ τῷ κατ' οὐρὰν παρεγγυάτω ἔπεσθαι.

Ἐκ τούτου δὴ ὥχοντο ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνὰς καὶ ἅμα ἀπιόντες διελέγοντο πρὸς ἀλλήλους ὡς μνημονικῶς ὁ Κῦρος ὁπόσοις συνέταττε πᾶσιν ὀνομάζων ἐνετέλλετο. ὁ δὲ

ἄγων αὐτοὺς |take care τὸ νῦν εἶναι πάντων τῶν |behind,
|of, oversee |hereafter
καὶ μηδένα ἔα ὕστερον τῶν σῶν ἱππέων γίγνεσθαι.

|take care of, δὲ τοῦ |silence πορεύεσθαι οἳ τε ἄρχοντες καὶ
|oversee

πάντες δὲ οἱ |be sane, moderate διὰ γὰρ τῶν |ear ἐν τῇ

νυκτὶ |necessity μᾶλλον ἢ διὰ τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν ἕκαστα καὶ

|perceive καὶ πράττεσθαι· καὶ τὸ |mess things up ἔξ ἐν

τῇ νυκτὶ πολὺ μείζον ἐστι πρᾶγμα ἢ ἐν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ καὶ

δυσκαταστατώτερον· οὗ ἔνεκα ἢ τε |silence |work on καὶ

ἡ τάξις φυλακτέα. τὰς δὲ |nocturnal |guard, ὅταν

μέλλητε νυκτὸς ἀναστήσεσθαι, χρή ὥς |prison,
|watch |low, short καὶ

πλείστας ποιεῖσθαι, ὥς μηδένα ἢ ἐν τῇ |guard, ἀγρυπνία

πολλὴ οὔσα |abuse, violate, ὅν τῇ |gait, |prison,
|desecrate |march |watch |when δ' ἂν ὥρα

ἢ πορεύεσθαι, |give orders to; |horn; ὑμεῖς δ' ἔχοντες ἂ

|show; mark |military
|unit
δεῖ ἕκαστοι πάρεστε εἰς τὴν ἐπὶ Βαβυλῶνος ὁδόν· ὁ δ'

ὀρμώμενος ἀεὶ τῷ κατ' |tail |entrust; pass ἔπεσθαι.
|an order

Ἐκ τούτου δὲ |come, go ἐπὶ τὰς |tent; καὶ ἅμα |be absent, go
|stage |away, return

|go through, debate ἄλλήλους ὥς |mnemonic, ὁ Κύρος
|reminding

|as/how |gather, πᾶσιν |to address, name ἄλετο. ὁ δὲ
|many/great assemble

for the present you will take complete control of the rear, and allow no one to fall behind your men. All of you alike, officers, and all who respect yourselves, must be most careful to march in silence. At night the ears, and not the eyes, are the channels of information and the guides for action, and at night any confusion is a far more serious matter than by day, and far more difficult to put right. For this reason silence must be studied and order absolutely maintained. Whenever you mean to rise before daybreak, you must make the night-watches as short and as numerous as possible, so that no one may suffer on the march because of his long vigil before it; and when the hour for the start arrives the horn must be blown. Gentlemen, I expect you all to present yourselves on the road to Babylon with everything you require, and as each detachment starts, let them pass down the word for those in the rear to follow.”

So the officers went to their quarters, and as they went they talked of Cyrus, and what a marvellous memory he had, always

*vocabulary***αἰσχρός** shameful**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance**δεσπότης** -ου (m, 1) master, despot**ἐνιοι** some**ἐπιμέλεια** attention; assigned task**ἡγεμών** -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide, chief ~hegemony**ἡλίθιος** idle, vain, foolish**θαρσύνω** (ῥ) encourage**θαυμαστός** wonderful; admirable**ἱατρός** (ᾱ) physician**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch, overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy**ξύλον** piece of wood ~xylophone**ὄνομαστί** by name**ὄργανον** tool; body organ**ὀρέγω** hold out, offer, thrust ~reach**πρέπω** be conspicuous, preeminent ~refurbish**προθυμέομαι** (ῥ) be eager**προσαγορεύω** address, call by name**προστάσσω** post at, attach to, command**σχίζω** split ~schism**τέχνη** craft, art, plan, contrivance ~technology**τιμάω** (ι) honor, exalt**φαρμακεύς** -ος (m) poisoner, sorcerer**φάρμακον** drug, potion ~pharmacy

Κῦρος ἐπιμελεία τοῦτο ἐποίει· πάνν γὰρ αὐτῷ ἐδόκει θαυμαστὸν εἶναι εἰ οἱ μὲν βάνανσοι ἴσασι τῆς αὐτοῦ τέχνης ἕκαστος τῶν ἐργαλείων τὰ ὀνόματα, καὶ ὁ ἱατρὸς δὲ οἶδε καὶ τῶν ὀργάνων καὶ τῶν φαρμάκων οἷς χρήται πάντων τὰ ὀνόματα, ὁ δὲ στρατηγὸς οὕτως ἡλίθιος ἔσοιτο ὥστε οὐκ εἴσοιτο τῶν ὑφ' αὐτῷ ἡγεμόνων τὰ ὀνόματα, οἷς ἀνάγκη ἐστὶν αὐτῷ ὀργάνοις χρῆσθαι καὶ ὅταν καταλαβεῖν τι βούληται καὶ ὅταν φυλάξαι καὶ ὅταν θαρρῦναι καὶ ὅταν φοβῆσαι· καὶ τιμῆσαι δὲ ὁπότε τινὰ βούλοιτο, πρέπον αὐτῷ ἐδόκει εἶναι ὀνομαστὶ προσαγορεύειν. ἐδόκουν δ' αὐτῷ οἱ γινγνώσκεσθαι δοκοῦντες ὑπὸ τοῦ ἄρχοντος καὶ τοῦ καλόν τι ποιοῦντες ὀράσθαι μᾶλλον ὀρέγεσθαι καὶ τοῦ αἰσχροῦν τι ποιεῖν μᾶλλον προθυμεῖσθαι ἀπέχεσθαι. ἡλίθιον δὲ καὶ τοῦτ' ἐδόκει εἶναι αὐτῷ τὸ ὁπότε τι βούλοιτοπραχθῆναι, οὕτω προστάττειν ὥσπερ ἐν οἴκῳ ἔνιοι δεσπότηαι προστάττουσιν, Ἰτω τις ἐφ' ὕδωρ, Ξύλα τις σχισιάτῳ· οὕτω γὰρ προσταττομένων εἰς ἀλλήλους τε

Κῦρος |attention; as- ὡτο ἐποίει· |altogether, very ᾧ ἐδόκει
|signed task

|wonderful; εἶναι εἰ οἱ μὲν βάνανσοι ἴσασι τῆς αὐτοῦ
|admirable

|craft ἕκαστος τῶν ἐργαλείων τὰ ὀνόματα, καὶ ὁ

|physician· οἶδε καὶ τῶν |tool; body organ ὧν φαρμάκων

οἷς χρήται πάντων τὰ ὀνόματα, ὁ δὲ στρατηγὸς

οὕτως |idle, vain, foolish ὥστε οὐκ εἴσοιτο τῶν ὑφ' αὐτῷ

|leader τὰ ὀνόματα, οἷς |necessity ἐστὶν αὐτῷ |tool; body organ

χρησθαι καὶ ὅταν |seize, understand, catch, γται καὶ ὅταν
|overtake; (mp) happen

φυλάξαι καὶ ὅταν |encourage καὶ ὅταν φοβῆσαι· καὶ

|honor δὲ |when τινὰ βούλοιτο, |be conspicuous, ἐδόκει
|preeminent

εἶναι |by name |address, call by· ἐδόκουν δ' αὐτῷ οἱ
|name

γινώσκεισθαι δοκοῦντες ὑπὸ τοῦ ἄρχοντος καὶ τοῦ καλόν

τι ποιοῦντες ὀρᾶσθαι μᾶλλον |hold out, of- καὶ τοῦ |shameful
|fer, thrust

τι ποιεῖν μᾶλλον |be eager |ward off, drive|idle, vain, foolish
|off, refrain, be at

δὲ καὶ τοῦτ' ἐδόκει εἶναι αὐτῷ τοῦ |some distance
|when τι βούλοιτο

πραχθῆναι, οὕτω |post at, attach ὥσπερ ἐν οἴκῳ |some
|to, command

|master, |post at, attach to, Ἰτω τις ἐφ' ὕδωρ, |piece of wood
|despot |command

|split οὕτω γὰρ |post at, attach to, εἰς ἀλλήλους τε
|command

naming each officer as he assigned him his post. The fact was Cyrus took special pains over this: it struck him as odd that a mere mechanic could know the names of all his tools, and a physician the names of all his instruments, but a general be such a simpleton that he could not name his own officers, the very tools he had to depend on each time he wanted to seize a point or fortify a post or infuse courage or inspire terror. Moreover it seemed to him only courteous to address a man by name when he wished to honour him. And he was sure that the man who feels he is personally known to his commander is more eager to be seen performing some noble feat of arms, and more careful to refrain from all that is unseemly and base. Cyrus thought it would be quite foolish for him to give his orders in the style of certain householders: "Somebody fetch the water, some one split the wood." After a command of that kind, every

vocabulary

αἰσχύνω (ὀ) spoil, disgrace, disfigure, mar

αἵτιος blameworthy; the cause
~etiology

βραχύς low, short

δειπνέω eat, dine

ἔξιμι go forth; is possible ~ion

ἡγεμών -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide, chief ~hegemony

ἡνίκα when

ἥσυχος quiet

θωρακοφόρος (ἄ) wearing a breastplate

κέρας -τος (n, 3) horn; military unit
~ceratopsia

κοιμάω put to sleep; (pass) lie down, have sex

κῦρος -εος (n, 3) authority; validity

ὅμοιος like ~homoerotic

ὀνομάζω to address, name ~name

περαίνω finish, accomplish

πρόσειμι approach, draw near; add
~ion

πρόσθεν before (time, space)

προσίημι be allowed near

προστάσσω post at, attach to, command

προστίθηναι add; impose; (mp) agree; side with ~thesis

σημαίνω give orders to; show; mark
~semaphore

στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy

στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier, mercenary ~strategy

συσκευάζω pack up

τάξις -εως (f) arrangement, military unit

ὑπηρέτης -ου (m, 1) servant, officer

ὑπομένω stay behind, await ~remain

ὑστερίζω be late

ὕστερον later

φυλακή guard, prison, watch
~phylactery

ὁρᾶν πάντες ἐδόκουν αὐτῷ καὶ οὐδεὶς περαίνειν τὸ
προσταχθὲν καὶ πάντες ἐν αἰτία εἶναι καὶ οὐδεὶς τῇ
αἰτία οὔτε αἰσχύνεσθαι οὔτε φοβεῖσθαι ὁμοίως διὰ τὸ σὺν
πολλοῖς αἰτίαν ἔχειν· διὰ ταῦτα δὴ πάντας ὠνόμαζεν
αὐτὸς ὅτω τι προστάττοι.

Καὶ Κῦρος μὲν δὴ περὶ τούτων οὕτως ἐγίγνωσκεν.
οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται τότε μὲν δειπνήσαντες καὶ φυλακὰς
καταστησάμενοι καὶ συσκευασάμενοι πάντα ᾗ ἔδει
ἐκοιμήθησαν. ἡνίκα δ' ἦν ἐν μέσῳ νυκτῶν, ἐσήμηνε τῷ
κέρати. Κῦρος δ' εἰπὼν τῷ Χρυσάντῃ ὅτι ἐπὶ τῇ ὁδῷ
ὑπομενοίῃ ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν τοῦ στρατεύματος ἐξῆι λαβὼν
τοὺς ἀμφ' αὐτὸν ὑπηρέτας· βραχεὶ δὲ χρόνῳ ὕστερον
Χρυσάντας παρῆν ἄγων τοὺς θωρακοφόρους. τούτῳ μὲν
ὁ Κῦρος δοὺς ἡγεμόνας τῆς ὁδοῦ πορεύεσθαι ἐκέλευεν
ἡσύχως· οὐ γάρ πω ἐν ὁδῷ πάντες ἦσαν· αὐτὸς δὲ
ἐστηκὼς ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ τὸν μὲν προσιόντα προνέμπετο ἐν
τάξει, ἐπὶ δὲ τὸν ὑστερίζοντα ἔπεμπε καλῶν. ἐπεὶ δὲ
πάντες ἐν ὁδῷ ἦσαν, πρὸς μὲν Χρυσάνταν ἰππέας

ὁρᾶν πάντες ἐδόκουν αὐτῷ καὶ οὐδεὶς |finish, τὸ
 |accomplish
 |post at, attach καὶ πάντες ἐν αἰτία εἶναι καὶ οὐδεὶς τῇ
 |to, command
 αἰτία οὔτε |spoil, disgrace οὔτε |scare, scare ὁμοίως διὰ τὸ σὺν
 |away
 πολλοῖς αἰτίαν ἔχειν· διὰ ταῦτα δὴ πάντας |to address, name
 αὐτὸς ὅτῳ τι |post at, attach
 |to, command
 Καὶ |authority; ἐν δὴ περὶ τούτων οὕτως ἐγίγνωσκεν.
 |validity
 οἱ δὲ |soldier, τότε μὲν |eat, dine καὶ |guard,
 |mercenary |prison,
 |set down, land; be- καὶ |pack up πάντα αἰδεῖ
 |come, be
 ἐκοιμήθησαν. |when δ' ἦν ἐν μέσῳ νυκτῶν, |give orders τῷ;
 |show; mark
 |horn; Κῦρος δ' εἰπὼν τῷ Χρυσάντῳ ὅτι ἐπὶ τῇ ὁδῷ
 |military
 |unit
 |stay behind, await ἵ πρόσθεν τοῦ |army |go forth; ὡς
 |is possible
 τοὺς ἀμφ' αὐτὸν |servant, |low, short ἔχ' χρόνῳ ὕστερον
 |officer
 Χρυσάντας παρῆν ἄγων τοὺς |wearing a breast- τούτῳ μὲν
 |plate
 ὁ Κῦρος δούς |leader τῆς ὁδοῦ πορεύεσθαι ἐκέλευεν
 |quiet οὐ γάρ πω ἐν ὁδῷ πάντες ἦσαν· αὐτὸς δὲ
 ἐστηκὼς ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ τὸν μὲν προσιόντα προυπέμπετο ἐν
 τάξει, ἐπὶ δὲ τὸν |be late ἔπεμπε καλῶν. ἐπεὶ δὲ
 πάντες ἐν ὁδῷ ἦσαν, πρὸς μὲν Χρυσάνταν |rider

one looks at every one else, and no one carries it out, every one is to blame, and no one is ashamed or afraid, because there are so many beside himself. Therefore Cyrus always named the officers whenever he gave an order.

That, then, was his view of the matter. The army now took supper and posted their guards and got their necessities together and went to rest. And at midnight the horn was blown. Cyrus had told Chrysantas he would wait for him at a point on the road in advance of the troops, and therefore he went on in front himself with his own staff, and waited till Chrysantas appeared shortly afterwards at the head of his cuirassiers. Then Cyrus put the guides under his command, and told him to march on, but to go slowly until he received a message, for all the troops were not yet on the road. This done, Cyrus took his stand on the line of march, and as each division came up, hurried it forward to its place, sending messengers meanwhile to summon those who were still behind. When all had started, he despatched

*vocabulary***αἵτιος** blameworthy; the cause

~etiology

αἰτίος blameworthy; the cause

~etiology

ἐπαινέω concur, praise, advise**ἐπιμέλεια** attention; assigned task**ἐρωτάω** ask about something**ἔσχατος** farthest, last**εὐζωνος** well-girded ~zone**εὐτακτος** orderly, disciplined**ἐφοράω** look upon ~panorama**ἥσυχος** quiet**θορυβέω** roar, cheer; disturb**καταθεάομαι** look down upon**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon**κατασβέννυμι** (ō) extinguish**κοσμέω** marshal, array ~cosmos**παρालείπω** leave, leave out**παρελαύνω** pass, outstrip ~elastic**προσελαύνω** go to, approach ~elastic**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)**προστίθηναι** add; impose; (mp) agree;

side with ~thesis

πύθω (ō) rot ~putrid**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark

~semaphore

σιωπή silence**σκοπᾶω** watch, observe**σκοπέω** behold, consider**σκοπός** (f) lookout, overseer, spy,

target ~telescope

στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military

unit

ταράσσω mess things up ~trachea**ταραχή** upsetness, confusion**φιλός** (i) naked, bare ~epsilon

ἔπεμψεν ἐροῦντας ὅτι ἐν ὁδῷ ἤδη πάντες· ἄγε οὖν ἤδη θᾶπτον. αὐτὸς δὲ παρελαύνων τὸν ἵππον εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν ἥσυχος κατεθεᾶτο τὰς τάξεις. καὶ οὓς μὲν ἴδοι εὐτάκτως καὶ σιωπῇ ἰόντας, προσελαύνων αὐτοῖς τίνες τε εἶεν ἡρώτα καὶ ἐπεὶ πύθοιτο ἐπήνει· εἰ δέ τινας θορυβουμένους αἰσθοίτο, τὸ αἴτιον τούτου σκοπῶν κατασβεννύναι τὴν ταραχὴν ἐπειράτο.

Ἐν μόνον παραλέλειπται τῆς ἐν νυκτὶ ἐπιμελείας αὐτοῦ, ὅτι πρὸ παντὸς τοῦ στρατεύματος πεζοὺς εὐζώνους οὐ πολλοὺς προὔπεμπεν, ἐφορωμένους ὑπὸ Χρυσάντα καὶ ἐφορῶντας αὐτὸν, ὡς ὠτακουστοῦντες καὶ εἴ πως ἄλλως δύναιντο αἰσθάνεσθαι τι, σημαίνοιεν τῷ Χρυσάντῃ ὅ τι καιρὸς δοκοίη εἶναι· ἄρχων δὲ καὶ ἐπὶ τούτοις ἦν ὃς καὶ τούτους ἐκόσμει, καὶ τὸ μὲν ἄξιον λόγου ἐσήμαινε, τὸ δὲ μὴ οὐκ ἠνώχλει λέγων. τὴν μὲν δὴ νύκτα οὕτως ἐπορεύοντο· ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡμέρα ἐγένετο, τοὺς μὲν Καδουσίων ἱππέας, ὅτι αὐτῶν καὶ οἱ πεζοὶ ἐπορεύοντο ἔσχατοι, παρὰ τούτοις κατέλιπεν, ὡς μὴδ' οὗτοι ψιλοὶ ἱππέων ἴοιεν· τοὺς

ἔπεμψεν ἐρῶντας ὅτι ἐν ὁδῷ ἤδη πάντες· ἄγε οὖν ἤδη
 θάττον. αὐτὸς δὲ |pass, outstrip τὸν ἵππον εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν
 |quiet κατεθεᾶτο τὰς τάξεις. καὶ οὓς μὲν ἴδοι |orderly,
 |disciplined
 καὶ |silence ἰόντας, |go to, approach αὐτοῖς τίνες τε εἶεν
 |ask καὶ ἐπεὶ πύθοιτο |concur εἰ δέ τις |roar, cheer;
 |disturb
 |perceive , τὸ αἴτιον τούτου σκοπῶν |extinguish τὴν
 παραχῇν |try, test .

Ἐν μόνον |leave, leave out τῆς ἐν νυκτὶ |attention; as-...τοῦ,
 |signed task
 ὅτι πρὸ παντὸς τοῦ |army |on foot;|well-girded οὐ
 |footsol-
 πολλοὺς προύπεμπεν, |look upon |dier Ὑπὸ Χρυσάντα καὶ
 |look upon αὐτὸν, ὡς ὠτακουστοῦντες καὶ εἰ |somehow ὥς
 δύναιτο |perceive τι, |give orders to; ᾧ Χρυσάντα ὃ τι
 |show; mark
 καιρὸς δοκοῖν εἶναι· ἄρχων δὲ καὶ ἐπὶ τούτοις ἦν ὃς καὶ
 τούτους |marshal, , καὶ τὸ μὲν |worthy ὅγου |give orders to; δὲ μὴ
 |array |show; mark
 οὐκ ἠνώχλει λέγων. τὴν μὲν δὴ νύκτα οὕτως ἐπορεύοντο·
 ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡμέρα ἐγένετο, τοὺς μὲν Καδουσίων |rider , ὅτι
 αὐτῶν καὶ οἱ |on foot; footsoldier - |farthest , παρὰ τούτοις
 |leave behind, ὥς μὴδ' οὗτοι |naked, |rider ἵοιεν· τοὺς
 |abandon |bare

gallopers to Chrysantas to tell him that the whole army was now under way, and that he might lead on as quick as he could. Then he galloped to the front himself, reined up, and quietly watched the ranks defile before him. Whenever a division advanced silently and in good order, he would ride up and ask their names and pay them compliments; and if he saw any sign of confusion he would inquire the reason and restore tranquillity. One point remains to add in describing his care that night; he sent forward a small but picked body of infantry, active fellows all of them, in advance of the whole army. They were to keep Chrysantas in sight, and he was not to lose sight of them; they were to use their ears and all their wits, and report at once to Chrysantas if they thought there was any need. They had an officer to direct their movements, announce anything of importance, and not trouble about trifles.

Thus they pressed forward through the night, and when day broke Cyrus ordered the mass of the cavalry to the front, the Cadousians alone remaining with their own infantry, who brought up the rear, and who were as much in need as

*vocabulary***ἀλλάσσω** trade, transform**ἄλλοτε** at another time ~alien**ἀπαντάω** encounter, come upon**ἐναντιόομαι** oppose, contradict**ἐνεδρεύω** ambush, trap**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee**ἐτοῖμος** ready; fulfilled**ἐφοράω** look upon ~panorama**ἵππικός** of horses ~hippo**ἰσχύς** -ος (f) strength; body of troops**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch, overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy**κῦρος** -εος (n, 3) authority; validity**οὐδέποτε** never**παρελαύνω** pass, outstrip ~elastic**περιελαύνω** drive around**πιστός** faithful; trustworthy**πιστώ** reassure; also (pass) promise**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)**προστίθῃμι** add; impose; (mp) agree; side with ~thesis**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military unit

δ' ἄλλους εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν παρελαύνειν ἐκέλευσεν, ὅτι καὶ οἱ πολέμοι ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν ἦσαν, ὅπως εἴ τί που ἐναντιοῖτο αὐτῷ, ἀπαντῶν ἔχων τὴν ἰσχὺν ἐν τάξει καὶ μάχοιτο, εἴ τέ τί που φεῦγον ὀφθείη, ὥς ἐξ ἐτοιμοτάτου διώκοι. ἦσαν δὲ αὐτῷ αἰεὶ τεταγμένοι οὓς τε διώκειν δέοι καὶ οὓς παρ' αὐτῷ μένειν· πᾶσαν δὲ τὴν τάξιν λυθῆναι οὐδέποτε εἶα. Κῦρος μὲν δὴ οὕτως ἦγε τὸ στράτευμα· οὐ μέντοι αὐτός γε μιᾷ χώρᾳ ἐχρήτο, ἀλλ' ἄλλοτε ἀλλαχῇ περιελαύνων ἐφεώρα τε καὶ ἐπεμελείτο, εἴ του δέοιντο. οἱ μὲν δὴ ἀμφὶ Κῦρον οὕτως ἐπορεύοντο.

5.4

Ἐκ δὲ τοῦ Γαδάτα ἱππικοῦ τῶν δυνατῶν τις ἀνδρῶν ἐπεί ἐώρα αὐτὸν ἀφεστηκότα ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἀσσυρίου, ἐνόμισεν, εἴ τι οὗτος πάθοι, αὐτὸς ἂν λαβεῖν παρὰ τοῦ Ἀσσυρίου πάντα τὰ Γαδάτα· οὕτω δὴ πέμπει τινὰ τῶν ἑαυτοῦ πιστῶν πρὸς τὸν Ἀσσύριον καὶ κελεύει τὸν ἰόντα, εἰ καταλάβοι ἤδη ἐν τῇ Γαδάτα χώρᾳ τὸ Ἀσσύριον στράτευμα, λέγειν τῷ Ἀσσυρίῳ ὅτι εἰ βούλοιο ἐνεδρεῦσαι, λάβοι ἂν Γαδάταν

δ' ἄλλους εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν |pass, outstrip ἐκέλευσεν, ὅτι καὶ οἱ
 πολέμιοι ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν ἦσαν, ὅπως εἴ τί που |oppose,
 |contradict
 αὐτῷ, |encounter, cōme upon |strength; body |καὶ μάχοιτο, εἴ
 |of troops
 τέ τί που φεῦγον ὀφθείη, ὡς ἐξ ἐτοιμοτάτου |chase ἦσαν
 δὲ αὐτῷ αἰεὶ |arrange οὕς τε |chase δέοι καὶ οὕς παρ'
 αὐτῷ μένειν· πᾶσαν δὲ τὴν τάξιν |release |never εἶα.
 |authority; ἔν δὴ οὕτως ἦγε τὸ |army οὐ |however οὗτος
 |validity
 γε μὴ |place ἐχρήτο, ἀλλ' |at an- |trade, |drive around
 |other |transform
 |look upon εἰ καὶ |take care of, |time
 |oversee
 Κῦρον οὕτως ἐπορεύοντο.

5.4

Ἐκ δὲ τοῦ Γαδάτα |of horses γῶν δυνατῶν τις ἀνδρῶν ἐπεί
 ἐώρα αὐτὸν |stand apart; |ὑπὸ τοῦ Ἀσσυρίου, |consider, |cus-
 |exact payment |tomary; believe
 οὗτος πάθοι, αὐτὸς ἂν λαβεῖν παρὰ τοῦ Ἀσσυρίου πάντα
 τὰ Γαδάτα· οὕτω δὴ πέμπει τινὰ τῶν ἑαυτοῦ πιστῶν πρὸς
 τὸν Ἀσσύριον καὶ κελεύει τὸν ἰόντα, εἰ |seize, understand, catch, over-
 |take; (mp) happen
 ἐν τῇ Γαδάτα |place τὸ Ἀσσύριον |army, λέγειν τῷ
 Ἀσσυρίῳ ὅτι εἰ βούλοιτο |ambush, trap ἁβόι ἂν Γαδάταν

others of cavalry support. But the rest of the horsemen he sent ahead because it was ahead that the enemy lay, and in case of resistance he was anxious to oppose them in battle-order, while if they fled he wished no time to be lost in following up the pursuit. It was always arranged who were to give chase and who were to stay with himself: he never allowed the whole army to be broken up. Thus Cyrus conducted the advance, but it is not to be thought that he kept to one particular spot; he was always galloping backwards and forwards, first at one point and then at another, supervising everything and supplying any defect as it arose. Thus Cyrus and his men marched forward.

5.4

Now there was a certain officer in the cavalry with Gadatas, a man of power and influence, who, when he saw that his master had revolted from Assyria, thought to himself, "If anything should happen to him, I myself could get from the king all that he possessed."

Accordingly he sent forward a man he could trust, with instructions that, if he found the Assyrian army already in the territory of Gadatas, he was to tell the king that he could capture Gadatas and all who were with him, if he thought fit to

*vocabulary***ἄθροος** grouped**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot**δηλώω** show, disclose**ἐγγύς** near**ἕζομαι** act: set, seat; pass: sit down, sit up ~sit**ἐνεδρεύω** ambush, trap**ἔνειμι** be in ~ion**ἐντέλλω** (mp) command**ἐξανίστημι** raise, bring/send out**ἐξαπατάω** trick, cheat ~apatosaurus**κατασεύω** shake, throw down**κώμη** village**οἰκέτης** -ου (m, 1) household; house slave**παραλαμβάνω** receive, undertake, associate with**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near; add ~ion**προσίστημι** be allowed near**συνέπομαι** go along with ~sequel**τήκω** melt**φάσκω** declare, promise, think ~fame**χωρίον** area; downwards

καὶ τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ. δηλοῦν δὲ ἐνετέλλετο ὅσῃν τε εἶχεν ὁ Γαδάτας δύναμιν καὶ ὅτι Κῦρος οὐ συνέποιτο αὐτῷ· καὶ τὴν ὁδὸν ἐδήλωσεν ἥ προσιέναι μέλλοι. προσεπέστειλε δὲ τοῖς αὐτοῦ οἰκέταις, ὥς πιστεύοιτο μᾶλλον, καὶ τὸ τεῖχος ὃ ἐτύγχανεν αὐτὸς ἔχων ἐν τῇ Γαδάτα χώρα παραδοῦναι τῷ Ἀσσυρίῳ καὶ τὰ ἐνόντα· ἥξειν δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς ἔφασκεν, εἰ μὲν δύναιτο, ἀποκτείνας Γαδάταν, εἰ δὲ μή, ὥς σὺν τῷ Ἀσσυρίῳ τὸ λοιπὸν ἐσόμενος. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ ἐπὶ ταῦτα ταχθεὶς ἐλαύνων ὥς δυνατὸν ἦν τάχιστα ἀφικνεῖται πρὸς τὸν Ἀσσύριον καὶ ἐδήλωσεν ἐφ' ᾧ ἦκοι, ἀκούσας ἐκεῖνος τό τε χωρίον εὐθὺς παρέλαβε καὶ πολλὴν ἵππον ἔχων καὶ ἄρματα ἐνήδρευεν ἐν κώμαις ἀθρόαις. ὁ δὲ Γαδάτας ὥς ἐγγὺς ἦν τούτων τῶν κωμῶν, πέμπει τινὰς προδιερευνησομένους. ὁ δὲ Ἀσσύριος ὥς ἔγνω προσιόντας τοὺς διερευνητάς, φεύγειν κελεύει ἄρματα ἐξαναστάντα δύο ἢ τρία καὶ ἵππους ὀλίγους, ὥς δὴ φοβηθέντας καὶ ὀλίγους ὄντας. οἱ δὲ διερευνηταὶ ὥς εἶδον ταῦτα, αὐτοὶ τε ἐδίωκον καὶ τῷ Γαδάτα κατέσειον· καὶ ὃς ἐξαπατηθεὶς

καὶ τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ. ^{|show, disclose} δὲ ἐνετέλλετο ὅσῃν τε εἶχεν ὁ
 Γαδάτας δύναμιν καὶ ὅτι Κῦρος οὐ ^{|go along with} τῷ καὶ
 τὴν ὁδὸν ^{|show, disclose} ἥ προσιέναι μέλλοι. προσεπέστειλε
 δὲ τοῖς αὐτοῦ ^{|household; house slave} ὡς πιστεύοιτο μᾶλλον, καὶ τὸ
^{|outdoor wall} ὕψανεν αὐτὸς ἔχων ἐν τῇ Γαδάτα χώρα
^{|hand over} τῷ Ἀσσυρίῳ καὶ τὰ ^{|be in} ^{|be present, have arrived} αὐτὸς
^{|declare, promise, think} δύναιτο, ^{|kill} Γαδάταν, εἰ δὲ μή,
 ὡς σὺν τῷ Ἀσσυρίῳ τὸ ^{|left over} ἐσόμενος. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ ἐπὶ
 ταῦτα ταχθεὶς ^{|drive} ὡς ^{|powerful, possible} ἦν τάχιστα ^{|arrive}
 πρὸς τὸν Ἀσσύριον καὶ ^{|show, disclose} ἐφ' ᾧ ἤκοι, ἀκούσας
 ἐκεῖνος τό τε ^{|area; wards} ^{|down} ^{|receive, undertake, associate with} ἄλλῃν ἵππον
 ἔχων καὶ ^{|chariot} ^{|ambush, trap} ^{|village} ^{|grouped} . ὁ δὲ
 Γαδάτας ὡς ^{|near} ἦν τούτων τῶν ^{|village} πέμπει τινὰς
 προδιερευνησομένους. ὁ δὲ Ἀσσύριος ὡς ἔγνω προσιόντας
 τοὺς διερευνητάς, φεύγειν κελεύει ^{|chariot} ^{|raise, bring/send out}
 δύο ἢ ^{|three} καὶ ἵππους ὀλίγους, ὡς δὴ φοβηθέντας καὶ
 ὀλίγους ὄντας. οἱ δὲ διερευνηταὶ ὡς εἶδον ταῦτα, αὐτοί
 τε ^{|chase} καὶ τῷ Γαδάτῃ ^{|shake, throw down} καὶ ὡς ^{|trick, cheat}

make an ambushade. And the messenger was also to say what force Gادات had at his command and to announce that Cyrus was not with him. Moreover, the officer stated the road by which Gادات was coming. Finally, to win the greater confidence, he sent word to his own dependents and bade them deliver up to the king of Assyria the castle which he himself commanded in the province, with all that it contained: he would come himself, he added, if possible, after he had slain Gادات, and, even if he failed in that, he would always stand by the king.

Now the emissary rode as hard as he could and came before the king and told his errand, and, hearing it, the king at once took over the castle and formed an ambushade, with a large body of horse and many chariots, in a dense group of villages that lay upon the road. Gادات, when he came near the spot, sent scouts ahead to explore, and the king, as soon as he sighted them, ordered two or three of his chariots and a handful of horsemen to dash away as though in flight, giving the impression that they were few in number and panic-stricken. At this the scouting party swept after them, signalling to Gادات, who also fell into the trap and gave himself up

*vocabulary***ἄημι** blow**ἁλίσκομαι** be captured ~helix**ἁλώσιμος** easy to take**ἄω** aor: to sate ~sate**βραδύς** slow, dull, late ~Sp.~gordo**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous**εἰκός** likely**ἐκτείνω** stretch out ~tend**ἐνέδρα** ambush, trickery**ἐνταῦθα** there, here**ἐξίστημι** displace, transform; (+gen)

give up ~station

ἐπιβουλεύω plot, plan, harm

~volunteer

ἡδομαι be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism**ἡώς ἡῶθι** (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene**καθοράω** look down ~panorama**καίριος** deadly**κράτος** strength, power; victory

~democracy

λιμὴν -ένος (m, 3) harbor, refuge

~limnic

ὁμός same ~homoerotic**ὁμοῦ** together**ὁμόω** unite ~homoerotic**παίω** hit**πιέζω** press, squeeze ~piezoelectric**πληγὴ** a hit ~plectrum**πορεία** gait, march**πρόθυμος** (ῶ) willing, eager ~fume**πρόσεμι** approach, draw near; add

~ion

προσίημι be allowed near**προσφέρω** present; resemble; add**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**στρατιά** army ~strategy**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military unit**τιτρώσκω** wound, bring to grief

~trauma

τύπτω beat, smite ~stupid**χειμών** -ος (m, 3) winter, storm

διώκει ἀνὰ κράτος. οἱ δὲ Ἀσσύριοι, ὡς ἐδόκει ἀλώσιμος εἶναι ὁ Γαδάτας, ἀνίστανται ἐκ τῆς ἐνέδρας. καὶ οἱ μὲν ἀμφὶ Γαδάταν ἰδόντες ὥσπερ εἰκὸς ἔφευγον, οἱ δ' αὖ ὥσπερ εἰκὸς ἐδίωκον. καὶ ἐν τούτῳ ὁ ἐπιβουλεύων τῷ Γαδάτῃ παῖει αὐτόν, καὶ καιρίας μὲν πληγῆς ἀμαρτάνει, τύπτει δὲ αὐτὸν εἰς τὸν ὦμον καὶ τιτρώσκει. ποιήσας δὲ τοῦτο ἐξίσταται, ἕως σὺν τοῖς διώκουσιν ἐγένετο· ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγνώσθη ὅς ἦν, ὁμοῦ δὴ σὺν τοῖς Ἀσσυρίοις προθύμως ἐκτείνων τὸν ἵππον σὺν τῷ βασιλεῖ ἐδίωκεν. ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἠλίσκοντο μὲν δῆλον ὅτι οἱ βραδυτάτους ἔχοντες τοὺς ἵππους ὑπὸ τῶν ταχίστων· ἤδη δὲ μάλα πάντες πιεζόμενοι διὰ τὸ κατατετρῦσθαι ὑπὸ τῆς πορείας οἱ τοῦ Γαδάτα ἱππεῖς καθορώσι τὸν Κῦρον προσιόντα σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι· δοκεῖν δὲ χρή ἀσμένους καὶ ὥσπερ εἰς λιμένα ἐκ χειμῶνος προσφέρεσθαι αὐτούς. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος τὸ μὲν πρῶτον ἐθαύμασεν· ὡς δ' ἔγνω τὸ πρᾶγμα, ἔστε μὲν πάντες ἐναντίοι ἡλαυνον, ἐναντίος καὶ αὐτὸς ἐν τάξει ἦγε τὴν στρατιάν· ὡς δὲ γνόντες οἱ πολέμοι τὸ ὄν ἐτράποντο

διώκει ἀνὰ |strength, power; victory ἵππῳ Ἀσσύριοι, ὥς ἐδόκει |easy to take
εἶναι ὁ Γαδάτας, ἀνίστανται ἐκ τῆς |ambush, trickery
ἀμφὶ Γαδάταν ἰδόντες ὥσπερ |likely ἔφευγον, οἱ δ' αὖ
ὥσπερ |likely ἐδίωκον. καὶ ἐν τούτῳ ὁ |plot, plan, harm ᾧ
Γαδάτα |hit αὐτόν, καὶ |deadly μὲν |a hit |miss, fail, lose; sin
|smite δὲ αὐτὸν εἰς τὸν ὦμον καὶ |wound, bring to grief ποιήσας δὲ
τοῦτο |displace, transform; (+gen) give up ἢ τοῖς διώκουσιν ἐγένετο· ἐπεὶ δ'
ἐγνώσθη ὅς ἦν, ὁμοῦ δὴ σὺν τοῖς Ἀσσυρίοις |willing, eager
|stretch out τὸν ἵππον σὺν τῷ βασιλεῖ ἐδίωκεν. |there, here
δὴ |be captured μὲν |visible, conspicuous οἱ |slow, dull, late ἔχοντες
τοὺς ἵππους ὑπὸ τῶν ταχίστων· ἤδη δὲ μάλα πάντες
|press, squeeze διὰ τὸ κατατετρῦσθαι ὑπὸ τῆς |gait, march οἱ
τοῦ Γαδάτα ἱππεῖς |look down τὸν Κῦρον προσιόντα σὺν
τῷ |army δοκεῖν δὲ χρὴ ἀσμένους καὶ ὥσπερ εἰς
|harbor, refuge ἐκ |winter, storm |present; resem- |ble; add αὐτούς. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος τὸ
μὲν πρῶτον |marvel ὥς δ' ἔγνω τὸ πρᾶγμα, ἔστε μὲν
πάντες ἐναντίοι ἡλαυνον, ἐναντίος καὶ αὐτὸς ἐν τάξει ἦγε
τὴν |army ὥς δὲ γνόντες οἱ πολέμοι τὸ ὄν |divert

to the chase.

The Assyrians waited till the quarry was within their grasp and then sprang out from their ambushade. The men, with Gاداتas, seeing what had happened, turned back and fled, as one might expect, with the Assyrians at their heels, while the officer who had planned it all stabbed Gاداتas himself. He struck him in the shoulder, but the blow was not mortal. Thereupon the traitor fled to the pursuers, and when they found out who he was he galloped on with them, his horse at full stretch, side by side with the king. Naturally the men with the slower horses were overtaken by the better mounted, and the fugitives, already wearied by their long journey, were at the last extremity when suddenly they caught sight of Cyrus advancing at the head of his army, and were swept into safety, as glad and thankful, we may well believe, as shipwrecked mariners into port.

The first feeling of Cyrus was sheer astonishment, but he soon saw how matters stood. The whole force of the Assyrian cavalry was rolling on him, and he met it with his own army in perfect order, till the enemy, realising what

*vocabulary***αἰχμάλωτος** captive ~acute**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured ~helix**ἀπαντάω** encounter, come upon**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish
~practice**ἐκπίπτω** fall out of ~petal**ἐνιοι** some**ἐνταῦθα** there, here**ἐπαναχωρέω** retreat, return ~heir**ἐπιδέω** fasten; lack**ἐπισκέπτομαι** look upon, inspect**ἐπισκοπέω** look upon, inspect**ἔπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism**ἡνιοχεύς** -ος (m) rein holder**ἡνίοχος** rein holder**καταφεύγω** resort to, flee to, appeal to
~fugitive**κῦρος** -εος (n, 3) authority; validity**παίζω** play ~pediatrician**παίω** hit**πέζα** end of a chariot pole**περιτέμνω** surround to steal ~tonsure**προστάσσω** post at, attach to,
command**συμφέρω** bring together; be expedient;
agree; (mp) happen ~bear**τραῦμα** -τος (n, 3) injury**φθάζω** do first, outstrip**φθάνω** (ᾱ) do first, outstrip**φυγή** flight, means of escape ~fugitive**χωρίον** area; downwards

εἰς φυγὴν, ἐνταῦθα ὁ Κῦρος διώκειν ἐκέλευσε τοὺς πρὸς τοῦτο τεταγμένους, αὐτὸς δὲ σὺν τοῖς ἄλλοις εἶπετο ὡς ᾧετο συμφέρειν. ἐνταῦθα δὴ καὶ ἄρματα ἠλίσκοντο, ἔνια μὲν καὶ ἐκπιπτόντων τῶν ἡνιόχων, τῶν μὲν ἐν τῇ ἀναστροφῇ, τῶν δὲ καὶ ἄλλως, ἔνια δὲ καὶ περιτεμνόμενα ὑπὸ τῶν ἱππέων ἠλίσκετο. καὶ ἀποκτείνουσι δὲ ἄλλους τε πολλοὺς καὶ τὸν παίσαντα Γαδάταν. τῶν μέντοι πεζῶν Ἀσσυρίων, οἳ ἔτυχον τὸ Γαδάτα χωρίον πολιορκοῦντες, οἳ μὲν εἰς τὸ τεῖχος κατέφυγον τὸ ἀπὸ Γαδάτα ἀποστάν, οἳ δὲ φθάσαντες εἰς πόλιν τινὰ τοῦ Ἀσσυρίου μεγάλην, ἔνθα καὶ αὐτὸς σὺν τοῖς ἵπποις καὶ τοῖς ἄρμασι κατέφυγεν ὁ Ἀσσύριος.

Κῦρος μὲν δὴ διαπραξάμενος ταῦτα ἐπαναχωρεῖ εἰς τὴν Γαδάτα χώραν· καὶ προστάξας οἷς ἔδει ἀμφὶ τὰ αἰχμάλωτα ἔχειν, εὐθὺς ἐπορεύετο, ὡς ἐπισκέψαιτο τὸν Γαδάταν πῶς ἔχοι ἐκ τοῦ τραύματος. πορευομένῳ δὲ αὐτῷ ὁ Γαδάτας ἐπιδεδεμένος ἤδη τὸ τραῦμα ἀπαντᾷ. ἰδὼν δὲ αὐτὸν ὁ Κῦρος ἦσθη τε καὶ εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ δὲ πρὸς σέ

εἰς |flight, , |there, here |authority, chase ἐκέλευσε τοὺς πρὸς
 |means of |validity
 τοῦτο |escape
 |arrange , αὐτὸς δὲ σὺν τοῖς ἄλλοις εἶπετο ὥς

ᾧετο |bring together; |there, here ἡ καὶ |chariot |be captured ,
 |be expedient;
 |some |agree; (mp)
 |happen |fall out of τῶν ἡνιόχων, τῶν μὲν ἐν τῇ

ἀναστροφῇ, τῶν δὲ καὶ ἄλλως, |some ἡ καὶ |surround to steal

ὑπὸ τῶν |rider |be captured :αὶ ἀποκτείνουσι δὲ ἄλλους τε

πολλοὺς καὶ τὸν παῖσαντα Γαδάταν. τῶν μέντοι πεζῶν

Ἀσσυρίων, οἱ ἔτυχον τὸ Γαδάτα |area; |besiege , οἱ

μὲν εἰς τὸ τείχος |resort to, flee γὰρ ἀπὸ Γαδάτα |stand apart;
 |to, appeal to |exact payment

δὲ φθάσαντες εἰς πόλιν τινὰ τοῦ Ἀσσυρίου μεγάλην, ἔνθα

καὶ αὐτὸς σὺν τοῖς ἵπποις καὶ τοῖς |chariot |resort to, flee ὁ
 |to, appeal to

Ἀσσύριος.

Κῦρος μὲν δὴ ταῦτα εἰς

τὴν Γαδάτα χά |travel ,over, ac- οἱ |retreat, return τὰ
 |accomplish

ἔχειν, εὐθὺς ἐπὶ |post at, attach ἐπισκέψαιτο τὸν
 |to, command

|captive ..ὡς ἔχοι ἐκ τοῦ . πορευομένῳ δὲ

αὐτῷ ὁ Γαδάτας |injury . . .

ιδὼν δὲ αὐτὸν ὁ Κῦρος |fasten; lack . . . καὶ εἰπὶ |injury , . . |encounter, come upon

σὲ |be pleased, enjoy

had happened, turned and fled. Then Cyrus ordered his pursuing party to charge, while he followed more slowly at the pace he thought the safest. The enemy were utterly routed: many of the chariots were taken, some had lost their charioteers, others were seized in the sudden change of front, others surrounded by the Persian cavalry. Right and left the conquerors cut down their foes, and among them fell the officer who had dealt the blow at Gadatas. But of the Assyrian infantry, those who were besieging the fortress of Gadatas escaped to the stronghold that had revolted from him, or managed to reach an important city belonging to the king, where he himself, his horsemen, and his chariots had taken refuge.

After this exploit Cyrus went on to the territory of Gadatas, and as soon as he had given orders to those who guarded the prisoners, he went himself to visit the eunuch and see how it was with him after his wound. Gadatas came out to meet him, his wound already bandaged. And Cyrus was gladdened and said, "I came myself to see how it was with you."

*vocabulary***ἀνιάζω** bother, grieve**ἀνιάω** (ἷ) vex**ἐπεύχομαι** exult (over); pray ~vow**ἐπισκέπτομαι** look upon, inspect**ἐπισκοπέω** look upon, inspect**θαῦμα** -τος (n, 3) a wonder, feeling of surprise ~theater**κτάομαι** acquire, possess**ναί** yea**οἶχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone**ὀνίνημι** help, please, be available**ὅποῖος** whatever kind**Πέρσης** Persian**πότε** when?**πρόθυμος** (ὁ) willing, eager ~fume**σάκος** shield, hide, sack**σπουδάζω** be busy, earnest ~repudiate**ὑπέχω** promise; hold out one's hand; submit to**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics**ψύχω** (ὁ) breathe, blow ~psychology

ἦα ἐπισκεψόμενος πῶς ἔχεις. Ἐγὼ δέ γ', ἔφη ὁ Γαδάτας,
 ναὶ μὰ τοὺς θεοὺς σὲ ἐπαναθεασόμενος ἦα ὁποῖός τις ποτε
 φαίνῃ ἰδεῖν ὁ τοιαύτην ψυχὴν ἔχων· ὅστις οὐτ' οἶδα ἔγωγε
 ὅτι νῦν ἐμοῦ δεόμενος οὔτε μὴν ὑποσχόμενός γέ μοι ταῦτα
 πράξειν οὐτ' εὖ πεπονθὼς ὑπ' ἐμοῦ εἰς γε τὸ ἴδιον οὐδ'
 ὁτιοῦν, ἀλλ' ὅτι τοὺς φίλους ἔδοξά σοί τι ὀνῆσαι, οὕτω
 μοι προθύμως ἐβοήθησας ὥς νῦν τὸ μὲν ἐπ' ἐμοὶ οἴχομαι,
 τὸ δ' ἐπὶ σοὶ σέσωσμαι. οὐ μὰ τοὺς θεοὺς, ὦ Κῦρε, εἰ ἦν
 οἶος ἔφην ἐξ ἀρχῆς καὶ ἐπαιδοποιησάμην, οὐκ οἶδ' ἂν εἰ
 ἐκτησάμην παῖδα τοιοῦτον περὶ ἐμέ· ἐπεὶ ἄλλους τε οἶδα
 παῖδας καὶ τοῦτον τὸν νῦν Ἀσσυρίων βασιλέα πολὺ πλείω
 ἤδη τὸν αὐτοῦ πατέρα ἀνιάσαντα ἢ σὲ νῦν δύναται ἀνιᾶν.
 καὶ ὁ Κῦρος πρὸς ταῦτα εἶπεν ὦδε· ὦ Γαδάτα, ἦ πολὺν
 μείζον παρὲς θαῦμα ἐμὲ νῦν θαυμάζεις. Καὶ τί δὴ τοῦτ'
 ἔστιν; ἔφη ὁ Γαδάτας. Ὅτι τοσοῦτοι μὲν, ἔφη, Περσῶν
 ἐσπούδασαν περὶ σέ, τοσοῦτοι δὲ Μήδων, τοσοῦτοι δὲ
 Ὑρκανίων, πάντες δὲ οἱ παρόντες Ἀρμενίων καὶ Σακῶν
 καὶ Καδουσίων. καὶ ὁ Γαδάτας ἐπηύξατο· Ἀλλ', ὦ Ζεῦ,

ἦα ἐπισκεψόμενος |how? why? Ἐγὼ δέ γ', ἔφη ὁ Γαδάτας,
 |yea μὰ τοὺς θεοὺς σέ ἐπαναθρασόμενος ἦα |whatever kind - τε
 φαίνῃ ἰδεῖν ὁ τοιαύτην ψυχὴν ἔχων· ὅστις οὐτ' οἶδα ἔγωγε
 ὅ τι νῦν ἐμοῦ δεόμενος οὔτε μὴν |promise γέ μοι ταῦτα
 πράξειν οὐτ' εὖ πεπονθὼς ὑπ' ἐμοῦ εἷς γε τὸ |private, 'δ'
 |personal
 ὁτιοῦν, ἀλλ' ὅτι τοὺς φίλους ἔδοξά σοί τι |help, please, 'ω
 |be available
 μοι |willing, |rescue ὥς νῦν τὸ μὲν ἐπ' ἐμοὶ |come, go,
 |eager
 τὸ δ' ἐπὶ σοὶ |save, οὐ μὰ τοὺς θεοὺς, ὦ Κῦρε, εἰ ἦν
 |preserve
 οἶος |produce, ' , χῆς καὶ ἐπαιδοποιησάμην, οὐκ οἶδ' ἂν εἰ
 |beget; clasp
 ἐκτησάμην παῖδα τοιοῦτον περὶ ἐμέ· ἐπεὶ ἄλλους τε οἶδα
 παῖδας καὶ τοῦτον τὸν νῦν Ἀσσυρίων βασιλέα πολὺ πλείω
 ἤδη τὸν αὐτοῦ πατέρα |bother, ἦ σέ νῦν δύναται |vex
 |grieve
 καὶ ὁ Κῦρος πρὸς ταῦτα εἶπεν |thus ὦ Γαδάτα, ἦ πολὺν
 μείζον παρὲς |wonder, 'μὲ νῦν |marvel . Καὶ τί δὴ τοῦτ'
 |surprise
 ἔστιν; ἔφη ὁ Γαδάτας. Ὅτι |so much μέν, ἔφη, Περσῶν
 |be busy, earnest ἐρὶ σέ, |so much δὲ Μήδων, |so much δὲ
 Ὑρκανίων, πάντες δὲ οἱ παρόντες Ἀρμενίων καὶ |shield, hide, sack
 καὶ Καδουσίων. καὶ ὁ Γαδάτας |exult (over); 'pray', ὦ Ζεῦ,

"And I," said Gadatas, "heaven be my witness, I came out to see how a man would look who had a soul like yours. I cannot tell what need you had of me, or what promise you ever gave me, to make you do as you have done. I had shown you no kindness for your private self: it was because you thought I had been of some little service to your friends, that you came to help me thus, and help me you did, from death to life. Left to myself I was lost. By heaven above, I swear it, Cyrus, if I had been a father as I was born to be, God knows whether I could have found in the son of my loins so true a friend as you. I know of sons—this king of ours is such an one, who has caused his own father ten thousand times more trouble than ever he causes you."

And Cyrus made answer:

"You have overlooked a much more wonderful thing, Gadatas, to turn and wonder at me."

"Nay," said Gadatas, "what could that be?"

"That all these Persians," he answered, "are so zealous in your behalf, and all these Medes and Hyrcanians, and every one of our allies, Armenians, Sakians, Cadousians."

Then Gadatas prayed aloud:

"O Father Zeus, may the gods

*vocabulary***αἵτιος** blameworthy; the cause

~etiology

αἰτίος blameworthy; the cause

~etiology

ἀνακοινῶ communicate, impart**ἀφαιρέω** take away ~heresy**ἄχρι** as far as (+gen); until**διασπάω** tear apart ~spatula**δίωξις** -εως (f) pursuit**ἐπαινέω** concur, praise, advise**θύω** (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω**καταφεύγω** resort to, flee to, appeal to

~fugitive

λαμπρός brilliant ~lamp**λεία** booty**λεῖος** smooth**μετέχω** partake of**ξενίζω** be host, treat as a guest

~xenophobe

ξένιος of hospitality ~xenophobe**ὀπισθοφυλακέω** guard the rear**πάμπολυς** very great**προσάγω** bring to a place

~demagogue

στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**συντάσσω** gather, assemble ~syntax**συντυγχάνω** fall in with; happen

ἔφη, καὶ τούτοις πόλλ' ἀγαθὰ δοῖεν οἱ θεοί, καὶ πλείστα τῷ αἰτίῳ τοῦ καὶ τούτους τοιούτους εἶναι. ὅπως μέντοι οὓς ἐπαινεῖς τούτους, ὦ Κῦρε, ξενίσωμεν καλῶς, δέχου τάδε ξένια οἷα ἐγὼ δοῦναι δύναμαι. ἅμα δὲ προσήγε πάμπολλα, ὥστε καὶ θύειν τὸν βουλόμενον καὶ ξενίζεσθαι πᾶν τὸ στράτευμα ἀξίως τῶν καλῶς πεποιημένων καὶ καλῶς συμβάντων.

Ὁ Δὲ Καδούσιος ὠπισθοφυλάκει καὶ οὐ μετέσχε τῆς διώξεως· βουλόμενος δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς λαμπρόν τι ποιῆσαι, οὔτε ἀνακοινωσάμενος οὔτε εἰπὼν οὐδὲν Κύρῳ καταθεῖ τὴν πρὸς Βαβυλῶνα χώραν. διεσπασμένοι δὲ τοῖς ἵπποις αὐτοῦ ἀπὼν ὁ Ἀσσύριος ἐκ τῆς ἑαυτοῦ πόλεως, οἱ κατέφυγε, συντυγχάνει μάλα συντεταγμένον ἔχων τὸ αὐτοῦ στράτευμα. ὥς δ' ἔγνω μόνους ὄντας τοὺς Καδουσίους, ἐπιτίθεται, καὶ τὸν τε ἄρχοντα τῶν Καδουσίων ἀποκτείνει καὶ ἄλλους πολλούς, καὶ ἵππους τινὰς λαμβάνει τῶν Καδουσίων καὶ ἦν ἄγοντες λείαν ἐτύχανον ἀφαιρεῖται. καὶ ὁ μὲν Ἀσσύριος διώξας ἄχρι

ἔφη, καὶ τούτοις πόλλ' ἀγαθὰ δοῖεν οἱ θεοί, καὶ πλείστα
 τῷ αἰτίῳ τοῦ καὶ τούτους τοιούτους εἶναι. ὅπως |however
 οὗς |concur τούτους, ὦ Κῦρε, |be host καλῶς, |accept, re-
 |ceive, await
 τάδε |of hospitality, ὡς δοῦναι δύναμαι. ἅμα δὲ |bring to a place
 πάμπολλα, ὥστε καὶ |rush; sacrifice λόμενον καὶ |be host
 πᾶν τὸ |army |worthy τῶν καλῶς πεποιημένων καὶ
 καλῶς |agree; occur .
 Ὁ Δὲ Καδούσιος |guard the rear καὶ οὐ |partake of τῆς
 |pursuit βουλόμενος δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς |brilliant τι ποιῆσαι,
 οὔτε |communicate, impart οὔτε εἰπὼν οὐδὲν Κύρῳ καταθεῖ
 τὴν πρὸς Βαβυλῶνα |place . |tear apart δὲ τοῖς
 ἵπποις αὐτοῦ |be absent, go, Ἀσσύριος ἐκ τῆς ἑαυτοῦ πόλεως,
 |away, return
 οἱ |resort to, flee|fall in with; happen . |gather, assemble ἔχων
 |to, appeal to
 τὸ αὐτοῦ |army ὥς δ' ἔγνω μόνους ὄντας
 τοὺς Καδουσίους, |put on, apply; (mid) ἔν τε ἄρχοντα τῶν
 |undertake, attack
 Καδουσίῳ |kill καὶ ἄλλους πολλούς, καὶ ἵππους
 τινὰς λαμβάνει τῶν Καδουσίῳ καὶ ἦν ἄγοντες λείαν
 ἐτύγχανον |take away . καὶ ὁ μὲν Ἀσσύριος |chase |as far as
 |(+gen); until

heap blessings on them also, but above all on him who has made them what they are! And now, Cyrus, that I may entertain as they deserve these men you praise, take the gifts I bring you as their host, the best I have it in my power to bring.”

And with the word he brought out stores of every kind, enough for all to over sacrifice who listed; and the whole army was entertained in a manner worthy of their feat and their success.

Meanwhile the Cadousians had been always in the rear, unable to share in the pursuit, and they longed to achieve some exploit of their own. So their chieftain, with never a word to Cyrus, led them forth alone, and raided the country towards Babylon. But, as soon as they were scattered the Assyrians came out from their city of refuge in good battle-order. When they saw that the Cadousians were unsupported they attacked them, killing the leader himself and numbers of his men, capturing many of their horses and retaking the spoil they were in the act of driving away. The king pursued as far as he thought safe, and

vocabulary

ἀναλαμβάνω take up, recover, resume
ἀνθρώπινος human
ἀνιάω (ι) vex
ἀπαντάω encounter, come upon
ἀποτρέπω divert from ~trophy
ἀσφαλής safe, easy, steady, careful
αὐτόπτης -ου (m, 1) eyewitness
δείλη afternoon ~diem
δειπνέω eat, dine
δῆλος visible, conspicuous
ἐκὼν willingly, on purpose; giving in too easily
ἐξάνυτω bring to pass; slay
ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable
ἐφοράω look upon ~panorama
ἡνίκα when
θαυμαστός wonderful; admirable
θεραπεύω help, serve ~therapy

ἱατρός (ᾱ) physician
ἰσχυρός (ῶ) strong, forceful, violent
κηρύσσω be a henchman, summon people
κοιμάω put to sleep; (pass) lie down, have sex
κῦρος -εος (n, 3) authority; validity
ὀμότιμος (ι) equally honored
παραλαμβάνω receive, undertake, associate with
παραλείπω leave, leave out
Πέρσης Persian
συνίημι send together; hear, notice, understand ~jet
τιτρώσκω wound, bring to grief ~trauma
τοιόσδε such
ὕπηρέτης -ου (m, 1) servant, officer
φανερὸς visible, conspicuous ~photon

οὐ ἀσφαλὲς ᾧετο εἶναι ἀπετράπετο· οἱ δὲ Καδούσιοι ἐσώζοντο πρὸς τὸ στρατόπεδον ἀμφὶ δαίλην οἱ πρῶτοι. Κῦρος δ' ὥς ᾗσθητο τὸ γεγονός, ἀπήντα τε τοῖς Καδουσίοις καὶ ὄντινα ἴδοι τετρωμένον ἀναλαμβάνων τοῦτον μὲν ὥς Γαδάταν ἔπεμπεν, ὅπως θεραπεύοιτο, τοὺς δ' ἄλλους συγκατεσκήνου καὶ ὅπως τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἔξουσι συνεπεμελείτο, παραλαμβάνων Περσῶν τῶν ὁμοτίμων συνεπιμελητάς· ἐν γὰρ τοῖς τοιούτοις οἱ ἀγαθοὶ ἐπιπονεῖν ἐθέλουσι. καὶ ἀνιώμενος μέντοι ἰσχυρῶς δῆλος ἦν, ὥς καὶ τῶν ἄλλων δειπνούντων ἡνίκα ὥρα ἦν, Κῦρος ἔτι σὺν τοῖς ὑπηρέταις καὶ τοῖς ἰατροῖς οὐδένα ἐκὼν ἀτημέλητον παρέλειπεν, ἀλλ' ἢ αὐτόπτης ἐφεώρα ἢ εἰ μὴ αὐτὸς ἐξανύτοι, πέμπων φανερὸς ἦν τοὺς θεραπεύοντας.

Καὶ τότε μὲν οὕτως ἐκοιμήθησαν. ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ κηρύξας συνιέναι τῶν μὲν ἄλλων τοὺς ἄρχοντας, τοὺς δὲ Καδουσίους ἅπαντας, ἔλεξε τοιάδε.

Ἄνδρες σύμμαχοι, ἀνθρώπινον τὸ γεγενημένον· τὸ γὰρ ἁμαρτάνειν ἀνθρώπους ὄντας οὐδὲν οἶομαι θαυμαστόν.

οὐ |safe, easy, οἷο εἶναι |divert from οἱ δὲ Καδούσιοι
|steady, careful

ἑσφύζοντο πρὸς τὸ στρατόπεδον ἀμφὶ |afternoon· πρῶτοι.

|authority; ὥς ἦσθετο τὸ γεγονός, |encounter, come upon
|validity

Καδουσίους καὶ ὄντινα ἴδοι |wound, bring to |take up, recover,
|grief |resume

τοῦτον μὲν ὡς Γαδάταν ἔπεμπεν, ὅπως |help, serve , τοὺς

δ' ἄλλους συγκατεσκήνου καὶ ὅπως τὰ |fit, suitable ἔξουσι

συνεπεμελείτο, |receive, undertake, Περσῶν τῶν |equally
|associate with |honored

συνεπιμελητάς· ἐν γὰρ τοῖς τοιούτοις οἱ ἀγαθοὶ ἐπιπονεῖν

ἐθέλουσι. καὶ |vex μέντοι |strong, |visible, ὥς

|forceful, |conspicuous

καὶ τῶν ἄλλων |eat, dine |when ὥρα ἦν, Κύρος ἔτι σὺν

τοῖς |servant, καὶ τοῖς |physician ὑδένα |willingly. ημελήτων
|officer

|leave, leave, ἀλλ' ἣ |eyewitness |look upon ἢ εἰ μὴ αὐτὸς
|out

|bring to pass; slay... |visible, ὥς τοὺς |help, serve
|conspicuous

Καὶ τότε μὲν οὕτως ἐκοιμήθησαν. ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ

|be |send together; hear ἄλλων τοὺς ἄρχοντας, τοὺς δὲ
|hench-
man
|summon
|people
Καδουσίους ἅπαντας, ἔλεξε |such

Ἄνδρες σύμμαχοι, |human τὸ γεγεννημένον· τὸ γὰρ

ἀμαρτάνειν ἀνθρώπους ὄντας οὐδὲν οἶομαι |wonderful;
|admirable

then turned back, and the Cadousians at last found safety in their own camp, though even the vanguard only reached it late in the afternoon. When Cyrus saw what had happened he went out to meet them, succouring every wounded man and sending him off to Gadatas at once, to have his wounds dressed, while he helped to house the others in their quarters, and saw that they had all they needed, his Peers aiding him, for at such times noble natures will give help with all their hearts. Still it was plain to see that he was sorely vexed, and when the hour for dinner came, and the others went away, he was still there on the ground with the attendants and the surgeons; not a soul would he leave uncared for if anything could be done: he either saw to it himself or sent for the proper aid.

So for that night they rested. But with daybreak Cyrus sent out a herald and summoned a gathering of all the officers and the whole Cadousian army, and spoke as follows:

”My friends and allies, what has happened is only natural; for it is human nature to err, and I cannot find it astonishing. Still

*vocabulary***ἄημι** blow**ἄλλοσε** elsewhere ~alien**ἀνακοινῶ** communicate, impart**ἀπαρτάω** hang; detach**ἀπολαύω** have use, have a benefit**ἀριστάω** eat lunch ~aristocrat**ἀσθενής** weak**ἀσφάλεια** safeguard**δείκνυμι** (ὄ) show, point out**διασπάω** tear apart ~spatula**διάφορος** different; difference;
disagreeing; balance, bill**ἐλαχὺς** small; comp.: less ~light**ἐνταῦθα** there, here**ἐξαπατάω** trick, cheat ~apatosaurus**ἐξαρτάω** hang on, make dependent**ἐπειδάν** when, after**θάπτω** bury ~epitaph**ἰκάνω** (ᾱ) reach, arrive at**ἰσχύς** -ος (f) strength; body of troops**κοινῶ** make common; cooperate**κρείσσω** more powerful; better**μῆποτε** absolutely never**μόριον** piece, member; part of speech**οἶχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone**ὅπου** where**πότε** when?**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war,
campaign ~strategy**τελευτάω** bring about, finish ~apostle**ὑπομένω** stay behind, await ~remain**χωρίς** separately; except, other than
~heir

ἄξιοί γε μέντοι ἐσμέν τοῦ γεγενημένου πράγματος τούτου
 ἀπολαῦσαί τι ἀγαθόν, τὸ μαθεῖν μήποτε διασπᾶν ἀπὸ τοῦ
 ὅλου δύναμιν ἀσθενεστέραν τῆς τῶν πολεμίων δυνάμεως.
 καὶ οὐ τοῦτο, ἔφη, λέγω ὥς οὐ δεῖ ποτε καὶ ἐλάττονι ἔτι
 μορίῳ ἶέναι, ὅπου ἂν δέῃ, ἣ νῦν ὁ Καδούσιος ὥχεται· ἀλλ'
 ἐάν τις κοινούμενος ὀρμᾶται τῷ ἱκανῷ βοηθῆσαι, ἔστι
 μὲν ἀπαρτηθῆναι, ἔστι δὲ τῷ ὑπομένοντι ἐξαπατήσαντι
 τοὺς πολεμίους ἄλλοσε τρέψαι ἀπὸ τῶν ἐξεληλυθόντων,
 ἔστι δὲ ἄλλα παρέχοντα πράγματα τοῖς πολεμίους τοῖς
 φίλοις ἀσφάλειαν παρέχειν· καὶ οὕτω μὲν οὐδ' ὁ χωρὶς ὢν
 ἀπέσται, ἀλλ' ἐξαρτήσεται τῆς ἰσχύος· ὁ δὲ ἀπεληλυθὼς
 μὴ ἀνακουνωσάμενος, ὅπου ἂν ᾗ, οὐδὲν διάφορον πάσχει ἢ
 εἰ μόνος ἐστρατεύετο. ἀλλ' ἀντὶ μὲν τούτου, ἔφη, ἐὰν θεὸς
 θέλῃ, ἀμυνόμεθα τοὺς πολεμίους οὐκ εἰς μακράν. ἀλλ'
 ἐπειδὰν τάχιστα ἀριστήσητε, ἄξω ὑμᾶς ἔνθα τὸ πρᾶγμα
 ἐγένετο· καὶ ἅμα μὲν θάψομεν τοὺς τελευτήσαντας, ἅμα δὲ
 δείξομεν τοῖς πολεμίους ἔνθα κρατῆσαι νομίζουσιν ἐνταῦθα
 ἄλλους αὐτῶν κρείττους, ἣν θεὸς θέλῃ· ἐὰν

|worthy, εἰ μέντοι ἐσμέν τοῦ γεγενημένου πράγματος τούτου

|have use, have εἰ ἀγαθόν, τὸ |learn |absolutely|tear apart ἵπὸ τοῦ
|a benefit |never

ὅλου δύναμιν |weak τῆς τῶν πολεμίων δυνάμεως.

καὶ οὐ τοῦτο, ἔφη, λέγω ὥς οὐ δεῖ ποτε καὶ |small ἔτι

|piece, member;|where ἢν δέη, ἢ νῦν ὁ Καδούσιος |come, go ἰλλ'
|part of speech

εἰάν τις |make common; ῥμᾶται τῷ ἱκανῷ |rescue , ἔστι
|cooperate

μὲν ἀπαρτηθῆναι, ἔστι δὲ τῷ |stay behind;|trick, cheat
|await

τοὺς πολεμίους |elsewhere|divert ἀπὸ τῶν ἐξεληλυθόντων,

ἔστι δὲ ἄλλα παρέχοντα πράγματα τοῖς πολεμίους τοῖς

φίλοις |safeguard παρέχειν· καὶ οὕτω μὲν οὐδ' ὁ |separately; except,
|other than

ἀπέσται, ἀλλ' |hang on, make τῆς |strength; body ἵπεληλυθὼς
|dependent |of troops

μὴ |communicate, impart , |where ἢν ἦ, οὐδὲν διάφορον πάσχει ἢ

εἰ μόνος |make an expedition, ἂντι μὲν τούτου, ἔφη, εἰάν θεὸς
|war, campaign

θέλη, |ward off; defend; πολεμίους οὐκ εἰς μακράν. ἀλλ'
|(mp) have revenge

|when, τάχιστα |eat lunch , ἄξω ὑμᾶς ἔνθα τὸ πρᾶγμα
|after

ἐγένετο· καὶ ἅμα μὲν |bury τοὺς |bring about, finish, ἅμα δὲ

|show τοῖς πολεμίους ἔνθα κρατῆσαι νομίζουσιν |there, here

ἄλλους αὐτῶν κρείττους, ἣν θεὸς θέλη· εἰάν

we may gain at least one advantage from what has occurred, if we learn that we must never cut off from our main body a detachment weaker than the force of the enemy. I do not say that one is never to march anywhere, if necessary, with an even smaller fraction than the Cadousians had; but, before doing so you must communicate with some one able to bring up reinforcements, and then, though you may be trapped yourself, it is at least probable that your friends behind you may foil the foilers, and divert them from your own party: there are fifty ways in which one can embarrass the enemy and save one's friends. Thus separation need not mean isolation, and union with the main force may still be kept, whereas if you sally forth without telling your plan, you are no better off than if you were alone in the field. However, God willing, we shall take our revenge for this ere long; indeed, as soon as you have breakfasted, I will lead you out to the scene of yesterday's skirmish, and there we will bury those who fell, and show our enemies that the very field where they thought themselves victorious is held by those who are stronger than they: they shall never look again with joy upon the spot where they slew our comrades. Or else, if they

*vocabulary***ἀνιάω** (ĩ) vex**ἀριστάω** eat lunch ~aristocrat**δηιώ** be inimical, hurt, tear, kill**ἐννοέω** consider**ἐξάγω** lead out ~demagogue**ἐπειδάν** when, after**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable**εὐφραίνω** gladden ~frenzy**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism**θάπτω** bury ~epitaph**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider

~theater

καίω burn ~caustic**κατακαίνω** kill**κώμη** village**πλησίος** near, neighboring**προσδέω** bind also; need also**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military unit**ὕπάγω** lead under the yoke, lead away from ~demagogue**χωρίον** area; downwards

δὲ μὴ ἀντεπεξίωσι, καύσομεν αὐτῶν τὰς κώμας καὶ
 δηώσομεν τὴν χώραν, ἵνα μὴ ἂ ἡμᾶς ἐποίησαν ὀρώντες
 εὐφραίνωνται, ἀλλὰ τὰ ἑαυτῶν κακὰ θεώμενοι ἀνιῶνται,
 καὶ ὅπως γε μηδὲ τὸ χωρίον ἡδέως ὀρώσιν ἔνθα κατέκανον
 ἡμῶν τοὺς συμμάχους. οἱ μὲν οὖν ἄλλοι, ἔφη, ἀριστᾶτε
 ἰόντες· ὑμεῖς δέ, ὦ Καδούσιοι, πρῶτον μὲν ἀπελθόντες
 ἄρχοντα ὑμῶν αὐτῶν ἔλεσθε ἥπερ ὑμῖν νόμος, ὅστις
 ὑμῶν ἐπιμελήσεται σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς καὶ σὺν ἡμῖν, ἃν τι
 προσδέησθε· ἐπειδὰν δὲ ἔλῃσθε, πέμψατε πρὸς ἐμὲ τὸν
 αἰρεθέντα καὶ ἀριστήσατε. οἱ μὲν δὴ ταῦτ' ἔπραξαν· ὁ
 δὲ Κῦρος ἐπεὶ ἐξήγαγε τὸ στράτευμα, κατέστησεν εἰς
 τάξιν τὸν ἡρημένον ὑπὸ τῶν Καδουσίων καὶ ἐκέλευσε
 πλησίον αὐτοῦ ἄγειν τὴν τάξιν, ὅπως, ἔφη, ἂν δυνώμεθα,
 ἀναθαρρύνωμεν τοὺς ἄνδρας. οὕτω δὲ ἐπορεύοντο· καὶ
 ἐλθόντες ἔθαπτον μὲν τοὺς Καδουσίους, ἐδήουν δὲ τὴν
 χώραν. ποιήσαντες δὲ ταῦτα ἀπῆλθον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐκ
 τῆς πολεμίας ἔχοντες πάλιν εἰς τὴν Γαδάτα.

Ἐννοήσας δὲ ὅτι οἱ πρὸς αὐτὸν ἀφεστηκότες ὄντες

δὲ μὴ ἀντεπεξίωσι, |burn αὐτῶν τὰς |village καὶ

|δηιώ?: harm, |place , ἵνα μὴ ἂ ἡμᾶς ἐποίησαν ὀρώντες
|kill; or δηιώ?:
|harm, kill
|gladden , ἀλλὰ τὰ ἐαυτῶν κακὰ θεώμενοι |vex ,

καὶ ὅπως γε |and not; area; |sweet ὀρώσιν ἔνθα |kill
|not even
|down-

ἡμῶν τοὺς συμμάχους. οἱ μὲν οὖν ἄλλοι, ἔφη, |eat lunch

ιόντες· ὑμεῖς δέ, ὦ Καδούσιοι, πρῶτον μὲν ἀπελθόντες

ἄρχοντα ὑμῶν αὐτῶν ἔλεσθε ἥπερ ὑμῖν νόμος, ὅστις

ὑμῶν |take care of, σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς καὶ σὺν ἡμῖν, ἂν τι
|oversee

προσδέσθε· |when, δὲ ἔλησθε, πέμψατε πρὸς ἐμὲ τὸν
|after

αἰρεθέντα καὶ |eat lunch . οἱ μὲν δὴ ταῦτ' ἔπραξαν· ὁ

δὲ Κύρος ἐπεὶ |lead out τὸ |army , |set down, land; ὧς
|become, be

τάξιν τὸν ἡρημένον ὑπὸ τῶν Καδουσίων καὶ ἐκέλευσε

|near αὐτοῦ ἄγειν τὴν τάξιν, ὅπως, ἔφη, ἂν δυνώμεθα,

ἀναθαρρύνωμεν τοὺς ἄνδρας. οὕτω δὲ ἐπορεύοντο· καὶ

ἐλθόντες |bury μὲν τοὺς Καδουσίους, |δηιώ?: ὧς harm, kill; or
|δηιώ?: harm, kill

|place . ποιήσαντες δὲ ταῦτα ἀπῆλθον τὰ |fit, suitable ἐκ

τῆς πολεμίας ἔχοντες πάλιν εἰς τὴν Γαδάτα.

|consider δὲ ὅτι οἱ πρὸς αὐτὸν |stand apart; ex- ὄντες
|act payment

refuse to come out and meet us, we will burn their villages and harry all their land, so that in lieu of rejoicing at the sight of what they did to us, they shall gnash their teeth at the spectacle of their own disasters. Go now," said he, "the rest of you, and take your breakfast forthwith, but let the Cadousians first elect a leader in accordance with their own laws, and one who will guide them well and wisely, by the grace of God, and with our human help, if they should need it. And when you have chosen your leader, and had your breakfast, send him hither to me."

So they did as Cyrus bade them, and when he led the army out, he stationed their new general close to his own person, and told him to keep his detachment there, "So that you and I," said he, "may rekindle the courage in their souls."

In this order they marched out, and thus they buried the Cadousian dead and ravaged the country. Which done, they went back to the province of Gadatas, laden with supplies taken from the foe.

Now Cyrus felt that those who had come over to his side and who dwelt in the neighbourhood

*vocabulary***ἀνταίρω** raise against**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous**εἴτε** if, whenever; either/or**ἐκάτερος** each of two**ἐπικεράννυμι** (ῥ) mix ~crater**ἐπικρατέω** rule over**ἐπικρατής** overpoweringly, strongly

~democracy

ἐπιστέλλω send to, order**ἐργάτης** -ου (ᾱ, m, 1) worker**ἐτοιμός** ready; fulfilled**καίτοι** and yet; and in fact; although**καρπώω** bear fruit; harvest it**κῆρυξ** -κος (m) henchman, functionary**κομιδή** care, tending, providing for**κωλύω** (ῥ) hinder, prevent**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle

~hoplite

πλησίος near, neighboring**συγχωρέω** accede, concede

πλησίον Βαβυλῶνος κακῶς πείσονται, ἂν μὴ αὐτὸς αἰεὶ
 παρῇ, οὕτως ὅσους τε τῶν πολεμίων ἀφίει, τούτους
 ἐκέλευε λέγειν τῷ Ἀσσυρίῳ, καὶ αὐτὸς κήρυκα ἔπεμψε
 πρὸς αὐτὸν ταῦτὰ λέγοντα, ὅτι ἔτοιμος εἶη τοὺς
 ἐργαζομένους τὴν γῆν εἰάν καὶ μὴ ἀδικεῖν, εἰ καὶ
 ἐκεῖνος βούλοιτο εἰάν ἐργάζεσθαι τοὺς τῶν πρὸς αὐτὸν
 ἀφεστηκότων ἐργάτας. καίτοι, ἔφη, σὺ μὲν ἂν καὶ δύνῃ
 κωλύειν, ὀλίγους τινὰς κωλύσεις· ὀλίγη γάρ ἐστι χώρα ἡ
 τῶν πρὸς ἐμὲ ἀφεστηκότων· ἐγὼ δὲ πολλὴν ἂν σοι χώραν
 ἐώην ἐνεργὸν εἶναι. εἰς δὲ τὴν τοῦ καρποῦ κομιδὴν, εἰάν
 μὲν πόλεμος ᾗ, ὁ ἐπικρατῶν οἶμαι καρπώσεται· εἰάν δὲ
 εἰρήνη, δηλόν, ἔφη, ὅτι σύ. εἰάν μέντοι τις ἢ τῶν ἐμῶν
 ὅπλα ἀνταίρηται σοὶ ἢ τῶν σῶν ἐμοί, τούτους, ἔφη, ὥς
 ἂν δυνώμεθα ἐκάτεροι ἀμυνόμεθα. ταῦτα ἐπιστείλας τῷ
 κήρυκι ἔπεμψεν αὐτόν. οἱ δὲ Ἀσσύριοι ὥς ἤκουσαν ταῦτα,
 πάντα ἐποίουν πείθοντες τὸν βασιλέα συγχωρῆσαι ταῦτα
 καὶ ὅτι μικρότατον τοῦ πολέμου λιπεῖν. καὶ ὁ Ἀσσύριος
 μέντοι εἴτε ὑπὸ τῶν ὁμοφύλων πεισθεὶς εἴτε καὶ αὐτὸς

|near Βαβυλῶνος κακῶς πείσονται, ἂν μὴ αὐτὸς αἰεὶ
 παρῇ, οὕτως ὅσους τε τῶν πολεμίων ἀφίει, τούτους
 ἐκέλευε λέγειν τῷ Ἀσσυρίῳ, καὶ αὐτὸς |henchman, ...εμψε
 |functionary
 πρὸς αὐτὸν ταῦτα λέγοντα, ὅτι ἔτοιμος εἴη τοὺς
 |work τὴν γῆν ἔαν καὶ μὴ ἀδικεῖν, εἰ καὶ
 ἐκεῖνος βούλοιτο ἔαν |work τοὺς τῶν πρὸς αὐτὸν
 |stand apart; exact |worker - |and yet; ἄνδ in ὃ μὲν ἂν καὶ δύνῃ
 |payment |fact; although
 |hinder, , ὀλίγους τινὰς κωλύσεις· ὀλίγη γάρ ἐστι |place ἡ
 |prevent
 τῶν πρὸς ἐμέ |stand apart; ex- ἐγὼ δὲ πολλὴν ἂν σοι |place
 |act payment
 ἐώρην ἐνεργὸν εἶναι. εἰς δὲ τὴν τοῦ |wrist; |care, , ἔαν
 |fruit, |tending
 μὲν πόλεμος ἦ, ὁ ἐπικρατῶν οἶμαι |grain
 |bear fruit; har- ἔαν δὲ
 |vest it
 |peace , |visible, , , ὅτι σύ. ἔαν |however is ἡ τῶν ἐμῶν
 |conspicuous
 |tool |raise against σοὶ ἡ τῶν σῶν ἐμοί, τούτους, ἔφη, ὥς
 ἂν δυνώμεθα |each of two |ward off; defend; -(mp)|send to, order. ᾧ
 |have revenge
 |henchman, , μψεν αὐτόν. οἱ δὲ Ἀσσύριοι ὥς ἤκουσαν ταῦτα,
 |functionary
 πάντα ἐποιοῦν πείθοντες τὸν βασιλέα |accede, ταῦτα
 |concede
 καὶ ὅτι |small τοῦ πολέμου λιπεῖν. καὶ ὁ Ἀσσύριος
 |how- |if, whenever; , ὁμοφύλων πεισθεὶς |if, whenever; ὅς
 |ever |either/or |either/or

of Babylon would be sure to suffer unless he were constantly there himself, and so he bade all the prisoners he set free take a message to the king, and he himself despatched a herald to say that he would leave all the tillers of the soil unmolested and unhurt if the Assyrian would let those who had come over to him continue their work in peace. "And remember," he added, "that even if you try to hinder my friends, it is only a few whom you could stop, whereas there is a vast territory of yours that I could allow to be cultivated. As for the crops," he added, "if we have war, it will be the conqueror, I make no doubt, who will reap them, but if we have peace, it will be you. If, however, any of my people take up arms against you, or any of yours against me, we must, of course, each of us, defend ourselves as best we can."

With this message Cyrus despatched the herald, and when the Assyrians heard it, they urged the king to accept the proposal, and so limit the war as much as possible. And he, whether influenced by his own people or because he desired it himself, consented

vocabulary

ἄνευ away from; not having; not
needing ~Sp. sin

ἀφαιρέω take away ~heresy

διαπράσσω travel over, accomplish
~practice

ἐπιβουλή a plot, scheme ~volunteer

ἐπικράτεια domain, realm; control

ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable

ἐργάτης -ου (ἄ, m, 1) worker

ἡδύς sweet, pleasant ~hedonism

κατατίθηναι put down, deposit, lay
aside ~thesis

κοῦφος light, nimble

κτῆνος -ους (n, 3) herd animal

λεία booty

λεῖος smooth

νομᾶς -δος (m, 3) roaming, grazing

νομή pasture; distribution

ὁπόθεν whence

παντοῖος all kinds of

πλησιάζω bring/be near; have sex

στρατεία expedition, campaign

συνθήκη combination; agreement

τοιόσδε such

τροφή food, upkeep ~atrophy

οὕτω βουληθεὶς συνήνεσε ταῦτα· καὶ ἐγένοντο συνθήκαι τοῖς μὲν ἐργαζομένοις εἰρήνην εἶναι, τοῖς δ' ὀπλοφόροις πόλεμον. ταῦτα μὲν δὴ διεπέπρακτο περὶ τῶν ἐργατῶν ὁ Κῦρος· τὰς μέντοι νομὰς τῶν κτηνῶν τοὺς μὲν ἑαυτοῦ φίλους ἐκέλευσε καταθέσθαι, εἰ βούλονται, ἐν τῇ ἑαυτῶν ἐπικρατείᾳ· τὴν δὲ τῶν πολεμίων λείαν ἦγον ὀπόθεν δύναιντο, ὅπως εἴη ἡ στρατεία ἡδίων τοῖς συμμάχοις. οἱ μὲν γὰρ κίνδυνοι οἱ αὐτοὶ καὶ ἄνευ τοῦ λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἡ δ' ἐκ τῶν πολεμίων τροφή κουφοτέρην τὴν στρατείαν ἐδόκει παρέχειν.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ παρεσκευάζετο ἤδη ὁ Κῦρος ὡς ἀπιών, παρῆν ὁ Γαδάτας ἄλλα τε δῶρα πολλὰ καὶ παντοῖα φέρων καὶ ἄγων ὡς ἂν ἐξ οἴκου μεγάλου, καὶ ἵππους δὲ ἦγε πολλοὺς ἀφελόμενος τῶν ἑαυτοῦ ἱππέων οἷς ἠπιστήκει διὰ τὴν ἐπιβουλήν. ὡς δ' ἐπλησίασεν, ἔλεξε τοιάδε. ὦ Κῦρε, νῦν μὲν σοι ἐγὼ ταῦτα δίδωμι ἐν τῷ παρόντι, καὶ χρῶ αὐτοῖς, ἐὰν δέη τι· νόμιζε δ', ἔφη, καὶ τὰλλα πάντα τὰμὰ σὰ εἶναι. οὔτε γὰρ ἔστιν οὔτ' ἔσται ποτὲ ὅτῳ ἐγὼ ἀπ'

οὕτω βουλευθεὶς συνήνεσε ταῦτα· καὶ ἐγένοντο |combination;
 |agreement
 τοῖς μὲν |work |peace εἶναι, τοῖς δ' ὅπλοφόροις
 πόλεμον. ταῦτα μὲν δὴ |travel over, ac- περὶ τῶν |worker
 |comply
 ὁ Κῦρος· τὰς |however ομὰς τῶν |herd animal `ς μὲν ἑαυτοῦ
 φίλους ἐκέλευσε |put down , εἰ βούλονται, ἐν τῇ ἑαυτῶν
 |domain, τὴν δὲ τῶν πολεμίων λείαν ἦγον |whence
 |realm; con-
 |trol
 οὐναιτο, ὅπως εἴη ἡ |expedition, |sweet τοῖς συμμάχοις.
 |campaign
 οἱ μὲν γὰρ |danger οἱ αὐτοὶ καὶ |away from; `not hav- |in τὰ
 |ing; not needing
 |fit, suitable , ἡ δ' ἐκ τῶν πολεμίων τροφή |light, nimble τὴν
 |expedition, ἐδόκει |furnish
 |campaign
 Ἐπεὶ δὲ |prepare, render ἤδη ὁ Κῦρος ὥς |be absent, go- ἦν
 |away, return
 ὁ Γαδάτας ἄλλα τε |gift πολλὰ καὶ |all kinds of ἔρων καὶ
 ἄγων ὥς ἂν ἐξ οἴκου μεγάλου, καὶ ἵππους δὲ ἦγε πολλοὺς
 |take away τῶν ἑαυτοῦ |rider οἷς ἠπιστῆκει διὰ τὴν
 |a plot, scheme `ς δ' |bring/be near; ἔλεξε |such . Ὡ Κῦρε, νῦν
 |have sex
 μὲν σοι ἐγὼ ταῦτα δίδωμι ἐν τῷ παρόντι, καὶ χρῶ αὐτοῖς,
 ἐὰν δέη τι· |consider` , ἕως- καὶ τὰλλα πάντα τὰμὰ σὰ εἶναι.
 |tomary; believe
 οὔτε γὰρ ἔστιν οὔτ' ἔσται ποτὲ ὅτω ἐγὼ ἀπ'

to the terms. So an agreement was drawn up, proclaiming peace to the tillers of the soil and war to all who carried arms.

Thus Cyrus arranged matters for the husbandmen, and he asked his own supporters among the drovers to bring their herds, if they liked, into his dominions and leave them there, while he treated the enemy's cattle as booty wherever he could, so that his allies found attraction in the campaign. For the risk was no greater if they took what they needed, while the knowledge that they were living at the enemy's expense certainly seemed to lighten the labour of the war.

When the time came for Cyrus to go back, and the final preparations were being made, Gادات brought him gifts of every kind, the produce of a vast estate, and among the cattle a drove of horses, taken from cavalry of his own, whom he distrusted owing to the late conspiracy. And when he brought them he said, "Cyrus, this day I give you these for your own, and I would pray you to make such use of them as you think best, but I would have you remember that all else which I call mine is yours as well. For there is no son of mine, nor can there ever be, sprung from my own loins,

*vocabulary***ἄδικος** unfair; obstinate, bad**αἰσχρός** shameful**αἰσχύνω** (ὁ) spoil, disgrace, disfigure, mar**ἀντιδωρέομαι** give in return, instead of**ἀπάγω** lead away, back ~demagogue**ἄπιος** distant**ἀποσβέννυμι** (ὁ) extinguish**ἐκπληρόω** fill, fulfill**ἐπιθυμέω** (ὁ) wish, covet**ἡσάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (active) defeat**ἡττάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (active) defeat**ἵππικός** of horses ~hippo**καταλείπω** leave behind, abandon

~eclipse

μυρίος (ὁ) 10,000 ~myriad**οἰκτείρω** pity**ὅμνυμι** (ὁ) swear**πάθος** -ους (n, 3) an experience, passion, condition**πάλαι** long ago ~paleo**πάλη** wrestling ~Pallas**πάλλω** shake, brandish ~Pallas**Πέρσης** Persian**τελευτάω** bring about, finish ~apostle**τύχη** fortune, act of a god**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics**ώφελέω** help, be useful

ἐμοῦ φύντι καταλείψω τὸν ἐμὸν οἶκον· ἀλλ' ἀνάγκη, ἔφη, σὺν ἐμοὶ τελευτῶντι πᾶν ἀποσβῆναι τὸ ἡμέτερον γένος καὶ ὄνομα. καὶ ταῦτα, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, ὁμνυμί σοι θεούς, οἳ καὶ ὀρώσι πάντα καὶ ἀκούουσι πάντα, οὔτε ἄδικον οὔτε αἰσχρὸν οὐδὲν οὔτε εἰπὼν οὔτε ποιήσας ἔπαθον. καὶ ἅμα ταῦτα λέγων κατεδάκρυσε τὴν ἑαυτοῦ τύχην καὶ οὐκέτι ἐδυνήθη πλείω εἰπεῖν.

Καὶ ὁ Κῦρος ἀκούσας τοῦ μὲν πάθους ὥκτιρεν αὐτόν, ἔλεξε δὲ ὧδε. Ἀλλὰ τοὺς μὲν ἵππους δέχομαι, ἔφη· σέ τε γὰρ ὠφελήσω εὐνουστέροις δούς αὐτοὺς ἢ οἳ νῦν σοι εἶχον, ὥς ἔοικεν, ἐγὼ τε οὐδὲν δὴ πάλαι ἐπιθυμῶ, τὸ Περσῶν ἱππικὸν θᾶττον ἐκπληρώσω εἰς τοὺς μυρίους ἱππέας· τὰ δ' ἄλλα χρήματα σὺ ἀπαγαγὼν φύλαττε, ἔστ' ἂν ἐμὲ ἴδῃς ἔχοντα ὥστε σοῦ μὴ ἡττᾶσθαι ἀντιδωρούμενον· εἰ δὲ πλείω μοι δούς ἀπίοις ἢ λαμβάνοις παρ' ἐμοῦ, μὰ τοὺς θεοὺς οὐκ οἶδ' ὅπως ἂν δυναίμην μὴ αἰσχύνεσθαι. πρὸς ταῦτα ὁ Γαδάτας εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μέν, ἔφη, πιστεύω σοι· ὁρῶ γάρ σου τὸν τρόπον· φυλάττειν μέντοι

ἐμοῦ |pro- |leave behind, γὸν ἐμὸν οἶκον· ἀλλ' |necessity, ἔφη,
 |duce, |abandon
 σὺν ἐμῷ |beget; |bring about, πᾶν |extinguish τὸ |our, my |race, kind, gener-
 |clasp |finish |spring
 καὶ ὄνομα. καὶ ταῦτα, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, |swear σοι θεοὺς, οἱ
 καὶ ὀρώσι πάντα καὶ ἀκούουσι πάντα, οὔτε |unfair; ob- ε
 |shameful οὐδὲν οὔτε εἰπὼν οὔτε ποιήσας ἔπαθον. καὶ ἅμα
 ταῦτα λέγων κατεδάκρυσεν τὴν ἑαυτοῦ |fortune, . . act |no more
 |of a god
 ἐδυνήθη πλείω εἰπεῖν.

Καὶ ὁ Κῦρος ἀκούσας τοῦ μὲν |an experience, pas- αὐτόν,
 |sion, condition
 ἔλεξε δὲ |thus Ἀλλὰ τοὺς μὲν ἵππους |accept, re- ἔφη· σέ
 |ceive, await
 τε γὰρ |help, be useful ουστέροις δούς αὐτοὺς ἢ οἱ νῦν σοι
 εἶχον, ὡς |seem, . 'seem ε οὐ δὴ πάλαι |wish, , τὸ Περσῶν
 |likely, beseem |covet
 |of horses θᾶπτον |fill, fulfill εἰς τοὺς μυρίους |rider τὰ
 δ' ἄλλα |possession, . ' |lead away; |guard; , ἔστ' ἂν ἐμέ
 |money, business |back |watch
 ἰδῆς ἔχοντα ὥστε σοῦ μὴ ἡττᾶσθαι |give in return, in- εἰ
 |stead of
 δὲ πλείω μοι δούς |distant ἢ λαμβάνους παρ' ἐμοῦ, μὰ τοὺς
 θεοὺς οὐκ οἶδ' ὅπως ἂν δυναίμην μὴ |spoil, disgrace πρὸς
 ταῦτα ὁ Γαδάτας εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν, ἔφη, πιστεύω
 σοι· ὀρῶ γάρ σου τὸν τρόπον· |guard; |however
 |watch

to whom I may leave my wealth: when I die myself, my house must perish with me, my family and my name. And I must suffer this, Cyrus, I swear to you by the great gods above us, who see all things and hear all things, though never by word or deed did I commit injustice or foulness of any kind.”

But here the words died on his lips; he burst into tears over his sorrows, and could say no more. Cyrus was touched with pity at his suffering and said to him:

”Let me accept the horses, for in that I can help you, if I set loyal riders on them, men of a better mind, methinks, than those who had them before, and I myself can satisfy a wish that has long been mine, to bring my Persian cavalry up to ten thousand men. But take back, I pray you, all these other riches, and guard them safely against the time when you may find me able to vie with you in gifts. If I left you now so hugely in your debt, heaven help me if I could hold up my head again for very shame.”

There to Gadatas made answer, ”In all things I trust you, and will trust you, for I see your heart. But consider whether I am competent

*vocabulary***ἀπολαύω** have use, have a benefit**ἀποτίνω** (i) pay back**ἄρα** interrogative pcl**ἀσφαλής** safe, easy, steady, careful**βιόω** live; (mp) make a living ~biology**δεῦρο** here, come here!**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous**δήτα** emphatic δῆ**διάγω** lead through; pass a time

~demagogue

διατελέω accomplish; keep doing

~apostle

ἐγγύς near**ἐκποδών** out of the way**ἐννοέω** consider**ἐνοχλέω** be annoyed**ἐπειδάν** when, after**ἐπιβουλεύω** plot, plan, harm

~volunteer

ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable**ἡώς ἡῶθι** (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene**θαρρέω** be of good heart**θαρσέω** be of good heart**θάρσος** boldness, over-boldness**κρείσσων** more powerful; better**κτησίς** -ος (f) chattels**κυέω** be pregnant ~accumulate**λυπηρός** (ō) painful, causing pain, sad**μισέω** (i) hate, wish to prevent

~misogyny

μῖσος -εος (n, 3) hate**οἴκαδε** homeward ~economics**ὀργίζω** anger, provoke, annoy**πλησίος** near, neighboring**σκοπᾶω** watch, observe**σκοπέω** behold, consider**τάχα** quickly, soon; perhaps

~tachometer

τάχος -ους (n, 3) speed ~tachometer**τοιγάρ** therefore**ὕβριζω** insult, treat outrageously**ὕπάγω** lead under the yoke, lead away from ~demagogue**ὕποπτεύω** guess, observe, be suspicious of**ώφελέω** help, be useful

ὄρα εἰ ἐπιτήδειός εἰμι. ἕως μὲν γὰρ φίλοι ἦμεν τῷ
 Ἀσσυρίῳ, καλλίστη ἐδόκει εἶναι ἡ τοῦ ἐμοῦ πατρὸς
 κτῆσις· τῆς γὰρ μεγίστης πόλεως Βαβυλῶνος ἐγγὺς οὖσα
 ὅσα μὲν ὠφελείσθαι ἔστιν ἀπὸ μεγάλης πόλεως, ταῦτα
 ἀπελαύνομεν, ὅσα δὲ ἐνοχλείσθαι, οὔκαδε δεῦρ' ἀπιόντες
 τούτων ἐκποδὼν ἦμεν· νῦν δ' ἐπεὶ ἐχθροὶ ἐσμεν, δῆλον
 ὅτι ἐπειδὴν σὺ ἀπέλθης, καὶ αὐτοὶ ἐπιβουλευσόμεθα καὶ
 ὁ οἶκος ὅλος, καὶ οἶμαι λυπηρῶς βιωσόμεθα ὅλως τοὺς
 ἐχθροὺς καὶ πλησίον ἔχοντες καὶ κρείττους ἡμῶν αὐτῶν
 ὁρῶντες. τάχ' οὖν εἴποι τις ἄν· καὶ τί δῆτα οὐχ οὕτως
 ἐνενοοῦ πρὶν ἀποστῆναι; ὅτι, ὦ Κῦρε, ἡ ψυχὴ μου
 διὰ τὸ ὑβρίσθαι καὶ ὀργίζεσθαι οὐ τὸ ἀσφαλέστατον
 σκοποῦσα διήγεν, ἀλλ' αἰεὶ τοῦτο κυοῦσ', ἅρά ποτ' ἔσται
 ἀποτείσασθαι τὸν καὶ θεοῖς ἐχθρὸν καὶ ἀνθρώποις, ὃς
 διατελεῖ μισῶν, οὐκ ἦν τίς τι αὐτὸν ἀδικῇ, ἀλλ' ἐάν
 τινα ὑποπτεύσῃ βελτίονα αὐτοῦ εἶναι. τοιγαροῦν οἶμαι
 αὐτὸς πονηρὸς ὢν πᾶσι πονηροτέροις αὐτοῦ συμμάχοις
 χρήσεται. ἐὰν δέ τις ἄρα καὶ βελτίων αὐτοῦ φανῇ, θάρρει,

ὅρα εἰ |fit, suitable εἰμι. ἕως μὲν γὰρ φίλοι ἦμεν τῷ
 Ἀσσυρίῳ, καλλίστη ἐδόκει εἶναι ἢ τοῦ ἐμοῦ πατρὸς
 |chattels τῆς γὰρ μεγίστης πόλεως Βαβυλῶνος |near οὕσα
 ὅσα μὲν |help, be useful ᾗτιν ἀπὸ μεγάλης πόλεως, ταῦτα
 |have use, have, ὅσα δὲ |be annoyed , |home- |here, |be absent, go
 |a benefit |ward |come |away, return
 τούτων |out of the way... νῦν δ' ἐπεὶ ἐχθροὶ ἐσμέν, |visible,
 |here! |conspicuous
 ὅτι |when, σὺ ἀπέλθης, καὶ αὐτοὶ |plot, plan, harm καὶ
 |after
 ὁ οἶκος ὅλος, καὶ οἶμαι |painful, |live; (mp) ὥλως τοὺς
 |causing |make a living
 ἐχθροὺς καὶ |near ἔχοντες καὶ κρείττους ἡμῶν αὐτῶν
 |pain, sad
 ὁρῶντες. τάχ' οὖν εἴποι τις ἄν' καὶ τί |emphatic δὴ- ὕτως
 |consider πρὶν |stand apart; ὅτι, ὦ Κῦρε, ἡ ψυχὴ μου
 |exact payment
 διὰ τὸ |insult καὶ |anger, pro- οὐ τὸ |safe, easy, steady,
 |voke, annoy |careful
 σκοποῦσα |lead through; αἰεὶ τοῦτο |be preg-|interrogative pcl
 |pass a time |nant
 |pay back τὸν καὶ θεοῖς ἐχθρὸν καὶ ἀνθρώποις, ὃς
 διατελεῖ μισῶν, οὐκ ἦν τίς τι αὐτὸν ἀδικῇ, ἀλλ' ἐάν
 τινα |guess, observe, λτίονα αὐτοῦ εἶναι. τοιγαροῦν οἶμαι
 |be suspicious of
 αὐτὸς |oppressed; knav- ἴσι |oppressed; knav- λύτου συμμάχοις
 |ish; useless |ish; useless
 χρήσεται. ἐὰν δέ τις ἄρα καὶ βελτίων αὐτοῦ φανῇ, θάρρει,

to guard all this myself. While I was at peace with the king, the inheritance I had from my father was, it may be, the fairest in all the land: it was near that mighty Babylon, and all the good things that can be gathered from a great city fell into our laps, and yet from all the trouble of it, the noise and the bustle, we could be free at once by turning our backs and coming home here. But now that we are at war, the moment you have left us we are sure to be attacked, ourselves and all our wealth, and methinks we shall have a sorry life of it, our enemies at our elbow and far stronger than ourselves. I seem to hear some one say, why did you not think of this before you revolted? But I answer, Cyrus, because the soul within me was stung beyond endurance by my wrongs; I could not sit and ponder the safest course, I was always brooding over one idea, always in travail of one dream, praying for the day of vengeance on the miscreant, the enemy of God and man, whose hatred never rested, once aroused, once he suspected a man, not of doing wrong, but of being better than himself. And because he is a villain, he will always find, I know, worse villains than himself to aid him, but if one day a nobler rival should appear — have no concern, Cyrus,

vocabulary

ἀναπνέω catch one's breath ~apnea
ἀνιάω (ἱ) vex
ἄρα interrogative pcl
ἄρή bane, harm; prayer
ἄρῃν ἄρονός (m, 3) lamb, sheep; wool
ἄρης war, warlike spirit
ἀρκέω satisfy; ward off, defend; suffice
ἀσφαλής safe, easy, steady, careful
ἐξιμι go forth; is possible ~ion
ἐξίημι send forth, allow forth ~jet
ἐπέχω hold, cover; offer; assail
ἐπιμέλεια attention; assigned task
ἐχυρός secure; persuasive
ἡδύς sweet, pleasant ~hedonism
ἡώς ἡῶθι (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene
κρείσσων more powerful; better
μηχανάομαι build, contrive

~mechanism

ναί yea
πειράζω test a person ~pierce
σαυτοῦ yourself
στρατεύω make an expedition, war, campaign ~strategy
σύνειμι be with; have sex ~ion
συσκευάζω pack up
σῶς safe, alive
ὑπάγω lead under the yoke, lead away from ~demagogue
φθάζω do first, outstrip
φθάνω (ᾱ) do first, outstrip
φυλακή guard, prison, watch
 ~phylactery
φύλαξ -χος (m) guard; sentry
 ~phylactery
χρήσιμος useful

ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, οὐδέν σε δεήσει τῷ ἀγαθῷ ἀνδρὶ μάχεσθαι, ἀλλ' ἐκείνος τοῦτο ἀρκέσει μηχανώμενος, ἕως ἂν ἔλῃ τὸν ἑαυτοῦ βελτίονα. τοῦ μέντοι ἐμὲ ἀνιᾶν καὶ σὺν πονηροῖς ῥαδίως οἶμαι κρείττων ἔσται.

Ἀκούσαντι ταῦτα τῷ Κύρῳ ἔδοξεν ἄξια ἐπιμελείας λέγειν· καὶ εὐθὺς εἶπε· ἰ οὖν, ἔφη, ὦ Γαδάτα, οὐχὶ τὰ μὲν τείχη φυλακῇ ἐχυρὰ ἐποιήσαμεν, ὅπως ἂν σοι σῶα ἦ χρηθῆναι ἀσφαλῶς, ὁπότεν εἰς αὐτὰ ἵης· αὐτὸς δὲ σὺν ἡμῖν στρατεύῃ, ἵνα ἦν οἱ θεοὶ ὥσπερ νῦν σὺν ἡμῖν ὦσιν, οὗτος σὲ φοβῆται, ἀλλὰ μὴ σὺ τοῦτον; ὅ τι δὲ ἡδύ σοι ὀράν τῶν σῶν ἢ ὅτῳ συνὼν χαίρεις, ἔχων σὺν σαυτῷ πορεύου. καὶ σύ τ' ἂν ἐμοί, ὥς γ' ἐμοὶ δοκεῖ, πάννυ χρήσιμος εἴης, ἐγὼ τε σοὶ ὅσα ἂν δύνωμαι πειράσομαι. ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Γαδάτας ἀνέπνευσέ τε καὶ εἶπεν· Ἄρ' οὖν, ἔφη, δυναίμην ἂν συσκευασάμενος φθάσαι πρὶν σε ἐξιέναι; βούλομαι γάρ τοι, ἔφη, καὶ τὴν μητέρα ἄγειν μετ' ἐμαντοῦ. Ναὶ μὰ Δῖ, ἔφη, φθάσεις μέντοι. ἐγὼ γὰρ ἐπιστήσω ἔστ' ἂν φῆς καλῶς ἔχειν. οὕτω δὲ ὁ Γαδάτας ἀπελθὼν φύλαξι

ἔφη, ὦ Κύρε, οὐδέν σε δεήσει τῷ ἀγαθῷ ἀνδρὶ μάχεσθαι,
 ἀλλ' ἐκείνος τοῦτο ἀρκέσει |build, contrive , ἕως ἂν ἔλῃ τὸν
 ἑαυτοῦ βελτίονα. τοῦ |however·μέ |vex καὶ σὺν |oppressed; knav-
 |ish; useless
 |easy οἶμαι κρείττων ἔσται.

Ἀκούσαντι ταῦτα τῷ Κύρῳ ἔδοξεν |wor- |attention; as- ἔγειν·
 |thy |signed task
 καὶ εὐθὺς εἶπε· ἰ οὖν, ἔφη, ὦ Γαδάτα, οὐχὶ τὰ μὲν
 |out- |guard, |secure; ἴ...νῆσαμεν, ὅπως ἂν σοι σῶα ἦ
 |door |prison, |persuasive
 |wall |watch
 χρησθαι ἀσφαλῶς, ὅποταν εἰς αὐτὰ ἵης· αὐτὸς δὲ σὺν
 ἡμῖν |make an expédition, οἱ θεοὶ ὥσπερ νῦν σὺν ἡμῖν ὦσιν,
 |war, campaign
 οὗτος σέ |scare, , ἀλλὰ μὴ σὺ τοῦτον; ὅ τι δὲ |sweet νι ὀράν
 |scare
 τῶν σῶν |away
 |be with;|rejoice , ἔχων σὺν |yourself τορεύου.
 |have
 καὶ σύ τ' ἂν ἐμοὶ, ὥς γ' ἐμοὶ δοκεῖ, |alto- |useful εἴης,
 |gether,
 ἐγὼ τε σοὶ ὅσα ἂν δύνωμαι πειράσομαι. ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ
 |very
 Γαδάτας |catch one's breath ` εἶπεν· Ἄρ' οὖν, ἔφη, δυναίμην
 ἂν |pack up φθάσαι |before, formerly;, βούλομαι γάρ
 |negated: until
 τοι, ἔφη, καὶ τὴν μητέρα ἄγειν μετ' ἑμαυτοῦ. |yea μὰ
 Δί', ἔφη, |be first |however ἐγὼ γὰρ |hold, cover; ἔστ' ἂν φῆς
 |offer; assail
 καλῶς ἔχειν. οὕτω δὲ ὁ Γαδάτας ἀπελθὼν |guard;
 |sentry

you will never need to do battle with such an one, yonder fiend would deal with him and never cease to plot against him until he had dragged him in the dust, only because he was the better man. And to work me trouble and disaster, he and his wicked tools will, I fear me, have strength enough and to spare.”

Cyrus thought there was much in what he said, and he answered forthwith:

”Tell me, Gadatas, did we not put a stout garrison in your fortress, so as to make it safe for you whenever you needed it, and are you not taking the field with us now, so that, if the gods be on our side as they are to-day, that scoundrel may fear you, not you him? Go now, bring with you all you have that is sweet to look on and to love, and then join our march: you shall be, I am persuaded, of the utmost service to me, and I, so far as in me lies, will give you help for help.”

When Gadatas heard that, he breathed again, and he said:

”Could I really be in time to make my preparations and be back before you leave? I would fain take my mother with me on the march.”

”Assuredly,” said Cyrus, ”you will be in time: for I will wait until you say that all is ready.”

So it came to pass that Gadatas went his way, and with the aid of Cyrus put a strong garrison in his fortress,

vocabulary

ἀναγκάζω force, compel
ἀνδάνω please ~hedonism
ἀπιστέω disbelieve ~stand
ἄφθονος ungrudging, plentiful
δεσπότης -ου (m, 1) master, despot
ἐγγύς near
ἐλαχὺς small; comp.: less ~light
ἐπιδείκνυμι (ῥ) display, exhibit
ἔρωτάω ask about something
ἡδομαι be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism
θεάομαι look at, behold, consider
 ~theater
καθοράω look down ~panorama
οἰκέω inhabit ~economics

ὀπόσος as many as, how many, how great
ὀχυρόω fortify
πιστός faithful; trustworthy
πιστώω reassure; also (pass) promise
προσέρχομαι come forward, surrender, come in
σίτος grain, bread, food ~parasite
στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy
στρατοπεδεύω encamp or take up station ~strategy
συσκευάζω pack up
χιλός (ῖ) fodder
χιλώω (ῖ) graze

μὲν τὰ τείχη σὺν Κύρῳ ὠχυρώσατο, συνεσκευάσατο δὲ πάντα ὁπόσοις ἂν οἶκος μέγας καλῶς οἰκοῖτο. ἤγετο δὲ καὶ τῶν ἑαυτοῦ τῶν τε πιστῶν οἷς ἤδετο καὶ ὧν ἠπίσκει πολλούς, ἀναγκάσας τοὺς μὲν καὶ γυναῖκας ἄγειν, τοὺς δὲ καὶ ἀδελφούς, ὥς δεδεμένους τούτοις κατέχοι αὐτούς. καὶ τὸν μὲν Γαδάταν εὐθὺς ὁ Κῦρος ἐν τοῖς περὶ αὐτὸν ἦει ἔχων καὶ ὁδῶν φραστήρα καὶ ὑδάτων καὶ χιλοῦ καὶ σίτου, ὥς εἴη ἐν τοῖς ἀφθονωτάτοις στρατοπεδεύεσθαι.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ πορευόμενος καθεώρα τὴν τῶν Βαβυλωνίων πόλιν καὶ ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ ἢ ὁδὸς ἦν ἦει παρ' αὐτὸ τὸ τεῖχος φέρειν, καλέσας τὸν Γωβρύαν καὶ τὸν Γαδάταν ἡρώτα εἰ εἴη ἄλλη ὁδός, ὥστε μὴ πάνυ ἐγγὺς τοῦ τείχους ἄγειν. καὶ ὁ Γωβρύας εἶπεν· Εἰσὶ μὲν, ὦ δέσποτα, καὶ πολλαὶ ὁδοί· ἀλλ' ἔγωγ', ἔφη, ὥρόμην καὶ βούλεσθαι ἂν σε νῦν ὅτι ἐγγυτάτῳ τῆς πόλεως ἄγειν, ἵνα καὶ ἐπιδείξαις αὐτῷ ὅτι τὸ στράτευμά σου ἤδη πολὺ τέ ἐστι καὶ καλόν· ἐπειδὴ καὶ ὅτε ἔλαττον εἶχες προσῆλθές τε πρὸς αὐτὸ τὸ τεῖχος καὶ ἐθεᾶτο ἡμᾶς οὐ πολλοὺς ὄντας· νῦν δὲ εἰ

μὲν τὰ |outdoor wall ἵϛρω |fortify , |pack up δὲ
 πάντα |as/how many/great , μέγας καλῶς |inhabit . ἤγετο δὲ
 καὶ τῶν ἑαυτοῦ τῶν τε πιστῶν οἷς ἤδετο καὶ ὧν |disbelieve
 πολλούς, |force, compel τοὺς μὲν καὶ γυναῖκας ἄγειν, τοὺς
 δὲ καὶ ἀδελφούς, ὡς δεδεμένους τούτοις |restrain; stop; continue; keep;
 |take possession
 καὶ τὸν μὲν Γαδάταν εὐθὺς ὁ Κῦρος ἐν τοῖς περὶ αὐτὸν ἦει
 ἔχων καὶ ὀδῶν φραστήρα καὶ ὑδάτων καὶ χιλοῦ καὶ |grain, ,
 |bread, ,
 ὡς εἶη ἐν τοῖς |ungrudging, |encamp or take up
 |plentiful |station
 Ἐπεὶ δὲ πορευόμενος |look down τὴν τῶν Βαβυλωνίων
 πόλιν καὶ ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ ἡ ὁδὸς ἣν ἦει παρ' αὐτὸ τὸ |outdoor wall
 φέρειν, καλέσας τὸν Γωβρύαν καὶ τὸν Γαδάταν |ask
 εἰ εἶη ἄλλη ὁδός, ὥστε μὴ |alto- |near τοῦ |outdoor wall...ν.
 |gether,
 καὶ ὁ Γωβρύας εἶπεν· Εἰσὶ μὲν, ὦ |very |master,
 |despot , καὶ πολλαὶ
 ὁδοί· ἀλλ' ἔγωγ', ἔφη, ὠρόμην καὶ βούλεσθαι ἂν σε νῦν ὅτι
 |near τῆς πόλεως ἄγειν, ἵνα καὶ |display, αὐτῷ ὅτι
 |exhibit
 τὸ |army σου ἤδη πολὺ τέ ἐστι καὶ καλόν· ἐπειδὴ καὶ
 ὅτε ἔλαττον εἶχες |come forward, sur- ἵς αὐτὸ τὸ |outdoor wall
 |render, come in
 ἐθεᾶτο ἡμᾶς οὐ πολλοὺς ὄντας· νῦν δὲ εἰ

and got together the wealth of his broad estates. And moreover he brought with him in his own retinue servants he could trust and in whom he took delight, as well as many others in whom he put no trust at all, and these he compelled to bring their wives with them, and their sisters, that so they might be bound to his service.

Thus Gadatas went with Cyrus, and Cyrus kept him ever at his side, to show him the roads and the places for water and fodder and food, and lead them where there was most abundance.

At last they came in sight of Babylon once more, and it seemed to Cyrus that the road they were following led under the very walls. Therefore he summoned Gobryas and Gadatas, and asked them if there was not another way, so that he need not pass so close to the ramparts. "There are many other ways, my lord," answered Gobryas, "but I thought you would certainly want to pass as near the city as possible, and display the size and splendour of your army to the king. I knew that when your force was weaker you advanced to his walls, and let him see us, few as we were, and I am persuaded that if he

*vocabulary***ἄμαξα** wagon**ἀπάγω** lead away, back ~demagogue**ἀπαρασκευάστος** unprepared**ἀσθενής** weak**ἀσφαλής** safe, easy, steady, careful**γυμνός** naked, unarmed**ἐκτείνω** stretch out ~tend**λεπτός** thin**μάχιμος** warlike**μείων** less, smaller**μηδαμῇ** nowhere**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle

~hoplite

παράγω deflect; bring forward**παρίημι** dangle; pass over, allow ~jet**προκαλύπτω** cover in front**προσάγω** bring to a place

~demagogue

σκευοφόρος pack animal, porter**στρατιά** army ~strategy**σώφρων** sensible, prudent ~frenzy**ὕπάγω** lead under the yoke, lead away from ~demagogue

καὶ παρεσκευασμένος τί ἐστίν, ὥσπερ πρὸς σέ εἶπεν ὅτι
 παρασκευάζοιτο ὡς μαχούμενός σοι, οἷδ' ὅτι ἰδόντι αὐτῷ
 τὴν σὴν δύναμιν πάλιν ἀπαρασκευαστότατα τὰ αὐτοῦ
 φανείται.

Καὶ ὁ Κῦρος πρὸς ταῦτα εἶπε· Δοκεῖς μοι, ὦ Γωβρύα,
 θαυμάζειν ὅτι ἐν ᾧ μὲν χρόνῳ πολὺν μείονα ἔχων στρατιὰν
 ἦλθον, πρὸς αὐτὸ τὸ τεῖχος προσῆγον· νῦν δ' ἐπεὶ πλείονα
 δύναμιν ἔχω, οὐκ ἐθέλω ὑπ' αὐτὰ τὰ τεῖχη ἄγειν. ἀλλὰ μὴ
 θαύμαζε· οὐ γὰρ τὸ αὐτό ἐστι προσάγειν τε καὶ παράγειν.
 προσάγουσι μὲν γὰρ πάντες οὕτω ταξάμενοι ὡς ἂν
 ἄριστοι εἶεν μάχεσθαι καὶ ἀπάγουσι δὲ οἱ σώφρονες ἢ ἂν
 ἀσφαλέστατα, οὐχ ἢ ἂν τάχιστα ἀπέλθοιεν, παριέναι δὲ
 ἀνάγκη ἐστὶν ἐκτεταμέναις μὲν ταῖς ἀμάξαις, ἀνειρμένοις
 δὲ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις σκευοφόροις ἐπὶ πολὺ· ταῦτα δὲ πάντα
 δεῖ προκεκαλύφθαι τοῖς ὅπλοφόροις καὶ μηδαμῇ τοῖς
 πολεμίοις γυμνὰ ὄπλων τὰ σκευοφόρα φαίνεσθαι. ἀνάγκη
 οὖν οὕτω πορευομένων ἐπὶ λεπτὸν καὶ ἀσθενὲς τὸ μάχιμον
 τετάχθαι· εἰ οὖν

has made any preparation for battle now, as he said he would, when he sees the power you have brought with you, he will think once more that he is unprepared.”

But Cyrus said:

”Does it seem strange to you, Gobryas, that when I had a far smaller army I took it right up to the enemy’s walls, and to-day when my force is greater I will not venture there? You need not think it strange: to march up is not the same as to march past. Every leader will march up with his troops disposed in the best order for battle and a wise leader will draw them off so as to secure safety rather than speed. But in marching past there is no means of avoiding long straggling lines of waggons, long strings of baggage-bearers, and all these must be screened by the fighting-force so as never to leave the baggage unprotected. But this must mean a thin weak order for

*vocabulary***ἄθρόος** grouped**ἀπαράσκευος** unprepared**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance**ἀποχωρέω** go away from, retreat**βραχύς** low, short**ἐγγύς** near**ἐκτείνω** stretch out ~tend**ἐπέξειμι** attack, prosecute**ἐπιχειρέω** do, try, attack ~chiral**ἐρρωμένος** vigorous, powerful**ἰσχυρός** (ὅ) strong, forceful, violent**καθοράω** look down ~panorama**κρείσσων** more powerful; better**μείων** less, smaller**ὅπη** wherever, however**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle

~hoplite

ὀρθός upright, straight; correct, just

~orthogonal

ὀρθόω stand up**παραμείβω** pass by ~amoeba**παρίημι** dangle; pass over, allow ~jet**πη** somewhere, somehow**προοράω** see before oneself**προσμείγνυμι** (ὅ) reach out to, approach**προσπίπτω** attack; befall; kow-tow**προστρέχω** run to, join, attack**πρόσω** forward, in the future; far**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**ὑπάγω** lead under the yoke, lead away from ~demagogue**ὑπολαμβάνω** take under one's support, seize; speak up; imagine ~epilepsy**ὑπολείπω** leave as a leftover; leave a person behind ~eclipse**φοβερός** frightful, afraid

βούλονται ἀθρόοι ἐκ τοῦ τείχους προσπесεῖν πη, ὅπη προσμείξαιαν, πολὺ ἂν ἐρρωμενέστεροι συμμιγνύοιεν τῶν παριόντων· καὶ τοῖς μὲν ἐπὶ μακρὸν πορευομένοις μακραὶ καὶ αἱ ἐπιβοήθειαι, τοῖς δ' ἐκ τοῦ τείχους βραχὺ πρὸς τὸ ἐγγὺς καὶ προσδραμεῖν καὶ πάλιν ἀπελθεῖν. ἦν δὲ μὴ μείον ἀπέχοντες παρίωμεν ἢ ἐφ' ὅσον καὶ νῦν ἐκτεταμένοι πορευόμεθα, τὸ μὲν πλῆθος κατόψονται ἡμῶν· ὑπὸ δὲ τῶν παρυφασμένων ὅπλων πᾶς ὄχλος δεινὸς φαίνεται. ἂν δ' οὖν τῷ ὄντι ἐπεξίωσί πη, ἐκ πολλοῦ προορῶντες αὐτοὺς οὐκ ἂν ἀπαράσκευοι λαμβανοίμεθα. μᾶλλον δέ, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἔφη, οὐδ' ἐπιχειρήσουσιν, ὅποταν πρόσω δέῃ ἀπὸ τοῦ τείχους ἀπιέναι, ἂν μὴ τῷ ὅλῳ ὑπολάβωσι τοῦ παντὸς κρείττους εἶναι· φοβερὰ γὰρ ἡ ἀποχώρησις. ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτ' εἶπεν, ἔδοξέ τε ὀρθῶς τοῖς παροῦσι λέγειν καὶ ἦγεν ὁ Γωβρύας ὥσπερ ἐκέλευσε. παραμειβομένου δὲ τὴν πόλιν τοῦ στρατεύματος αἰεὶ τὸ ὑπολειπόμενον ἰσχυρότερον ποιούμενος ἀπεχώρει.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ πορευόμενος οὕτως ἐν ταῖς γιγνομέναις ἡμέραις

βούλονται |grouped ἐκ τοῦ τείχους |attack; befall; πη, |wherever,
|reach out to, πολὺ ἂν |vigorous, powerful συμμαγνύοιεν τῶν
|approach
|kow-tow |however

παριόντων· καὶ τοῖς μὲν ἐπὶ |long, tall τορευομένοις μακραὶ
καὶ αἱ ἐπιβοήθειαι, τοῖς δ' ἐκ τοῦ τείχους |low, short ρὸς

τὸ |near καὶ |run to, join, attack ` πάλιν ἀπελθεῖν. ἦν δὲ μὴ

|less, |ward off, |dangle; pass, ἐφ' ὅσον καὶ νῦν |stretch out
|smaller drive off, |over, allow

πορευομένων, τὸ μὲν |numerical |look down ἡμῶν· ὑπὸ δὲ
|at some |superior-
|distance |ity

τῶν παρυφασμένων |tool πᾶς |mob, crowd; `trouble' εἴται.

ἂν δ' οὖν τῷ ὄντι ἐπεξίωσί πη, ἐκ πολλοῦ |see before oneself

αὐτοὺς οὐκ ἂν |unprepared λαμβανοίμεθα. μᾶλλον δέ,

ὦ ἄνδρες, ἔφη, οὐδ' |do, try, attack , ὅποταν |forward, in the
|future; far

ἀπὸ τοῦ τείχους |be absent, go μὴ τῷ ὅλῳ |take under one's support,
|away, return |seize; speak up; imagine

παντὸς κρείττους εἶναι· |frightful, γὰρ ἢ ἀποχώρησις. ἐπεὶ
|afraid

δὲ ταῦτ' εἶπεν, ἔδοξε τε ὀρθῶς τοῖς παροῦσι λέγειν καὶ ἦγεν

ὁ Γωβρύας ὥσπερ ἐκέλευσε. |pass by δὲ τὴν πόλιν

τοῦ |army αἰεὶ τὸ |leave (food, person) |strong, force-
|ful, violent

ποιούμενος |go away
|from, retreat

Ἐπεὶ δὲ πορευόμενος οὕτως ἐν ταῖς γιγνομέναις ἡμέραις

the fighting-men, and if the enemy choose to attack at any point with their full force, they can strike with far more weight than any of the troops available to meet them at the moment. Again, the length of line means a long delay in bringing up relief, whereas the enemy have only a handsbreadth to cover as they rush out from the walls or retire. But now, if we leave a distance between ourselves and them as wide as our line is long, not only will they realise our numbers plainly enough, but our veil of glittering armour will make the whole multitude more formidable in their eyes. And, if they do attack us anywhere, we shall be able to foresee their advance a long way off and be quite prepared to give them welcome. But it is far more likely, gentlemen," he added, "that they will not make the attempt, with all that ground to cover from the walls, unless they imagine that their whole force is superior to the whole of ours: they know that retreat will be difficult and dangerous."

So Cyrus spoke, and his listeners felt that he was right, and Gobryas led the army by the way that he advised. And as one detachment after another passed the city, Cyrus strengthened the protection for the rear and so withdrew in safety.

Marching in this order, he

*vocabulary***ἀπαγγέλλω** announce, order, promise

~angel

ἀσθενής weak**βέλτιστος** best, noblest**βιόω** live; (mp) make a living ~biology**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish

~practice

ἕζομαι act: set, seat; pass: sit down, sit

up ~sit

εἰσάγω lead in ~demagogue**ἐνταῦθα** there, here**ἐξαιρέω** pick, steal; dedicate; destroy

~heresy

ἐπιστέλλω send to, order**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider

~theater

κατασκευάζω equip, build**κατασκευή** fixed assets; condition**μεθόριος** lying between**οἶχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone**προσβάλλω** hit, attack, approach;

attach, offer ~ballistic

σκηνή tent; stage**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**σύμβουλος** adviser**φρούριον** fort

ἀφικνεῖται εἰς τὰ μεθόρια τῶν Σύρων καὶ Μήδων, ἔνθενπερ ὠρμάτο, ἐνταῦθα δὴ τρία ὄντα τῶν Σύρων φρούρια, ἐν μὲν αὐτὸς τὸ ἀσθενέστατον βία προσβαλὼν ἔλαβε, τῷ δὲ δύο φρουρίῳ φοβῶν μὲν Κῦρος, πείθων δὲ Γαδάτας ἔπεισε παραδοῦναι τοὺς φυλάττοντας.

5.5

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα διεπέπρακτο, πέμπει πρὸς Κναξάρην καὶ ἐπέστειλεν αὐτῷ ἡκεῖν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον, ὅπως περὶ τῶν φρουρίων ὧν εἰλήφεσαν βουλεύσαιντο ὃ τι χρήσαιντο, καὶ ὅπως θεασάμενος τὸ στράτευμα καὶ περὶ τῶν ἄλλων σύμβουλος γίγνοιτο ὃ τι δοκοίη ἐκ τούτου πράττειν· ἐὰν δὲ κελεύη, εἰπέ, ἔφη, ὅτι ἐγὼ ἂν ὥς ἐκείνον ἰοίην συστρατοπεδευσόμενος. ὁ μὲν δὴ ἄγγελος ὥχετο ταῦτ' ἀπαγγελῶν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἐν τούτῳ ἐκέλευσε τὴν τοῦ Ἀσσυρίου σκηνήν, ἣν Κναξάρη οἱ Μῆδοι ἐξείλον, ταύτην κατασκευάσαι ὥς βέλτιστα τῇ τε ἄλλῃ κατασκευῇ ἣν εἶχον καὶ τῷ γυναικα εἰσαγαγεῖν εἰς τὸν γυναικῶνα τῆς σκηνῆς καὶ σὺν ταύτῃ τὰς μουσουργούς, αἵπερ ἐξηρημέναι

|arrive εἰς τὰ |lying τῶν Σύρων καὶ Μήδων,
|between
ἔνθεν περ |spur, rush|there, here ἵη |three ὄντα τῶν Σύρων
|at
|fort , ἐν μὲν αὐτὸς τὸ |weak βία |hit, attack, approach; at-
|tach, offer
ἔλαβε, τὸ δὲ δύο |fort |scare, μὲν Κῦρος, πείθων δὲ
|scare
Γαδάτας ἔπεισε |hand over |away τούς |guard; watch

5.5

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα |travel over, ac-, πέμπει πρὸς Κναζάρην
|comply
καὶ |send to, order ὑτῷ ἤκειν ἐπὶ τὸ |army camp , ὅπως
περὶ τῶν |fort ὧν εἰλήφεσαν |(mp) to deliberate“ τι
χρήσαιντο, καὶ ὅπως θεασάμενος τὸ |army καὶ περὶ
τῶν ἄλλων |adviser γίγνοιτο ὅ τι δοκοίη ἐκ τούτου
πράττειν· ἐὰν δὲ κελεύῃ, εἰπέ, ἔφη, ὅτι ἐγὼ ἂν ὡς ἐκείνων
ιοίην συστρατοπεδευσόμενος. ὁ μὲν δὲ |messenger |come, go
ταῦτ’ ἀπαγγελῶν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἐν τούτῳ ἐκέλευσε τὴν τοῦ
Ἀσσυρίου |tent; , ἣν Κναζάρη οἱ Μῆδοι |pick, steal; dedi-,
|stage cate; destroy
|equip, build ὥς |best, τῇ τε ἄλλῃ |fixed assets; ἣν
|noblest |condition
εἶχον καὶ τῷ γυναιῖκα |lead in εἰς τὸν γυναικῶνα τῆς
|tent; καὶ σὺν ταύτῃ τὰς μουσουργούς, αἵ περ |pick, steal; dedicate; de-
|stage |stroy

came back at last to his first starting-point, on the frontier between Assyria and Media. Here he dealt with three Assyrian fortresses: one, the weakest, he attacked and took by force, while the garrisons of the other two, what with the eloquence of Gadatas and the terror inspired by Cyrus, were persuaded to surrender.

5.5

And now that his expedition was completed, Cyrus sent to Cyaxares and urged him to come to the camp in order that they might decide best how to use the forts which they had taken, and perhaps Cyaxares, after reviewing the army, would advise him what the next move ought to be, or, Cyrus added to the messenger, "if he bids me, say I will come to him and take up my encampment there." So the emissary went off with the message, and meanwhile Cyrus gave orders that the Assyrian tent chosen for Cyaxares should be furnished as splendidly as possible, and the woman brought to her apartment there, and the two singing-girls also, whom they had set aside for him.

And while they were busied with these things the envoy went to Cyaxares and delivered his message, and Cyaxares listened and decided it was best for Cyrus and his men to stay on the frontier. The Persians whom Cyrus had sent for had already arrived, forty thousand bowmen and

vocabulary

ἀπαλλαξείω wish to get rid of
ἀπαλλάσσω free from, remove; be freed, depart
αὐθήμερος on the same day
εἰσδέχομαι admit, take in
ἐντέλλω (mp) command
ἐπιστολή message, letter
ἔρομαι ask a question, ask about, go searching through
ἡδύς sweet, pleasant ~hedonism
μεθόριος lying between
μεταπέμπω send; (mid) summon ~pomp
μυριάς -δος (ὑ, f, 3) countless, myriad
οἶχομαι come, go, leave, be gone

παραμένω stay with ~remain
πελταστής -οῦ (m, 1) light troops ~pelt
Πέρσης Persian
πρόσειμι approach, draw near; add ~ion
προσίημι be allowed near
σίνομαι (ἱ) rob, damage
στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy
στρατός common people/soldiers ~strategy
στρατώω be on a campaign ~strategy
τέσσαρες four ~trapezoid
τοξότης -ου (m, 1) archer ~toxic
ὕστεραίῳς the next; later

ἦσαν Κυαζάρη. οἱ μὲν δὴ ταῦτ' ἔπραττον. ὁ δὲ πεμφθεὶς πρὸς τὸν Κυαζάρην ἐπεὶ ἔλεξε τὰ ἐντεταλμένα, ἀκούσας αὐτοῦ ὁ Κυαζάρης ἔγνω βέλτιον εἶναι τὸ στράτευμα μένειν ἐν τοῖς μεθορίοις. καὶ γὰρ οἱ Πέρσαι οὓς μετεπέμψατο ὁ Κῦρος ἦκον· ἦσαν δὲ μυριάδες τέτταρες τοξοτῶν καὶ πελταστῶν. ὁρῶν οὖν καὶ τούτους σινομένους πολλὰ τὴν Μηδικήν, τούτων ἂν ἐδόκει ἥδιον ἀπαλλαγῆναι ἢ ἄλλον ὄχλον εἰσδέξασθαι. ὁ μὲν δὴ ἐκ Περσῶν ἄγων τὸν στρατὸν ἐρόμενος τὸν Κυαζάρην κατὰ τὴν Κύρου ἐπιστολὴν εἴ τι δέοιτο τοῦ στρατοῦ, ἐπεὶ οὐκ ἔφη δεῖσθαι, αὐθυμερόν, ἐπεὶ ἤκουσε παρόντα Κῦρον, ὥχετο πρὸς αὐτὸν ἄγων τὸ στράτευμα.

Ὁ Δὲ Κυαζάρης ἐπορεύετο τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ σὺν τοῖς παραμείνασιν ἱππεῦσι Μήδων· ὥς δ' ἦσθετο ὁ Κῦρος προσιόντα αὐτόν, λαβὼν τοὺς τε τῶν Περσῶν ἱππείας, πολλοὺς ἤδη ὄντας, καὶ τοὺς Μήδους πάντας καὶ τοὺς Ἀρμενίους καὶ τοὺς Ὑρκανίους καὶ τῶν ἄλλων συμμάχων τοὺς εὐιπποτάτους τε καὶ εὐοπλοτάτους

ἦσαν Κναξάρη. οἱ μὲν δὴ ταῦτ' ἔπραττον. ὁ δὲ πεμφθεὶς
 πρὸς τὸν Κναξάρην ἐπεὶ ἔλεξε τὰ ἐντεταλμένα, ἀκούσας
 αὐτοῦ ὁ Κναξάρης ἔγνω βέλτιον εἶναι τὸ |army μένειν
 ἐν τοῖς |lying . καὶ γὰρ οἱ Πέρσαι οὗς |send; (mid) summon
 |between
 ὁ Κῦρος |be present, have|countless, |four |archer καὶ
 |arrived |myriad
 |light troops . ὁρῶν οὖν καὶ τούτους |rob, damage πολλά τὴν
 Μηδικήν, τούτων ἂν ἐδόκει |sweet ἀπαλλαγήναι ἢ ἄλλον
 |mob, |admit, take in ὁ μὲν δὴ ἐκ Περσῶν ἄγων τὸν |army
 |crowd;
 |trouble
 |ask, search through ἱξάρην κατὰ τὴν Κύρου |message, εἴ
 |letter
 τι δέοιτο τοῦ στρατοῦ, ἐπεὶ οὐκ ἔφη δεῖσθαι, αὐθημερόν,
 ἐπεὶ ἦκουσε παρόντα Κῦρον, |come, go ρὸς αὐτὸν ἄγων τὸ
 |army
 Ὁ Δὲ Κναξάρης ἐπορεύετο τῇ |the next; later `ν τοῖς
 |stay with |rider Μήδων· ὥς δ' |perceive ὁ Κῦρος
 προσιόντα αὐτόν, λαβὼν τοὺς τε τῶν Περσῶν |rider ,
 πολλοὺς ἤδη ὄντας, καὶ τοὺς Μήδους πάντας καὶ τοὺς
 Ἀρμενίους καὶ τοὺς Ὑρκανίους καὶ τῶν ἄλλων συμμάχων
 τοὺς εὐπιποτάτους τε καὶ εὐοπλοτάτους

targeteers. To watch these eating up the land was bad enough, and Cyaxares thought he would rather be quit of one horde before he received another. On his side the officer in command of the Persian levy, following the instructions from Cyrus, asked Cyaxares if he had any need of the men, and Cyaxares said he had not. Thereupon, and hearing that Cyrus had arrived, the Persian put himself at the head of his troops and went off at once to join him. Cyaxares himself waited till the next day and then set out with the Median troopers who had stayed behind. And when Cyrus knew of his approach he took his Persian cavalry, who were now a large body of men, and all the Medes, Hyrcanians, and Armenians, and the best-mounted and best-armed among the rest, and so went out to meet Cyaxares

vocabulary

ἀναπαύω cause to cease ~pause
ἀπάγω lead away, back ~demagogue
ἀπαντάω encounter, come upon
ἀποστρέφω turn back, turn off course
 ~atrophy
ἄτιμος (ι) without honor
ἄχος ἄχεος (n, 3) mental distress,
 anguish; pain, ache ~ail
δάκρυον tear
δακρύω weep
δεξιὰ right-hand ~dextrous
ἐνταῦθα there, here
ἐπιδείκνυμι (υ) display, exhibit
ἔπω (mid) follow, accompany; (act,
 uncommon) handle, take care of

ἐφικνέομαι reach, bear on
θεραπείη -ας service, tending
καθίζω set, sit, alight, set up ~sit
μνήμη reminder, memorial
ὀργίζω anger, provoke, annoy
πάλαι long ago ~paleo
πάλη wrestling ~Pallas
πάλλω shake, brandish ~Pallas
πίλος felt
προσέρχομαι come forward, surrender,
 come in
ὑποβάλλω put under, interrupt
 ~ballistic
φανερός visible, conspicuous ~photon
φοῖνιξ -χος (m) red or purple dye or
 color; bay (horse); palm tree

ἀπήντα, ἐπιδεικνὺς τῷ Κυαξάρῃ τὴν δύναμιν. ὁ δὲ Κυαξάρης ἐπεὶ εἶδε σὺν μὲν τῷ Κύρῳ πολλοὺς τε καὶ καλοὺς καὶ ἀγαθοὺς ἐπομένους, σὺν αὐτῷ δὲ ὀλίγην τε καὶ ὀλίγου ἀξίαν θεραπείαν, ἄτιμόν τι αὐτῷ ἔδοξεν εἶναι καὶ ἄχος αὐτὸν ἔλαβεν. ἐπεὶ δὲ καταβὰς ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου ὁ Κῦρος προσῆλθεν ὡς φιλήσων αὐτὸν κατὰ νόμον, ὁ Κυαξάρης κατέβη μὲν ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου, ἀπεστράφη δέ· καὶ ἐφίλησε μὲν οὐ, δακρύων δὲ φανερὸς ἦν. ἐκ τούτου δὴ ὁ Κῦρος τοὺς μὲν ἄλλους πάντας ἀποστάντας ἐκέλευσεν ἀναπαύεσθαι· αὐτὸς δὲ λαβόμενος τῆς δεξιᾶς τοῦ Κυαξάρου καὶ ἀπαγαγὼν αὐτὸν τῆς ὁδοῦ ἔξω ὑπὸ φοίνικας τινας, τῶν τε Μηδικῶν πύλων ὑποβαλεῖν ἐκέλευσεν αὐτῷ καὶ καθίσας αὐτὸν καὶ παρακαθεζόμενος εἶπεν ὧδε.

Εἰπέ μοι, ἔφη, πρὸς τῶν θεῶν, ὦ θεῖε, τί μοι ὀργίζῃ καὶ τί χαλεπὸν ὀρών οὕτω χαλεπῶς φέρεις; ἐνταῦθα δὴ ὁ Κυαξάρης ἀπεκρίνατο· Ὅτι, ὦ Κῦρε, δοκῶν γε δὴ ἐφ' ὅσον ἀνθρώπων μνήμη ἐφικνέεται καὶ τῶν πάλαι

|encounter, |display, τῷ Κναζάρῃ τὴν δύναμιν. ὁ δὲ
 |come upon |exhibit
 Κναζάρῃς ἐπεὶ εἶδε σὺν μὲν τῷ Κύρῳ πολλοὺς τε καὶ
 καλοὺς καὶ ἀγαθοὺς ἐπομένους, σὺν αὐτῷ δὲ ὀλίγην τε
 καὶ ὀλίγου ἀξίαν |service, |without τι αὐτῷ ἔδοξεν εἶναι
 |tending |honor
 καὶ |distress ἵπτον ἔλαβεν. ἐπεὶ δὲ |go down ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου
 ὁ Κῦρος |come forward, |sur-|love αὐτὸν κατὰ νόμον,
 |render, come in
 ὁ Κναζάρῃς |go down μὲν ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου, |turn back
 δέ· καὶ |love μὲν οὐ, δακρύων δὲ |visible, ᾧ· ἐκ
 |conspicuous
 τούτου δὴ ὁ Κῦρος τοὺς μὲν ἄλλους πάντας |stand apart;
 |exact payment
 ἐκέλευσεν |cause to cease αὐτοὺς δὲ λαβόμενος τῆς δεξιᾶς
 τοῦ Κναζάρου καὶ |lead away, back... ἵπτον τῆς ὁδοῦ ἔξω
 ὑπὸ |red, red dye; νας, τῶν τε Μηδικῶν |felt |put under, interrupt
 |palm tree
 ἐκέλευσεν αὐτῷ καὶ |set, sit, alight, ὃν καὶ παρακαθεζόμενος
 |set up
 εἶπεν |thus.
 Εἰπέ μοι, ἔφη, πρὸς τῶν θεῶν, ᾧ θεῖε, τί μοι |anger, pro-
 |voke, annoy
 τί |hard to bear, ὧν οὕτω |hard to bear, ἔρεις; |there, here ἢ ὁ
 Κναζάρῃς |to separate; reject; (mp) Κῦρε, δοκῶν γε δὴ ἐφ'
 |answer, defend oneself
 ὅσον ἀνθρώπων |remind, teach, bear on... ἰ τῶν πάλαι
 |memorial

and show the power he had won. But when Cyaxares saw so large a following of gallant gentlemen with Cyrus, and with himself so small and mean a retinue, it seemed to him an insult, and mortification filled his heart. And when Cyrus sprang from his horse and came up to give him the kiss of greeting, Cyaxares, though he dismounted, turned away his head and gave him no kiss, while the tears came into his eyes. Whereupon Cyrus told the others to stand aside and rest, and then he took Cyaxares by the hand and led him apart under a grove of palm-trees, and bade the attendants spread Median carpets for them, and made Cyaxares sit down, and then, seating himself beside him, he said:

"Uncle of mine, tell me, in heaven's name, I implore you, why are you angry with me? What bitter sight have you seen to make you feel such bitterness?"

And then Cyaxares answered:

"Listen, Cyrus; I have been reputed royal and of royal lineage as far back as the memory of

vocabulary

ἀγνοέω be ignorant of ~gnostic
 ἀμελέω disregard; (impers.) of course
 ἀνάξιος unworthy, undeserved
 δάκρυον tear
 δακρύω weep
 δεκάκις ten times ~decimal
 ἐμπίμπλημι fill with
 ἐπεγγελάω mock
 ἐπέχω hold, cover; offer; assail
 ἐπισπάω drag along
 ἡδύς sweet, pleasant ~hedonism
 ἥκιστος least; above all
 θεραπείη -ας service, tending

ἰσχυρός (ῥ) strong, forceful, violent
 καταδύω enter, sink
 κατασκευάζω equip, build
 μεγαλοπρεπής befitting greatness
 ὄμμα -τος (n, 3) eye
 ὀρθός upright, straight; correct, just
 ~orthogonal
 ὀρθόω stand up
 πρόγονος elder, ancestor ~genus
 ταπεινός low
 ταπεινός lower, abase
 τοιόσδε such
 ὑπαντιάζω take a stand against
 φύω produce, beget; clasp ~physics

προγόνων καὶ πατρὸς βασιλέως πεφυκέναι καὶ αὐτὸς βασιλεὺς νομιζόμενος εἶναι, ἐμαυτὸν μὲν ὁρῶ οὕτω ταπεινῶς καὶ ἀναξίως ἐλαύνοντα, σὲ δὲ τῇ ἐμῇ θεραπείᾳ καὶ τῇ ἄλλῃ δυνάμει μέγαν τε καὶ μεγαλοπρεπῆ παρόντα. καὶ ταῦτα χαλεπὸν μὲν οἶμαι καὶ ὑπὸ πολεμίων παθεῖν, πολὺ δ', ὦ Ζεῦ, χαλεπώτερον ὑφ' ὧν ἥκιστα ἐχρῆν ταῦτα πεπονθέναι. ἐγὼ μὲν γὰρ δοκῶ δεκάκις ἂν κατὰ τῆς γῆς καταδύναι ἥδιον ἢ ὀφθῆναι οὕτω ταπεινὸς καὶ ἰδεῖν τοὺς ἐμοὺς ἐμοῦ ἀμελήσαντας καὶ ἐπεγγελῶντας ἐμοί. οὐ γὰρ ἀγνοῶ τοῦτο, ἔφη, ὅτι οὐ σύ μου μόνον μείζων εἶ, ἀλλὰ καὶ οἱ ἐμοὶ δοῦλοι ἰσχυρότεροι ἐμοῦ ὑπαντιάζουσίν μοι καὶ κατεσκευασμένοι εἰσὶν ὥστε δύνασθαι ποιῆσαι μᾶλλον ἐμὲ κακῶς ἢ παθεῖν ὑπ' ἐμοῦ. καὶ ἅμα ταῦτα λέγων πολὺ ἔτι μᾶλλον ἐκρατεῖτο ὑπὸ τῶν δακρύων, ὥστε καὶ τὸν Κῦρον ἐπεσπάσατο ἐμπλησθῆναι δακρύων τὰ ὄμματα. ἐπισχὼν δὲ μικρὸν ἔλεξε τοιάδε ὁ Κῦρος.

Ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν, ὦ Κναξάρη, οὔτε λέγεις ἀληθῆ οὔτε ὀρθῶς γιγνώσκεις, εἰ οἶει τῇ ἐμῇ παρουσίᾳ Μήδους

|elder, ancestor καὶ πατρός βασιλέως πεφυκέναι καὶ αὐτὸς
 βασιλεὺς |consider cus- |τῆναι, ἐμαντὸν μὲν ὁρῶ οὕτω
 |tomary; believe
 ταπεινῶς καὶ |unworthy, |drive, σὲ δὲ τῇ ἐμῇ |service,
 |undeserved |tending
 καὶ τῇ ἄλλῃ δυνάμει μέγαν τε καὶ |befitting παρόντα.
 |greatness
 καὶ ταῦτα |hard to bear ἔν οἶμαι καὶ ὑπὸ πολεμίων παθεῖν,
 πολὺ δ', ὦ Ζεῦ, |hard to bear ὑφ' ὧν |least; |must, ταῦτα
 |above |should
 πεπονθέναι. ἐγὼ μὲν γὰρ δοκῶ |ten times ἅν κατὰ τῆς γῆς
 |enter, sink |sweet ἢ ὀφθῆναι οὕτω |low καὶ ἰδεῖν τοὺς
 ἐμοὺς ἐμοῦ |disregard καὶ ἐπεγγελῶντας ἐμοί. οὐ γὰρ
 |be ignorant of ἔφη, ὅτι οὐ σύ μου μόνον μείζων εἶ, ἀλλὰ
 καὶ οἱ ἐμοὶ |born en- |strong, force- ἐμοῦ |take a stand against καὶ
 |slaved, |ful, violent
 |equip, build |servile εἰσὶν ὥστε δύνασθαι ποιῆσαι μᾶλλον ἐμὲ
 κακῶς ἢ παθεῖν ὑπ' ἐμοῦ. καὶ ἅμα ταῦτα λέγων πολὺ ἔτι
 μᾶλλον |rule ὑπὸ τῶν δακρύων, ὥστε καὶ τὸν Κῦρον
 |drag along |fill with δακρύων τὰ |eye |hold, cover;
 |offer; assail
 δὲ |small ἔλεξε |such ὁ Κῦρος.
 Ἄλλὰ ταῦτα μέν, ὦ Κναξάρη, οὔτε λέγεις |true; οὔτε
 |careful
 ὀρθῶς γινώσκεις, εἰ οἶει τῇ ἐμῇ παρουσίᾳ Μήδους

man can go; my father was a king and a king I myself was thought to be; and now I see myself riding here, meanly and miserably attended, while you come before me in splendour and magnificence, followed by the retinue that once was mine and all your other forces. That would be bitter enough, methinks, from the hand of an enemy, but—O gods above us!—how much more bitter at the hands of those from whom we least deserve it! Far rather would I be swallowed in the earth than live to be seen so low, aye, and to see my own kinsfolk turn against me and make a mock of me. And well I know,” said he, “that not only you but my own slaves are now stronger and greater than myself: they come out equipt to do me far more mischief than ever I could repay.”

But here he stopped, overcome by a passion of weeping, so much so that for very pity Cyrus’ own eyes filled with tears. There was silence between them for a while, and then Cyrus said:

”Nay, Cyaxares, what you say is not true, and what you think is not right, if you imagine

*vocabulary***ἄδικος** unfair; obstinate, bad**αἰτιάομαι** blame ~etiology**ἀμάρτημα** -τος (n, 3) failure, fault**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not needing ~Sp. sin**ἀπολογέομαι** defend one's conduct**ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp**ἀσκέω** work on**ἄσχος** wine skin, leather bag**ἀσφαλής** safe, easy, steady, careful**βαρύς** heavy ~baritone**εἰκῇ** haphazardly; in vain**ἐμβάλλω** throw in; inspire a mental state ~ballistic**ἐξεργάζομαι** accomplish; undo**θυμός** (ῥ) anger**καθοράω** look down ~panorama**κατασκευάζω** equip, build**λυπέω** (ῥ) annoy, distress**ὁμόνοια** unanimity**ὀργή** urge, impulse; anger**παρίημι** dangle; pass over, allow ~jet**ποῖος** what kind**σαφής** clear, understandable**χαλεπαίνω** be violent, rage

κατεσκευάσθαι ὥστε ἱκανοὺς εἶναι σὲ κακῶς ποιεῖν· τὸ μέντοι σε θυμοῦσθαι καὶ φοβεῖσθαι οὐ θαυμάζω. εἰ μέντοι γε δικαίως ἢ ἀδίκως αὐτοῖς χαλεπαίνεις, παρήσω τοῦτο· οἶδα γὰρ ὅτι βαρέως ἂν φέροις ἀκούων ἐμοῦ ἀπολογουμένου ὑπὲρ αὐτῶν· τὸ μέντοι ἄνδρα ἄρχοντα πᾶσιν ἅμα χαλεπαίνειν τοῖς ἀρχομένοις, τοῦτο ἐμοὶ δοκεῖ μέγα ἀμάρτημα εἶναι. ἀνάγκη γὰρ διὰ τὸ πολλοὺς μὲν φοβεῖν πολλοὺς ἐχθροὺς ποιεῖσθαι, διὰ δὲ τὸ πᾶσιν ἅμα χαλεπαίνειν πᾶσιν αὐτοῖς ὁμόνοϊαν ἐμβάλλειν. ὦν ἔνεκα, εὐ ἴσθι, ἐγὼ οὐκ ἀπέπεμπον ἄνευ ἐμαυτοῦ τούτους, φοβούμενος μή τι γένοιτο διὰ τὴν σὴν ὀργὴν ὅ τι πάντας ἡμᾶς λυπήσοι. ταῦτα μὲν οὖν σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς ἐμοῦ παρόντος ἀσφαλῶς ἔχει σοι· τὸ μέντοι σε νομίζειν ὑπ' ἐμοῦ ἀδικεῖσθαι, τοῦτο ἐγὼ πάννυ χαλεπῶς φέρω, εἰ ἀσκῶν ὅσον δύναμαι τοὺς φίλους ὡς πλείστα ἀγαθὰ ποιεῖν ἔπειτα τάναντία τούτου δοκῶ ἐξεργάζεσθαι. ἀλλὰ γάρ, ἔφη, μὴ οὕτως εἰκὴ ἡμᾶς αὐτοὺς αἰτιώμεθα· ἀλλ', εἰ δυνατόν, σαφέστατα κατίδωμεν ποῖόν ἐστι τὸ παρ'

|equip, build ὥστε |sufficient; fit, μὴ σὲ κακῶς ποιεῖν· τὸ
 |empowered
 μέντοι σε |anger καὶ φοβεῖσθαι οὐ |marvel . εἰ
 μέντοι γε δικαίως ἢ |unfair; obstinate, |be violent, rage |dangle; pass
 |bad |over, allow
 τοῦτο· οἶδα γὰρ ὅτι |heavy ἂν φέροις ἀκούων ἐμοῦ
 |defend one's conduct ἂν αὐτῶν· τὸ μέντοι ἄνδρα ἄρχοντα
 πᾶσιν ἅμα |be violent, rage. οἷς ἀρχομένοις, τοῦτο ἐμοὶ δοκεῖ
 μέγα |failure, fault εἶναι. |necessity γὰρ διὰ τὸ πολλοὺς
 μὲν φοβεῖν πολλοὺς |hated, distasteful ἴαι, διὰ δὲ τὸ πᾶσιν
 ἅμα |be violent, rage ἅσιν αὐτοῖς |unanimity |throw in; inspire
 ἔνεκα, εὖ ἴσθι, ἐγὼ οὐκ |send away |away from; not hav- ous,
 |ing; not needing
 φοβούμενος μὴ τι γένοιτο διὰ τὴν σὴν |urge, ὥς τι πάντας
 |impulse;
 ἡμᾶς |annoy, ταῦτα μὲν οὖν σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς ἐμοῦ
 |distress |anger
 παρόντος ἀσφαλῶς ἔχει σοι· τὸ μέντοι σε νομίζειν ὑπ'
 ἐμοῦ ἀδικεῖσθαι, τοῦτο ἐγὼ |alto- |hard to bear ἴρω, εἰ ἀσκῶν
 |gether,
 ὅσον δύναμαι τοὺς φίλους ὥς πλείστα ἀγαθὰ ποιεῖν ἔπειτα
 |very
 |opposite τούτου δοκῶ |accomplish; undo ἰλλὰ γάρ, ἔφη,
 μὴ οὕτως |haphazardly; in vain |blame ἀλλ', εἰ |powerful,
 |possible
 |clear, under-|look down |what kind τὸ παρ'

|standable

that because I am here, your Medes have been equipt to do you any harm. I do not wonder that you are pained, and I will not ask if you have cause or not for your anger against them: you will ill brook apologies for them from me. Only it seems to me a grievous error in a ruler to quarrel with all his subjects at once. Widespread terror must needs be followed by widespread hate: anger with all creates unity among all. It was for this reason, take my word for it, that I would not send them back to you without myself, fearing that your wrath might be the cause of what would injure all of us. Through my presence here and by the blessing of heaven, all is safe for you: but that you should regard yourself as wronged by me,—I cannot but feel it bitter, when I am doing all in my power to help my friends, to be accused of plotting against them. However,” he continued, ”let us not accuse each other in this useless way; if possible, let us see exactly in

*vocabulary***ἁδίκημα** -τος (n, 3) wrong, misdeed**ἄθροίζω** press close together; (mid)
muster**αἰτέω** ask for ~etiology**γοῦν** at least then**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous**δήπου** perhaps; is it not so?**ἔπαινος** (noun) praise**κοινός** communal, ordinary**μέμφις** blame, complaint**ὁμολογέω** agree with/to**οὔκουν** certainly not**παραγίγνομαι** be beside, attend
~genus**Πέρσης** Persian**προθυμέομαι** (ῶ) be eager**σκοπᾶω** watch, observe**σκοπέω** behold, consider**τοίνυν** well, then**ὑπόθεσις** -εως (f) proposal; subject;
hypothesis**ὑποτίθμι** suggest, advise ~hypothesis

ἐμοῦ ἀδίκημα. καὶ τὴν ἐν φίλοις δικαιοτάτην ὑπόθεσιν ἔχω ὑποτιθέναι· ἐὰν γάρ τί σε φανῶ κακὸν πεποιηκώς, ὁμολογῶ ἀδικεῖν· ἐὰν μέντοι μηδὲν φαίνωμαι κακὸν πεποιηκώς μηδὲ βουληθείς, οὐ καὶ σὺ αὖ ὁμολογήσεις μηδὲν ὑπ' ἐμοῦ ἀδικεῖσθαι; Ἄλλ' ἀνάγκη, ἔφη. Ἐὰν δὲ δὴ καὶ ἀγαθὰ πεπραχώς σοι δῆλος ᾧ καὶ προθυμούμενος πρᾶξαι ὥς ἐγὼ πλείστα ἐδυνάμην, οὐκ ἂν καὶ ἐπαίνου σοι ἄξιος εἶην μᾶλλον ἢ μέμψεως; Δίκαιον γοῦν, ἔφη. Ἄγε τοίνυν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, σκοπῶμεν τὰ ἐμοὶ πεπραγμένα πάντα καθ' ἐν ἑκάστον· οὕτω γὰρ μάλιστα δῆλον ἔσται ὅτι τε αὐτῶν ἀγαθὸν ἐστί καὶ ὅτι κακόν. ἀρξώμεθα δ', ἔφη, ἐκ τῆσδε τῆς ἀρχῆς, εἰ καὶ σοὶ ἀρκούντως δοκεῖ ἔχειν. σὺ γὰρ δήπου ἐπεὶ ἦσθου πολλοὺς πολεμίους ἡθροισμένους, καὶ τούτους ἐπὶ σέ καὶ τὴν σὴν χώραν ὀρμωμένους, εὐθὺς ἔπεμψες πρὸς τε τὸ Περσῶν κοινὸν συμμάχους αἰτούμενος καὶ πρὸς ἐμέ ἰδίᾳ δεόμενος πειρᾶσθαι αὐτὸν ἐμέ ἐλθεῖν ἡγούμενον, εἴ τινες Περσῶν ἴοιεν. οὐκ οὐν ἐγὼ ἐπέισθην τε ταῦτα ὑπὸ σοῦ καὶ παρεγενόμην ἄνδρας ἄγων σοι ὡς ἦν

ἐμοῦ |wrong, misdeed καὶ τὴν ἐν φίλοις δικαιοτάτην |proposal; subject; hypothesis

ἔχω |suggest ἐὰν γάρ τί σε φανῶ κακὸν πεποιηκώς,

|agree |be, do wrong; however μὴδὲν φαίνωμαι κακὸν
|with/to |wrong someone

πεποιηκώς |and not; not even, οὐ καὶ σὺ αὖ ὁμολογήσεις

μὴδὲν ὑπ' ἐμοῦ |be, do wrong; wrong necessity, ἔφη. Ἐὰν δὲ
|someone

δὴ καὶ ἀγαθὰ πεπραχώς σοι |visible, ... |be eager
|conspicuous

πραῖσαι ὡς ἐγὼ πλείστα ἐδυνάμην, οὐκ ἂν καὶ |(noun) praise

σοι |worthy ἦν μάλλον ἢ |blame, , Δίκαιον |at least then
|complaint

Ἄγε |well, then ἦ ὁ Κῦρος, σκοπῶμεν τὰ ἐμοὶ πεπραγμένα

πάντα καθ' ἐν ἑκάστον· οὕτω γὰρ |very |visible, ... ὁ
|conspicuous

τι τε αὐτῶν ἀγαθὸν ἐστι καὶ ὅ τι κακόν. ἀρξώμεθα δ', ἔφη,

ἐκ τῆσδε τῆς ἀρχῆς, εἰ καὶ σοὶ ἀρκούντως δοκεῖ ἔχειν. σὺ

γὰρ |perhaps; is it? perceive ... ολλοὺς πολεμίους |press close together;
|not so? | (mid) muster

καὶ τούτους ἐπὶ σέ καὶ τὴν σὴν |place |spur, rush at , εὐθὺς

ἔπεμψες πρὸς τε τὸ Περσῶν |communal, ... μάχους |ask for
|ordinary

καὶ πρὸς ἐμέ |private, ἴμενος |try, test αὐτὸν ἐμέ ἐλθεῖν
|personal

ἡγούμενον, εἴ τινες Περσῶν ἴοιεν. |certainly ἡτοῖ ἐπέισθην τε

ταῦτα ὑπὸ σοῦ καὶ |be beside, attend ... δρας ἄγων σοι ὡς ἦν

what I have offended. And as between friend and friend, I will lay down the only rule that is just and fair: if I can be shown to have done you harm, I will confess I am to blame, but if it appears that I have never injured you, not even in thought, will you not acquit me of all injustice towards you?"

"Needs must I," answered Cyaxares.

"And if I can show that I have done you service, and been zealous in your cause to the utmost of my power, may I not claim, instead of rebuke, some little meed of praise?"

"That were only fair," said Cyaxares.

"Then," said Cyrus, "let us go through all I have done, point by point, and see what is good in it and what is evil. Let us begin from the time when I assumed my generalship, if that is early enough. I think I am right in saying that it was because you saw your enemies gathering together against you, and ready to sweep over your land and you, that you sent to Persia asking for help, and to me in private, praying me to come, if I could, myself, at the head of any forces they might send. Was I not obedient to your word? Did I not come myself with the best and

*vocabulary***ἀδικία** injustice, offence**ἀναχωρέω** return, retreat ~heir**ἀσφαλής** safe, easy, steady, careful**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous**διαγωνίζομαι** contend against**εὐεργεσία** good deed, public service
~ergonomics**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism**καρπύω** bear fruit; harvest it**καταγιγνώσκω** judge negatively**κατανοέω** notice, realize, learn**κατηγορέω** accuse; indicate**κοινός** communal, ordinary**μετέχω** partake of**νίκη** (ι) victory ~Nike**πόνος** toil, suffering ~osteopenia**πότερος** which, whichever of two**σιγάω** (ι) be silent**σιωπάω** be silent**συμπέμπω** send with ~pomp**τιμωρέω** (ι) (+dat) take vengeance,
punish; aid one who has been attacked**τοίνυν** well, then**φείδομαι** spare, not use/harm ~aphid

δυνατὸν πλείστους τε καὶ ἀρίστους; Ἦλθες γὰρ οὖν, ἔφη.
 Ἐν τούτῳ τοῖνυν, ἔφη, πρῶτόν μοι εἰπὲ πότερον ἀδικίαν
 τινά μου πρὸς σέ κατέγνωσ ἢ μᾶλλον εὐεργεσίαν; Δηλόν,
 ἔφη ὁ Κναζάρης, ὅτι ἔκ γε τούτων εὐεργεσίαν. Τί γάρ,
 ἔφη, ἐπεὶ οἱ πολέμοι ἦλθον καὶ διαγωνίζεσθαι ἔδει πρὸς
 αὐτούς, ἐν τούτῳ κατενόησάς πού με ἢ πόνου ἀποστάντα
 ἢ τινος κινδύνου φεισάμενον; Οὐ μὰ τὸν Δί, ἔφη, οὐ μὲν δή.
 Τί γάρ, ἐπεὶ νίκης γενομένης σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς ἡμετέρας καὶ
 ἀναχωρησάντων τῶν πολεμίων παρεκάλουν ἐγώ σε ὅπως
 κοινῇ μὲν αὐτοὺς διώκοιμεν, κοινῇ δὲ τιμωροίμεθα, κοινῇ
 δὲ εἴ τι καλὸν ἀγαθὸν συμβαίνοι, τοῦτο καρποίμεθα,
 ἐν τούτοις ἔχεις τινά μου πλεονεξίαν κατηγορήσαι; ὁ
 μὲν δὴ Κναζάρης πρὸς τοῦτο ἐσίγα· ὁ δὲ Κῦρος πάλιν
 ἔλεγεν ὧδε· Ἄλλ' ἐπεὶ πρὸς τοῦτο σιωπᾶν ἥδιόν σοι ἢ
 ἀποκρίνασθαι, τόδε γ', ἔφη, εἰπὲ εἴ τι ἀδικεῖσθαι ἐνόμισας
 ὅτι, ἐπεὶ σοι οὐκ ἀσφαλὲς ἐδόκει εἶναι τὸ διώκειν, σὲ μὲν
 αὐτὸν ἀφῆκα τοῦ κινδύνου τούτου μετέχειν, ἱππέας δὲ τῶν
 σῶν συμπέμψαι μοι ἐδεόμην σου· εἰ γὰρ καὶ τοῦτο

|powerful, πλείστους τε καὶ ἀρίστους; ἦλθες γὰρ οὖν, ἔφη.
|possible

Ἐν τούτῳ |well, then ᾗ, πρῶτόν μοι εἶπε |which, |injustice,
|whichever |offence

τινά μου πρὸς σέ |judge negatively ἄλλον |good deed, |visible, ,
|public service |conspicuous

ἔφη ὁ Κναξάρης, ὅτι ἔκ γε τούτων |good deed, Τί γάρ,
|public service

ἔφη, ἐπεὶ οἱ πολέμοι ἦλθον καὶ |contend against ἔδει πρὸς

αὐτούς, ἐν τούτῳ |notice, realize, πού με ἦ |toil, |stand apart;
|learn |suffer- |exact payment

ἢ τινος |danger |spare , Οὐ μὰ τὸν Δι, ἔφη, οὐ μὲν δῆ.
|ing

Τί γάρ, ἐπεὶ |victory ,μενομένης σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς |our, my καὶ

|return, retreat τῶν πολεμίων παρεκάλουν ἐγὼ σε ὅπως

κοινῇ μὲν αὐτούς |chase , κοινῇ δέ |take vengeance, |κοινῇ
|punish, aid

δὲ εἴ τι καλὸν κάγαθόν συμβαίνοι, τοῦτο |bear fruit, ,
|harvest it

ἐν τούτοις ἔχεις τινά μου πλεονεξίαν |accuse; indicate ὁ

μὲν δῆ Κναξάρης πρὸς τοῦτο |be silent ἵ δὲ Κῦρος πάλιν

ἔλεγεν ὦδε· Ἄλλ' ἐπεὶ πρὸς τοῦτο |be silent |sweet σοι ἦ

ἀποκρίνασθαι, τόδε γ', ἔφη, εἰπὲ εἴ τι ἀδικεῖσθαι ἐνόμισας

ὅτι, ἐπεὶ σοι οὐκ |safe, easy, εἰ εἶναι τὸ |chase , σὲ μὲν
|steady, careful

αὐτὸν ἀφῆκα τοῦ |danger τούτου |partake of |rider δὲ τῶν

σῶν |συμπέμπω?: send with; or σου· εἰ γὰρ καὶ τοῦτο
|συμπέμπω?: send with

bravest I could bring?"

"You did indeed," answered Cyaxares.

"Tell me, then, before we go further, did you see any wrong in this? Was it not rather a service and a kindly act?" "Certainly," said Cyaxares, "so far as that went, I saw nothing but kindness." "Well, after the enemy had come, and we had to fight the matter out, did you ever see me shrink from toil or try to escape from danger?" "That I never did," said Cyaxares, "quite the contrary."

"And afterwards, when, through the help of heaven, victory was ours, and the enemy retreated, and I implored you to let us pursue them together, take vengeance on them together, win together the fruits of any gallant exploit we might achieve, can you accuse me then of self-seeking or self-aggrandisement?"

But at that Cyaxares was silent. Then Cyrus spoke again. "If you would rather not reply to that, tell me if you thought yourself injured because, when you considered pursuit unsafe, I relieved you of the risk, and only begged you to lend me some of your cavalry? If my offence lay in asking

*vocabulary***αἰτέω** ask for ~etiology**αἵτιος** blameworthy; the cause

~etiology

ἁλίσκομαι be captured ~helix**ἄμελέω** disregard; (impers.) of course**ἀναγκάζω** force, compel**ἀναίτιος** blameless ~etiology**δήπου** perhaps; is it not so?**ἐντεῦθεν** thence**ἐξορμάω** veer off course ~hormone**ἐπιτάσσω** enjoin; place near**ἐπιτρέπω** entrust, decide, allow

~trophy

ἕπω (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of**εὖθυμέω** (ῥ) to be of good cheer**κινδυνεύω** encounter danger; (+inf)

there is a danger that

μείων less, smaller**ὀργίζω** anger, provoke, annoy**οὐκοῦν** not so?; and so**ῥαίω** smite**σιγάω** (ι) be silent**φανερός** visible, conspicuous ~photon

αἰτῶν ἡδίκουν, ἄλλως τε καὶ προπαρεσχηκῶς ἐμαντόν
 σοι σύμμαχον, τοῦτ' αὖ παρὰ σοῦ, ἔφη, ἐπιδεικνύσθω.
 ἐπεὶ δ' αὖ καὶ πρὸς τοῦτο ἐσίγα ὁ Κναξάρης, Ἄλλ' εἰ
 μὴδὲ τοῦτο, ἔφη, βούλει ἀποκρίνασθαι, σὺ δὲ τούντεῦθεν
 λέγε εἴ τι αὖ ἡδίκουν ὅτι σοῦ ἀποκριναμένου ἐμοὶ ὥς οὐκ
 ἂν βούλοιο, εὐθυμουμένους ὁρῶν Μήδους, τούτου παύσας
 αὐτοὺς ἀναγκάζειν κινδυνεύσοντας ἵεναι, εἴ τι αὖ σοι δοκῶ
 τοῦτο χαλεπὸν ποιῆσαι ὅτι ἀμελήσας τοῦ ὀργίζεσθαι σοι
 ἐπὶ τούτοις πάλιν ἤτουν σε οὐ ἤδη οὔτε σοὶ μείον ὃν δοῦναι
 οὐδὲν οὔτε ῥᾶον Μήδοις ἐπιταχθῆναι· τὸν γὰρ βουλόμενον
 δῆπου ἔπεσθαι ἤτησά σε δοῦναί μοι. οὐκοῦν τούτου τυχῶν
 παρὰ σοῦ οὐδὲν ἦν, εἰ μὴ τούτους πείσαιμι. ἐλθὼν οὖν
 ἔπειθον αὐτοὺς καὶ οὓς ἔπεισα τούτους ἔχων ἐπορευόμην
 σοῦ ἐπιτρέψαντος. εἰ δὲ τοῦτο αἰτίας ἄξιον νομίζεις, οὐδ'
 ὅ τι ἂν διδῶς, ὥς ἔοικε, παρὰ σοῦ δέχεσθαι ἀναίτιόν ἐστιν.
 οὐκοῦν ἐξωρμήσαμεν οὕτως· ἐπειδὴ δ' ἐξήλθομεν, τί ἡμῖν
 πεπραγμένον οὐ φανερόν ἐστιν; οὐ τὸ στρατόπεδον ἤλωκε
 τῶν πολεμίων; οὐ τεθνᾶσι πολλοὶ

|ask for |be, do wrong; *ἰς τε καὶ προπαρεσχηκὼς ἑμαντόν*
|wrong someone

σοι σύμμαχον, τοῦτ' αὖ παρὰ σοῦ, ἔφη, ἐπιδεικνύσθω.

ἐπεὶ δ' αὖ καὶ πρὸς τοῦτο |be silent' *Κναξάρης, Ἄλλ' εἰ*

|and not; not even', *βούλει ἀποκρίνασθαι, σὺ δὲ* |thence

λέγε εἴ τι αὖ |be, do wrong; *ὑ ἀποκριναμένου ἐμοὶ ὥς οὐκ*
|wrong someone

ἂν βούλοιο, |to be of good cheer, ὧν Μήδους, τούτου |stop

αὐτοὺς |force, compel |encounter danger; '(+inf) *ἴ τι αὖ σοι δοκῶ*
|there is a danger that

τοῦτο |hard to bear *ἰῆσαι ὅτι* |disregard *τοῦ* |anger, pro- σοι
|voke, annoy

ἐπὶ τούτοις πάλιν |ask for *τε οὐ ἤδη οὔτε σοὶ* |less, ἔν δούναι
|smaller

οὐδὲν οὔτε ῥᾶον Μήδοις |enjoin; place *τὸν γὰρ βουλόμενον*
|near

|perhaps; is it not |ask for *σε δούναί μοι. |not so?; and so - τυχῶν*
|so?

παρὰ σοῦ οὐδὲν ἦν, εἰ μὴ τούτους πείσαιμι. ἐλθὼν οὖν

ἔπειθον αὐτοὺς καὶ οὗς ἔπεισα τούτους ἔχων ἐπορευόμεν

σοῦ |entrust, decide. *εἰ δὲ τοῦτο αἰτίας* |worthy |consider, -cūs-
|allow |tomary; believe

ὅ τι ἂν διδῶς, ὥς |seem, seem likely |accept, |blameless *ἔστιν.*
|beseem |receive,

|not so?; and so *ἴσαμεν οὕτως· ἐπειδὴ δ' ἐξήλθομεν, τί ἡμῖν*
|await

πεπραγμένον οὐ |visible, -γιν; *οὐ τὸ* |army camp |be captured
|conspicuous

τῶν πολεμίων; οὐ τεθνήσι πολλοὶ

for that, when I had already offered to work with you, side by side, you must prove it to me; and it will need some eloquence.”

He paused, but Cyaxares still kept silence. “Nay,” said Cyrus, “if you will not answer that either, tell me at least if my offence lay in what followed, when you said that you did not care to stop your Medes in their merry-making and drive them out into danger, do you think it was wrong in me, without waiting to quarrel on that score, to ask you for what I knew was the lightest boon you could grant and the lightest command you could lay on your soldiers? For I only asked that he who wished it might be allowed to follow me. And thus, when I had won your permission, I had won nothing, unless I could win them too. Therefore I went and tried persuasion, and some listened to me, and with these I set off on my march, holding my commission from your own self. So that, if you look on this act as blameworthy, it would seem that not even the acceptance of your own gifts can be free from blame. It was thus we started, and after we had gone, was there, I ask you, a single deed of mine that was not done in the light of day? Has not the enemy’s

*vocabulary***αὐξάνω** strengthen**βαρύνω** (ὄ) oppress ~baritone**ἐπικράτεια** domain, realm; control**ἐχθρη** hate**κωλύω** (ὄ) hinder, prevent**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle

~hoplite

πρόσθεν before (time, space)**προστίθῃμι** add; impose; (mp) agree;
side with ~thesis**προσχωρέω** go to, join, support**στερέω** steal, take**συντελέω** contribute, constitute**φρούριον** fort

τῶν ἐπὶ σέ ἐλθόντων; ἀλλὰ μὴν τῶν γε ζώντων ἐχθρῶν πολλοὶ μὲν ὅπλων ἐστέρηνται, πολλοὶ δὲ ἵππων· χρήματά γε μὴν τὰ τῶν φερόντων καὶ ἀγόντων τὰ σὰ πρόσθεν νῦν ὀρᾶς τοὺς σοὺς φίλους καὶ ἔχοντας καὶ ἄγοντας, τὰ μὲν σοί, τὰ δ' αὖ τοῖς ὑπὸ τὴν σὴν ἀρχήν. τὸ δὲ πάντων μέγιστον καὶ κάλλιστον, τὴν μὲν σὴν χώραν αὐξανομένην ὀρᾶς, τὴν δὲ τῶν πολεμίων μειουμένην· καὶ τὰ μὲν τῶν πολεμίων φρούρια ἐχόμενα, τὰ δὲ σὰ τὰ πρότερον εἰς τὴν Σύρων ἐπικράτειαν συντελοῦντα νῦν τάναντία σοὶ προσκεχωρηκότα· τούτων δὲ εἴ τι κακόν σοι ἢ εἴ τι μὴ ἀγαθόν σοι μαθεῖν μὲν ἔγωγε βούλεσθαι οὐκ οἶδ' ὅπως ἂν εἴποιμι· ἀκοῦσαι μέντοι γε οὐδὲν κωλύει. ἀλλὰ λέγε ὅ τι γινώσκεις περὶ αὐτῶν. ὁ μὲν δὴ Κύρος οὕτως εἰπὼν ἐπαύσατο· ὁ δὲ Κναξάρης ἔλεξε πρὸς ταῦτα τάδε.

Ἄλλ', ὦ Κῦρε, ὥς μὲν ταῦτα ἃ σὺ πεποιήκας κακά ἐστιν οὐκ οἶδ' ὅπως χρὴ λέγειν· εὖ γε μέντοι, ἔφη, ἴσθι ὅτι ταῦτα τὰγαθὰ τοιαῦτά ἐστιν οἷα ὅσῳ πλείονα φαίνεται, τοσούτῳ μᾶλλον ἐμὲ βαρύνει. τὴν τε γὰρ χώραν, ἔφη, ἐγὼ ἂν τὴν

camp been taken? Have not hundreds of your assailants fallen? And hundreds been deprived of their horses and their arms? Is not the spoiler spoiled? The cattle and the goods of those who harried your land are now in the hands of your friends, they are brought to you, or to your subjects. And, above all and beyond all, you see your own country growing great and powerful and the land of your enemy brought low. Strongholds of his are in your power, and your own that were torn from you in other days by the Syrian domination are now restored to you again. I cannot say I should be glad to learn that any of these things can be bad for you, or short of good, but I am ready to listen, if so it is. Speak, tell me your judgment of it all."

Then Cyrus paused, and Cyaxares made answer:

"To call what you have done evil, Cyrus, is impossible. But your benefits are of such a kind that the more they multiply upon me, the heavier burden do they bring. I would far rather," he went

*vocabulary***ἀγνώμων** headstrong, unfeeling**ἄρα** interrogative pcl**ἄρή** bane, harm; prayer**ἄρην** ἄρνός (m, 3) lamb, sheep; wool**ἄρης** war, warlike spirit**ἀτιμία** (τι) dishonor**αὐξάνω** strengthen**γνώριμος** known (a person) ~gnostic**διατίθηναι** arrange; set out goods for sale ~thesis**δωρέω** give ~donate**ἐνθυμέομαι** (υ) take to heart**εὐφραίνω** gladden ~frenzy**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism**θεραπεύω** help, serve ~therapy**κατανοέω** notice, realize, learn**κατατίθηναι** put down, deposit, lay aside ~thesis**κτάομαι** acquire, possess**λυπέω** (υ) annoy, distress**πη** somewhere, somehow**πλουτίζω** enrich**σαντοῦ** yourself**στρατεία** expedition, campaign**ὑπήκοος** heeding, subject**φρουρά** guard duty, a watch**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch
~phylactery

σὴν ἐβουλόμην τῇ ἐμῇ δυνάμει μείζω ποιεῖν μᾶλλον ἢ τὴν
ἐμὴν ὑπὸ σοῦ ὁρᾶν οὕτως αὐξανομένην· σοὶ μὲν γὰρ ταῦτα
ποιοῦντι καλά, ἐμοὶ δέ γέ ἐστὶ πῃ ταῦτὰ ἀτιμίαν φέροντα.
καὶ χρήματα οὕτως ἂν μοι δοκῶ ἡδιόν σοι δωρεῖσθαι ἢ
παρὰ σοῦ οὕτω λαμβάνειν ὥς σὺ νῦν ἐμοὶ δίδως· τούτοις
γὰρ πλουτιζόμενος ὑπὸ σοῦ καὶ μᾶλλον αἰσθάνομαι οἷς
πενέστερος γίγνομαι. καὶ τοὺς γ' ἐμοὺς ὑπηκόους ἰδὼν
μικρά γε ἀδικουμένους ὑπὸ σοῦ ἦττον ἂν δοκῶ λυπεῖσθαι ἢ
νῦν ὁρῶν ὅτι μεγάλα ἀγαθὰ πεπόνθασιν ὑπὸ σοῦ. εἰ δέ σοι,
ἔφη, ταῦτα δοκῶ ἀγνωμόνως ἐνθυμεῖσθαι, μὴ ἐν ἐμοὶ αὐτὰ
ἀλλ' εἰς σὲ τρέψας πάντα καταθέασαι οἷά σοι φαίνεται. τί
γὰρ ἂν, εἴ τις κύνας, οὓς σὺ τρέφεις φυλακῆς ἕνεκα σαντοῦ
τε καὶ τῶν σῶν, τούτους θεραπεύων γνωριμωτέρους
ἐαυτῷ ἢ σοὶ ποιήσειεν, ἂρ' ἂν σε εὐφράναι τούτῳ τῷ
θεραπεύματι; εἰ δὲ τοῦτό σοι δοκεῖ μικρὸν εἶναι, ἐκείνο
κατανόησον· εἴ τις τοὺς σὲ θεραπεύοντας, οὓς σὺ καὶ
φρουρᾶς καὶ στρατείας ἕνεκα κέκτησαι, τούτους οὕτω
διατιθεῖη ὥστ' ἐκείνου μᾶλλον ἢ σοῦ βούλεσθαι εἶναι, ἂρ'

σὴν ἐβουλόμην τῇ ἐμῇ δυνάμει μείζω ποιεῖν μᾶλλον ἢ τὴν
 ἐμὴν ὑπὸ σοῦ ὁρᾶν οὕτως |strengthen σοὶ μὲν γὰρ ταῦτα
 ποιοῦντι καλὰ, ἐμοὶ δέ γέ ἐστὶ πη ταῦτα |dishonor φέροντα.
 καὶ |possession, money, busi- ness ἂν μοι δοκῶ |sweet σοι δωρεῖσθαι ἢ
 παρὰ σοῦ οὕτω λαμβάνειν ὥς σὺ νῦν ἐμοὶ δίδως· τούτοις
 γὰρ |enrich ὑπὸ σοῦ καὶ μᾶλλον |perceive οἷς
 πενέστερος γίγνομαι. καὶ τοὺς γ' ἐμοὺς |heeding, subject ἰδὼν
 |small γε |be, do wrong; wrong someone πὸ σοῦ ἦττον ἂν δοκῶ |annoy, distress ἢ
 νῦν ὁρῶν ὅτι μεγάλα ἀγαθὰ πεπόνθασιν ὑπὸ σοῦ. εἰ δέ σοι,
 ἔφη, ταῦτα δοκῶ |headstrong, |take to heart , μὴ ἐν ἐμοὶ αὐτὰ
 ἀλλ' εἰς σέ |divert πάντα |put down οἷά σοι φαίνεται. τί
 γὰρ ἂν, εἴ τις |dog , οὓς σὺ |nurture |guard, |be- |yourself
 |prison, |cause, |te καὶ τῶν σῶν, τούτους |help, serve |watch |that
 |known (a person)
 ἑαυτῷ ἢ σοὶ ποιήσειεν, ἂρ' ἂν σε |gladden τούτῳ τῷ
 θεραπεύματι; εἰ δὲ τοῦτό σοι δοκεῖ |small εἶναι, ἐκείνο
 |notice, realize, learn εἴ τις τοὺς σέ |help, serve , οὓς σὺ καὶ
 |guard duty, |expedition, |be- |acquire , τούτους οὕτω
 |watch |campaign |cause, |that
 |arrange; set out' ἐκείνου μᾶλλον ἢ σοῦ βούλεσθαι εἶναι, ἂρ'
 goods for sale

on, "have made your country great by own power than see mine exalted in this way by you. These deeds of yours are a crown of glory to you; but they bring dishonour to me. And for the wealth, I would rather have made largess of it to yourself than receive it at your hands in the way you give it now. Goods so gotten only leave me the poorer. And for my subjects—I think I would have suffered less if you had injured them a little than I suffer now when I see how much they owe you. Perhaps," he added, "you find it inhuman of me to feel thus, but I would ask you to forget me and imagine that you are in my place and see how it would appear to you then. Suppose a friend of yours were to take care of your dogs, dogs that you bred up to guard yourself and your house, such care that he made them fonder of him than of yourself, would you be pleased with him for his attention? Or take another instance, if that one seems too slight: suppose a friend of yours were to do so much for your own followers,

*vocabulary***ἄημι** blow**ἄρα** interrogative pcl**ἄρή** bane, harm; prayer**ἄρῃν** ἄρνός (m, 3) lamb, sheep; wool**ἄρης** war, warlike spirit**ἀσπάζομαι** greet, salute**εἴτα** then, therefore, next**ἐμφορής** similar**ἔπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of**εὐεργεσία** good deed, public service

~ergonomics

εὐφραίνω gladden ~frenzy**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism**θεραπεύω** help, serve ~therapy**κατακαίνω** kill**μέτριος** medium, moderate**οἰκεῖος** household, familiar, proper**οἴχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone**ὅπόσος** as many as, how many, how great**πάθος** -ους (n, 3) an experience, passion, condition**Πέρσης** Persian**πλουτέω** be rich**φιλόφρων** kindly

ἂν ἀντὶ ταύτης τῆς εὐεργεσίας χάριν αὐτῷ εἰδείης; τί
 δέ, ὃ μάλιστα ἄνθρωποι ἀσπάζονται τε καὶ θεραπεύουσιν
 οἰκειότατα, εἴ τις τὴν γυναῖκα τὴν σὴν οὕτω θεραπεύσειεν
 ὥστε φιλεῖν αὐτὴν μᾶλλον ποιήσειεν ἑαυτὸν ἢ σέ, ἅρ'
 ἂν σε τῇ εὐεργεσίᾳ ταύτῃ εὐφράναι; πολλοῦ γ' ἂν οἶμαι
 καὶ δέοι· ἀλλ' εὖ οἶδ' ὅτι πάντων ἂν μάλιστα ἀδικοίῃ σε
 τοῦτο ποιήσας. ἵνα δὲ εἴπω καὶ τὸ μάλιστα τῷ ἐμῷ πάθει
 ἐμφερές, εἴ τις οὓς σὺ ἤγαγες Πέρσας οὕτω θεραπεύσειεν
 ὥστε αὐτῷ ἥδιον ἔπεσθαι ἢ σοί, ἅρ' ἂν φίλον αὐτὸν
 νομίζεις; οἶμαι μὲν οὐ, ἀλλὰ πολεμιώτερον ἂν ἢ εἰ πολλοὺς
 αὐτῶν κατακάνοι. τί δ', εἴ τις τῶν σῶν φίλων φιλοφρόνως
 σου εἰπόντος λαμβάνειν ὅποσα ἐθέλοι εἶτα τοῦτο ἀκούσας
 λαβὼν οἴχοιτο ἅπαντα ὅποσα δύναιτο, καὶ αὐτὸς μὲν γε
 τοῖς σοῖς πλουτοίῃ, σὺ δὲ μηδὲ μετρίοις ἔχοις χρῆσθαι,
 ἅρ' ἂν δύναιο τὸν τοιοῦτον ἄμεμπτον φίλον νομίζειν; νῦν
 μέντοι ἐγώ, ὦ Κῦρε, εἰ μὴ ταῦτα ἀλλὰ τοιαῦτα ὑπὸ σοῦ
 δοκῶ πεπονθέναι. σὺ γὰρ ἀληθῆ λέγεις· εἰπόντος ἐμοῦ
 τοὺς θέλοντας ἄγειν λαβὼν ὥχου πᾶσάν μου τὴν

ἀν ἀντὶ ταύτης τῆς ἐνεργείας |grace αὐτῷ εἰδείης; τί

δέ, ὁ μάλιστα ἄνθρωποι |greet, salute τε καὶ |help, serve

|household, familiar, proper |τις τὴν γυναῖκα τὴν σὴν οὕτω |help, serve

ὥστε |love αὐτὴν μᾶλλον ποιήσειεν ἑαυτὸν ἢ σέ, ἂρ'

ἂν σε τῇ εὐεργεσίᾳ ταύτῃ |gladden , πολλοῦ γ' ἂν οἶμαι

καὶ δέοι· ἀλλ' εὖ οἶδ' ὅτι πάντων ἂν μάλιστα | be, do wrong;
| wrong someone

τοῦτο ποιήσας. ἵνα δὲ εἴπω καὶ τὸ μάλιστα τῷ ἐμῷ | an experience,
passion, condition

|similar , εἴ τις οὖς σὺ ἤγαγες Πέρσας οὕτω |help, serve

ὥστε αὐτῷ |sweet ἔπεσθαι ἢ σοί, ἂρ' ἂν φίλον αὐτὸν

consider , -cus- μέν οὐ, ἀλλὰ πολεμιώτερον ἂν ἢ εἰ πολλοὺς
tomary; believe

αὐτῶν |kill . τί δ', εἴ τις τῶν σῶν φίλων |kindly

σου εἰπόντος λαμβάνειν | as/how many/great | then, there-fore, next ἀκούσας

λαβὼν |come, go ἵπαντα |as/how m̃any/great . . αὶ αὐτὸς μὲν γε

τοῖς σοῖς |be rich , *σὺ δὲ* |and |medium,
 |not; |moderate *ἔχουσιν χρᾶται,*

$\hat{\alpha}\rho'$ ἂν δύναται τὸν τοιοῦτον ἀμεμπτον φίλον	not even	consider , cus- tomary; believe
--	-------------	------------------------------------

¶however ἄγω, ὦ Κῦρε, εἰ μὴ ταῦτα ἀλλὰ τοιαῦτα ὑπὸ σου

δοκῶ πεπονθέναι. σὺ γὰρ

true;
careful

 λέγεις· εἰπόντος ἐμοῦ

τοὺς θέλοντας ἄγειν λαβὼν | come, go | σάν μου τήν

men you kept to guard you and to fight for you, that they would rather serve in his train than yours, would you be grateful to him for his kindness? Or let me take the tenderest of human ties: suppose a friend of yours paid court to the wife of your bosom so that in the end he made her love him more than yourself, would he rejoice your heart by his courtesy? Far from it, I trow; he who did this, you would say, did you the greatest wrong in all the world. And now, to come nearest to my own case, suppose some one paid such attention to your Persians that they learnt to follow him instead of you, would you reckon that man your friend? No; but a worse enemy than if he had slain a thousand. Or again, say you spoke in all friendship to a friend and bade him take what he wished, and straightway he took all he could lay hands on and carried it off, and so grew rich with your wealth, and you were left in utter poverty, could you say that friend was altogether blameless? And I, Cyrus, I feel that you have treated me, if not in that way, yet in a way exactly like it. What you say is true enough: I did allow you to take what you liked and go, and you took the whole of my power and

vocabulary

ἄξιωμα -τος (n, 3) honor; decree
ἀποστερέω despoil, defraud
ἀτιμάζω (t) insult, dishonor
αὐξάνω strengthen
αὕξις -εως (f) growth
ἐπειδάν when, after
ἐρῆμος empty
καταλιμπάνω leave behind, abandon
κῆδος distress, hurt; mp: care about
 (+gen) ~heinous

κρείσσων more powerful; better
μέμφομαι blame; reject
πεῖρα an attempt
πείρω pierce, run through ~pierce
ῥώμη strength, might
ὕψιχον -ῶ cumin
ὕψιχος heeding, subject
ὕπολαμβάνω take under one's
 support, seize; speak up; imagine
 ~epilepsy
χαρίζομαι gratify ~charisma

δύναμιν, ἐμέ δὲ ἔρημον κατέλιπες· καὶ νῦν ἂ ἔλαβες τῇ ἐμῇ δυνάμει ἄγεις δὴ μοι καὶ τὴν ἐμὴν χώραν αὔξεις σὺν τῇ ἐμῇ ρώμῃ· ἐγὼ δὲ δοκῶ οὐδὲν συναίτιος ὢν τῶν ἀγαθῶν παρέχειν ἐμαυτὸν ὥσπερ γυνὴ εὖ ποιεῖν, καὶ τοῖς τε ἄλλοις ἀνθρώποις καὶ τοῖσδε τοῖς ἐμοῖς ὑπηκόοις σὺ μὲν ἀνὴρ φαίνη, ἐγὼ δ' οὐκ ἄξιος ἀρχῆς. ταῦτά σοι δοκεῖ εὐεργετήματ' εἶναι, ὦ Κῦρε; εἰ ἴσθ' ὅτι εἴ τι ἐμοῦ ἐκήδου, οὐδενὸς ἂν οὕτω με ἀποστερεῖν ἐφυλάττου ὡς ἀξιώματος καὶ τιμῆς. τί γὰρ ἐμοὶ πλέον τὸ τὴν γῆν πλατύνεσθαι, αὐτὸν δὲ ἀτιμάζεσθαι; οὐ γάρ τοι ἐγὼ Μήδων ἦρχον διὰ τὸ κρείττων αὐτῶν πάντων εἶναι, ἀλλὰ μάλλον διὰ τὸ αὐτοὺς τούτους ἀξιοῦν ἡμᾶς αὐτῶν πάντα βελτίονας εἶναι.

Καὶ ὁ Κῦρος ἔτι λέγοντος αὐτοῦ ὑπολαβὼν εἶπε· Πρὸς τῶν θεῶν, ἔφη, ὦ θεῖε, εἴ τι καγὼ σοι πρότερον ἐχαρισάμην, καὶ σὺ νῦν ἐμοὶ χάρισαι ὃ ἂν δεηθῶ σου· παῦσαι, ἔφη, τὸ νῦν εἶναι μεμφόμενός μοι· ἐπειδὰν δὲ πείραν ἡμῶν λάβῃς πῶς ἔχομεν πρὸς σέ, ἐὰν μὲν δὴ σοι φαίνεται τὰ ὑπ' ἐμοῦ πεπραγμένα ἐπὶ τῷ σῷ ἀγαθῷ

δύναμιν, ἐμὲ δὲ ἔρημον |leave behind, |and now ἂ ἔλαβες τῇ
 ἐμῇ δυνάμει ἄγεις δὴ μοι καὶ τὴν ἐμὴν |place αὐξείς
 σὺν τῇ ἐμῇ |strength, ἔγὼ δὲ δοκῶ οὐδὲν συναίτιος ὢν τῶν
 ἀγαθῶν |furnish ἑμαυτὸν ὥσπερ γυνὴ εὖ ποιεῖν, καὶ τοῖς
 τε ἄλλοις ἀνθρώποις καὶ τοῖσδε τοῖς ἐμοῖς ὑπηκόοις σὺ
 μὲν ἀνὴρ φαίνῃ, ἐγὼ δ' οὐκ |worthy ῥχῆς. ταῦτά σοι δοκεῖ
 εὐεργετήματ' εἶναι, ὦ Κῦρε; εὖ ἴσθ' ὅτι εἴ τι ἐμοῦ |distress ,
 οὐδενὸς ἂν οὕτω με |despoil, |guard; ὥς |honor;
 |defraud |watch |decree
 καὶ |honor, τί γὰρ ἐμοὶ πλεον τὸ τὴν γῆν πλατύνεσθαι,
 |value
 αὐτὸν δὲ |dishonor , οὐ γάρ τοι ἐγὼ Μήδων ἦρχον διὰ
 τὸ κρείττων αὐτῶν πάντων εἶναι, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον διὰ τὸ
 αὐτοὺς τούτους |consider ἡ, wōr- ὑτῶν πάντα βελτίονας εἶναι.
 |thy, fitting
 Καὶ ὁ Κῦρος ἔτι λέγοντος αὐτοῦ |take under one's support, seize; speak
 |up; imagine
 τῶν θεῶν, ἔφη, ὦ θεῖε, εἴ τι καὶ γὰρ σοι πρότερον
 |gratify , καὶ σὺ νῦν ἐμοὶ |gratify ὁ ἂν δεηθῶ σου·
 |stop , ἔφη, τὸ νῦν εἶναι |blame; reject μοι· |when, δὲ
 |after
 πείραν ἡμῶν λάβῃς |how? why? , πρὸς σέ, ἐὰν μὲν δὴ σοι
 φαίνεται τὰ ὑπ' ἐμοῦ πεπραγμένα ἐπὶ τῷ σῷ ἀγαθῷ

went, leaving me desolate, and to-day you bring the spoil you have won with my forces, and lay it so grandly at my feet—magnificent! And you make my country great through the help of my own might, while I have no part or lot in the performance, but must step in at the end, like a woman, to receive your favours, while in the eyes of all men, not least my faithful subjects yonder, you are the man, and I—I am not fit to wear a crown. Are these, I ask you, Cyrus, are these the deeds of a benefactor? Nay, had you been kind as you are kin, above all else you would have been careful not to rob me of my dignity and honour. What advantage is it to me for my lands to be made broad if I myself am dishonoured? When I ruled the Medes, I ruled them not because I was stronger than all of them, but because they themselves thought that our race was in all things better than theirs.”

But while he was still speaking Cyrus broke in on his words, crying:

”Uncle of mine, by the heaven above us, if I have ever shown you any kindness, be kind to me now. Do not find fault with me any more, wait, and put me to the test, and learn how I feel towards you, and if you see that what I have done has really brought

*vocabulary***ἀποστρέφω** turn back, turn off course

~atrophy

ἄρτι at the same time**ἀσπάζομαι** greet, salute**δείπνον** meal, food**δείπνος** meal, food**ἐγκέλευστος** urged on**ἐπινεύω** nod**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable**ἔπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act,

uncommon) handle, take care of

εὐεργέτης -ου (m, 1) benefactor**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism**κατασκευάζω** equip, build**μέλω** concern, interest, be one's responsibility**μέμφομαι** blame; reject**Πέρσης** Persian**σκηνή** tent; stage**σχολή** rest, leisure

πεποιημένα, ἀσπαζομένου τέ μου σε ἀντασπάζου με
 εὐεργέτην τε νόμιζε, ἐὰν δ' ἐπὶ θάτερα, τότε μοι μέμφου.
 Ἄλλ' ἴσως μέντοι, ἔφη ὁ Κναξάρης, καλῶς λέγεις· καγὼ
 οὕτω ποιήσω. Τί οὖν; ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ἦ καὶ φιλήσω σε; Εἰ
 σὺ βούλει, ἔφη. Καὶ οὐκ ἀποστρέψῃ με ὥσπερ ἄρτι; Οὐκ
 ἀποστρέψομαι, ἔφη. καὶ ὃς ἐφίλησεν αὐτόν.

Ὡς δὲ εἶδον οἱ Μῆδοί τε καὶ οἱ Πέρσαι καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι
 πᾶσι γὰρ ἔμελεν ὅ τι ἐκ τούτων ἔσοιτο, εὐθὺς ἤσθησάν
 τε καὶ ἐφαιδρύνθησαν. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος δὲ καὶ ὁ Κναξάρης
 ἀναβάντες ἐπὶ τοὺς ἵππους ἡγοῦντο, καὶ ἐπὶ μὲν τῷ
 Κναξάρῃ οἱ Μῆδοι εἶποντο Κῦρος γὰρ αὐτοῖς οὕτως
 ἐπένευσεν, ἐπὶ δὲ τῷ Κύρῳ οἱ Πέρσαι, οἱ δ' ἄλλοι
 ἐπὶ τούτοις. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον
 καὶ κατέστησαν τὸν Κναξάρην εἰς τὴν κατεσκευασμένην
 σκηνήν, οἷς μὲν ἐτέτακτο παρεσκεύαζον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια τῷ
 Κναξάρῃ· οἱ δὲ Μῆδοι ὅσον χρόνον σχολὴν πρὸ δείπνου
 ἤγεν ὁ Κναξάρης ἦσαν πρὸς αὐτόν, οἱ μὲν καὶ αὐτοὶ καθ'
 ἑαυτούς, οἱ δὲ πλείστοι ὑπὸ Κύρου ἐγκέλευστοι, δῶρα

πεποιημένα, |greet, salute τέ μού σε ἀντασπάζου με

|benefactor τε |consider ^ἔcus- ἐπὶ θάτερα, τότε μοι |blame;
|tomary; believe |reject

Ἄλλ' |equal |however ἔφη ὁ Κυαξάρης, καλῶς λέγεις· καὶ γὰρ

οὕτω ποιήσω. Τί οὖν; ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ἦ καὶ |love σε; Εἰ

σὺ βούλει, ἔφη. Καὶ οὐκ |turn back με ὥσπερ |at the same time

|turn back , ἔφη. καὶ ὅς |love αὐτόν.

Ὡς δὲ εἶδον οἱ Μῆδοί τε καὶ οἱ Πέρσαι καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι

πᾶσι γὰρ |be in/on the mind οὕτων ἔσοιτο, εὐθὺς |be pleased, enjoy

τε καὶ ἐφαιδρύνθησαν. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος δὲ καὶ ὁ Κυαξάρης

|go up, embark ἐπὶ τοὺς ἵππους ἡγοῦντο, καὶ ἐπὶ μὲν τῷ

Κυαξάρῃ οἱ Μῆδοι εἶποντο Κῦρος γὰρ αὐτοῖς οὕτως

|nod , ἐπὶ δὲ τῷ Κύρῳ οἱ Πέρσαι, οἱ δ' ἄλλοι

ἐπὶ τούτοις. ἐπεὶ δὲ |arrive ἐπὶ τὸ |army camp

καὶ |set down, land; ὃν Κυαξάρην εἰς τὴν |equip, build
|become, be

|tent; , οἷς μὲν |arrange |prepare, render τὰ |fit, suitable τῷ
|stage

Κυαξάρῃ· οἱ δὲ Μῆδοι ὅσον χρόνον |rest, |before, ἔπνου
|leisure |forward

ἦγεν ὁ Κυαξάρης ἦσαν πρὸς αὐτόν, οἱ μὲν καὶ αὐτοὶ καθ'

ἑαυτοὺς, οἱ δὲ πλείστοι ὑπὸ Κύρου |urged on , |gift

you good, then, when I embrace you, embrace me in return and call me your benefactor, and if not, you may blame me as you please.”

”Perhaps,” answered Cyaxares, ”you are right. I will do as you wish.”

”Then I may kiss you?” said Cyrus.

”Yes, if it pleases you. ”And you will not turn aside as you did just now?” ”No, I will not turn aside.” And he kissed him.

And when the Medes saw it and the Persians and all the allies—for all were watching to see how matters would shape—joy came into their hearts and gladness lit up their faces. Then Cyrus and Cyaxares mounted their horses and rode back, and the Medes fell in behind Cyaxares, at a nod from Cyrus, and behind Cyrus the Persians, and the others behind them. And when they reached the camp and brought Cyaxares to the splendid tent, those who were appointed made everything ready for him, and while he was waiting for the banquet his Medes presented themselves, some of their own accord, it is true, but most were sent by Cyrus. And they brought him gifts; one came

vocabulary

ἄθυμος (ῥ) having low morale ~fume
ἀμελέω disregard; (impers.) of course
ἀμελής careless
αὔριον tomorrow
δειπνέω eat, dine
δείπνον meal, food
δείπνος meal, food
δεῦρο here, come here!
δωρέω give ~donate
ἐκπωμα -τος (n, 3) drinking cup
ἐπαίρω lift, raise ~heresy
ἐπικαίριος at a fitting time; serious;
 vital
ἐσθής clothes ~vest
εὖωχέω fete, feed well
ἡδονή pleasure

θαρσέω be of good heart
θεραπεύω help, serve ~therapy
μεταγινώσκω change one's mind
 ~gnostic
οἶνοχόος -ῥ cupbearer ~wine
οὐκουν certainly not
προσέχω direct to; think about
πρόσθεν before (time, space)
προστίθηναι add; impose; (mp) agree;
 side with ~thesis
στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier,
 mercenary ~strategy
συνδειπνέω eat with
τιμάω (ι) honor, exalt
τιμόω honor, exalt
ὑβριστος wanton, outrageous

ἄγοντες, ὁ μὲν τις οἶνοχόον καλόν, ὁ δ' ὀψοποιὸν ἀγαθόν, ὁ δ' ἄρτοποιόν, ὁ δὲ μουσουργόν, ὁ δ' ἐκπώματα, ὁ δ' ἐσθήτα καλήν· πᾶς δέ τις ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ ἐν γέ τι ὧν εἰλήφει ἐδωρείτο αὐτῷ· ὥστε τὸν Κυαξάρην μεταγιννώσκειν ὡς οὔτε ὁ Κῦρος ἀφίστη αὐτοὺς ἀπ' αὐτοῦ οὔθ' οἱ Μῆδοι ἡττόν τι αὐτῷ προσείχον τὸν νοῦν ἢ καὶ πρόσθεν.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ δείπνου ὥρα ἦν, καλέσας ὁ Κυαξάρης ἡξίου τὸν Κῦρον διὰ χρόνου ἰδόντα αὐτὸν συνδειπνεῖν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἔφη· Μὴ δὴ σὺ κέλευε, ὦ Κυαξάρη· ἢ οὐχ ὁρᾷς ὅτι οὗτοι οἱ παρόντες ὑφ' ἡμῶν πάντες ἐπαιρόμενοι πάρεισιν; οὔκουν καλῶς ἂν πράττοιμι εἰ τούτων ἀμελῶν τὴν ἐμὴν ἡδονὴν θεραπεύειν δοκοίην. ἀμελεῖσθαι δὲ δοκοῦντες στρατιῶται οἱ μὲν ἀγαθοὶ πολὺ ἀθυμότεροι γίνονται, οἱ δὲ πονηροὶ πολὺ ὑβριστότεροι. ἀλλὰ σὺ μὲν, ἔφη, ἄλλως τε καὶ ὁδὸν μακρὰν ἦκων δείπνει ἤδη· καὶ εἴ τινές σε τιμῶσιν, ἀντασπάζου καὶ εὐώχει αὐτούς, ἵνα σε καὶ θαρρήσωσιν· ἐγὼ δ' ἀπιὼν ἐφ' ἅπερ λέγω τρέφομαι. αὔριον δ', ἔφη, πρὸ δεῦρ' ἐπὶ τὰς σὰς θύρας παρέσονται οἱ ἐπικαίριοι,

ἄγοντες, ὁ μὲν τις |cupbearer καλόν, ὁ δ' ὀψοποιὸν ἀγαθόν, ὁ
 δ' ἄρτοποιόν, ὁ δὲ μουσουργόν, ὁ δ' |drinking cup ὁ δ' |clothes
 καλήν· πᾶς δέ τις ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ ἔν γέ τι ὦν εἰλήφει
 ἐδωρεῖτο αὐτῷ· ὥστε τὸν Κναξάρην |change one's mind ὥς
 οὔτε ὁ Κῦρος |stand apart; ὅς ἀπ' αὐτοῦ οὔθ' οἱ Μῆδοι ἡττόν
 |exact payment
 τι αὐτῷ |direct to; τὸν νοῦν ἢ καὶ πρόσθεν.
 |think about

Ἐπεὶ δὲ δεῖπνου |season, time...λέσας ὁ Κναξάρης |consider `wor-
 |thy, fitting
 Κῦρον διὰ χρόνου ἰδόντα αὐτὸν |eat with . ὁ δὲ Κῦρος
 ἔφη· Μὴ δὴ σὺν κέλευε, ὦ Κναξάρη· ἢ οὐχ ὀράς ὅτι οὔτοι οἱ
 παρόντες ὑφ' ἡμῶν πάντες |lift, raise πάρειςιν; |certainly not
 καλῶς ἂν πράττομι εἰ τούτων ἀμελῶν τὴν ἐμὴν |pleasure
 |help, serve δοκοίην. |disregard δὲ δοκοῦντες |soldier,
 |mercenary
 οἱ μὲν ἀγαθοὶ πολὺ |having low morale νται, οἱ δὲ |oppressed; knavish;
 |useless
 πολὺ |wanton, ἀλλὰ σὺν μὲν, ἔφη, ἄλλως τε καὶ
 |outrageous
 ὁδὸν μακράν |be |eat, dine ἤδη· καὶ εἴ τινές σε τιμῶσιν,
 |present,
 ἀντασπάζου καὶ |have |feed well ἴς, ἵνα σε καὶ |be of good heart
 |arrived
 ἐγὼ δ' |be absent, 'go ἵπερ λέγω |divert |tomorrow', ἔφη,
 |away, return
 πρῶ |here, come here! ἵς |door παρέσονται οἱ |at a fitting time; serious; vi-
 |tal

with a beautiful cup-bearer, another with an admirable cook, a third with a baker, a fourth with a musician, while others brought cups and goblets and beautiful apparel; almost every one gave something out of the spoils they had won. So that the mood of Cyaxares changed, and he seemed to see that Cyrus had not stolen his subjects from him, and that they made no less account of him than they used to do.

Now when the hour came for the banquet, Cyaxares sent to Cyrus and begged him to share it: it was so long, he said, since they had met. But Cyrus answered, "Bid me not to the feast, good uncle. Do you not see that all these soldiers of ours have been raised by us to the pitch of expectation? And it were ill on my part if I seemed to neglect them for the sake of my private pleasure. If soldiers feel themselves neglected even the good become faint-hearted, and the bad grow insolent. With yourself it is different, you have come a long journey and you must fall to without delay, and if your subjects do you honour, welcome them and give them good cheer, that there may be confidence between you and them, but I must go and attend to the matters of which I speak. Early to-morrow morning," he added, "our chief officers will present themselves at your gate to hear from

*vocabulary***ἄλκιμος** brave; sturdily made

~Alexander

ἀνύω accomplish, pass over, complete**βιάζω** use force on, violate**βιάω** use force against, overcome**δεῖπνον** meal, food**δεῖπνος** meal, food**διαλύω** break up; relax, weaken**ἐμβάλλω** throw in; inspire a mental state ~ballistic**ἰσχυρός** (ῥ) strong, forceful, violent**μηχανάομαι** build, contrive

~mechanism

ὅπη wherever, however**παραμένω** stay with ~remain**πότερος** which, whichever of two**προσγίγνομαι** become ally to**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war, campaign ~strategy**στρατιά** army ~strategy**συλλέγω** collect, assemble ~legion**συμπράσσω** cooperate**συνδοκέω** seem good also**τοιόσδε** such**ὕμέτερος** (ῥ) yours**χειρόω** dominate, subdue

ὅπως βουλευσώμεθα πάντες σὺν σοὶ ὅ τι χρὴ ποιεῖν τὸ ἐκ τοῦδε. σὺ δ' ἡμῖν ἔμβαλε βουλὴν παρῶν περὶ τούτου, πότερον ἔτι δοκεῖ στρατεύεσθαι ἢ καιρὸς ἤδη διαλύειν τὴν στρατιάν. ἐκ τούτου ὁ μὲν Κναξάρης ἀμφὶ δείπνον εἶχεν, ὁ δὲ Κῦρος συλλέξας τοὺς ἱκανωτάτους τῶν φίλων καὶ φρονεῖν καὶ συμπράττειν, εἴ τι δέοι, ἔλεξε τοιάδε.

Ἄνδρες φίλοι, ἃ μὲν δὴ πρῶτα ηὔξάμεθα, πάρεστι σὺν θεοῖς. ὅπη γὰρ ἂν πορευώμεθα, κρατοῦμεν τῆς χώρας· καὶ μὲν δὴ τοὺς πολεμίους ὀρώμεν μειουμένους, ἡμᾶς δὲ αὐτοὺς πλείονάς τε καὶ ἰσχυροτέρους γιγνομένους. εἰ δὲ ἡμῖν ἔτι ἐθελήσειαν οἱ νῦν προσγεγεννημένοι σύμμαχοι παραμεῖναι, πολλῶ ἂν μᾶλλον ἀνύσαι δυναίμεθα καὶ εἴ τι βιάσασθαι καιρὸς καὶ εἴ τι πείσαι δέοι. ὅπως οὖν τὸ μένειν ὡς πλείστοις συνδοκῇ τῶν συμμάχων, οὐδὲν μᾶλλον τοῦτο ἐμὸν ἔργον ἢ καὶ ὑμέτερον μηχανᾶσθαι, ἀλλ' ὥσπερ ὅταν μάχεσθαι δέῃ, ὁ πλείστους χειρωσάμενος ἀλκιμώτατος δοξάζεται εἶναι, οὕτω καὶ ὅταν πείσαι δέῃ, ὁ πλείστους ὁμογνώμονας ἡμῖν ποιήσας οὗτος δικαίως

ὅπως |(mp) to deliberate ...άντες σὺν σοὶ ὅ τι |must... μείν τὸ
|should

ἐκ τοῦδε. σὺ δ' ἡμῖν |throw in;|will, plan...αρών περὶ τούτου,
|inspire

|which, ἥτις δοκεῖ |make an expedition, μὲν ἥδη |break up; re-
|whichever |war, campaign |lax, weaken

|army ... ἐκ τούτου ὁ μὲν Κναξάρης ἀμφὶ δείπνον εἶχεν,

ὁ δὲ Κύρος |collect, τοὺς |sufficient; fit, τῶν φίλων καὶ
|assemble |empowered

|think, be wise |cooperate , εἴ τι δέοι, ἔλεξε |such .

Ἄνδρες φίλοι, ἃ μὲν δὴ πρῶτα |declare; pray ...άρεστι σὺν

θεοῖς. |wherever, ἂν πορευόμεθα, |rule τῆς |place
|however

καὶ μὲν δὴ τοὺς πολεμίους ὀρώμεν μειουμένους, ἡμᾶς δὲ

αὐτοὺς πλείονάς τε καὶ |strong, forceful, γιγνομένους. εἰ
|violent

δὲ ἡμῖν ἔτι ἐθελήσειαν οἱ νῦν |become ally to σύμμαχοι

|stay with , πολλῶ ἂν μάλλον |accomplish ...αίμεθα καὶ εἴ

τι βιάσασθαι καιρὸς καὶ εἴ τι πείσαι δέοι. ὅπως οὖν

τὸ μένειν ὡς πλείστοις |seem good also συμμάχων, οὐδὲν

μάλλον τοῦτο ἐμὸν ἔργον ἢ καὶ |yours |build, contrive,

ἀλλ' ὥσπερ |whenever...εσθαι δέη, ὁ πλείστους |χειρώω?: dominate, subdue;
|or χειρώω?: dominate, sub-
due

|brave; sturdily δοξάζεται εἶναι, οὕτω καὶ |whenever...ται δέη,
|made

ὁ πλείστους ὁμογνώμονας ἡμῖν ποιήσας οὗτος δικαίως

you what you think our next step ought to be. You will tell us whether we ought to pursue the campaign further or whether the time has now come to disband our army.”

Thereupon Cyaxares betook himself to the banquet and Cyrus called a council of his friends, the shrewdest and the best fitted to act with him, and spoke to them as follows:

”My friends, thanks to the gods, our first prayers are granted. Wherever we set foot now we are the masters of the country: we see our enemies brought low and ourselves increasing day by day in numbers and in strength. And if only our present allies would consent to stay with us a little longer, our achievements could be greater still, whether force were needed or persuasion. Now it must be your work as much as mine to make as many of them as possible willing and anxious to remain. Remember that, just as the soldier who overthrows the greatest number in the day of battle is held to be the bravest, so the speaker, when the time has come for persuasion, who brings most men to his side will be thought the most eloquent, the best orator

*vocabulary***ἀναπαύω** cause to cease ~pause**δειπνέω** eat, dine**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous**διάγω** lead through; pass a time

~demagogue

ἐπιδείκνυμι (ὑ) display, exhibit**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable**ἡώς ἡῶθι** (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene**κοσμέω** marshal, array ~cosmos**μελετάω** pursue, attend to, exercise**πειράζω** test a person ~pierce**πρακτικός** practical, effective**προσάγω** bring to a place

~demagogue

στρατεύω make an expedition, war, campaign ~strategy**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier, mercenary ~strategy**ὑστεραίῳς** the next; later

ἂν λεκτικώτατός τε καὶ πρακτικώτατος κρίνοιτο ἂν εἶναι. μὴ μέντοι ὥς λόγον ἡμῖν ἐπιδειζόμενοι οἶον ἂν εἴποιτε πρὸς ἕκαστον αὐτῶν τοῦτο μελετᾶτε, ἀλλ' ὥς τοὺς πεπεισμένους ὑφ' ἑκάστου δήλους ἐσομένους οἷς ἂν πράττωσιν οὕτω παρασκευάζεσθε. καὶ ὑμεῖς μὲν, ἔφη, τούτων ἐπιμελείσθε· ἐγὼ δὲ ὅπως ἂν ἔχοντες τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ὅσον ἂν ἔγωγε δύνωμαι οἱ στρατιῶται περὶ τοῦ στρατεῦεσθαι βουλευόνται τούτου πειράσομαι ἐπιμελείσθαι.

6

6.1

Ταύτην μὲν δὴ τὴν ἡμέραν οὕτω διαγαγόντες καὶ δειπνήσαντες ἀνεπαύοντο. τῇ δ' ὑστεραία πρῶ ἦκον ἐπὶ τὰς Κναζάρου θύρας πάντες οἱ σύμμαχοι. ἕως οὖν ὁ Κναζάρης ἐκοσμεῖτο, ἀκούων ὅτι πολὺς ὄχλος ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις εἴη, ἐν τούτῳ οἱ φίλοι τῷ Κύρῳ προσῆγον οἱ μὲν Καδουσίους δεομένους αὐτοῦ μένειν, οἱ δὲ Ὑρκανίους, ὁ δέ

ἂν λεκτικώτατός τε καὶ |practical, effective |separate ἂν
 εἶναι. μὴ |however ὡς λόγον ἡμῖν |display, exhibit οἶον
 ἂν εἴποιτε πρὸς ἕκαστον αὐτῶν τοῦτο |pursue, attend ἄλ'
 |to, exercise
 ὡς τοὺς πεπεισμένους ὑφ' ἑκάστου |visible, ... μένους
 |conspicuous
 οἷς ἂν πράττωσιν οὕτω |prepare, render . καὶ ὑμεῖς
 μέν, ἔφη, τούτων |take care of, ἐγὼ δὲ ὅπως ἂν ἔχοντες
 |oversee
 τὰ |fit, suitable ὅσον ἂν ἔγωγε δύνωμαι οἱ |soldier,
 |mercenary
 περὶ τοῦ |make an expedi-(mp) to deliberate ἵτου πειράσομαι
 |tion, war, cam-
 |paign
 |take care of,
 |oversee

6

6.1

Ταύτην μὲν δὴ τὴν ἡμέραν οὕτω |lead through; καὶ
 |pass a time
 |eat, dine |cause to cease. τῇ δ' |the next; later, ἔ- |be present,
 |have arrived
 τὰς Κναξάρου |door πάντες οἱ σύμμαχοι. ἕως οὖν ὁ
 Κναξάρης |marshal, , ἀκούων ὅτι πολὺς |mob, crowd; trouble
 |array
 |door εἶη, ἐν τούτῳ οἱ φίλοι τῷ Κύρῳ |bring to a place, ἐν
 Καδουσίους δεομένους αὐτοῦ μένειν, οἱ δὲ Ὑρκανίους, ὁ δὲ

and the ablest man of action. Do not, however, prepare your speeches as though we asked you to give a rhetorical display: remember that those whom you convince will show it well enough by what they do. I leave you then," he added, "to the careful study of your parts: mine is to see, so far as in me lies, that our troops are provided with all they need, before we hold the council of war."

6

6.1

So the day ended, and they supped and went to rest. But early the next morning all the allies flocked to Cyaxares' gates, and while Cyaxares dressed and adorned himself, hearing that a great multitude were waiting, Cyrus gave audience to the suitors his own friends had brought. First came the Cadousians, imploring him to stay, and then the Hyrcanians,

*vocabulary***ἄδικος** unfair; obstinate, bad**ἀνατείνω** lift, reach out, threaten**ἀπόμνυμι** (οῦ) swear not to**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous**διαλέγω** go through, debate ~legion**διάλυσις** -εως (f) breaking up**εἴτε** if, whenever; either/or**ἐκφέρω** carry off ~bear**ἔρρω** go (neg. connotation) ~serve**ἐρωτάω** ask about something**εὐνοῦχος** eunuch**μεταπέμπω** send; (mid) summon

~pomp

ναί yea**ναός** (ᾱ) temple, shrine ~nostalgia**νεώς** νῶ (m, 2) temple, shrine**νή** yea**πάλαι** long ago ~paleo**πάλη** wrestling ~Pallas**πάλλω** shake, brandish ~Pallas**παντελής** complete, absolute**Πέρσης** Persian**προσάγω** bring to a place

~demagogue

ῥέζω do, make, perform sacrifices

~ergonomics

ῥέω flow ~rheostat**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war, campaign ~strategy**στρατιά** army ~strategy**ὑπάγω** lead under the yoke, lead away from ~demagogue

τις Σάκας, ὁ δέ τις καὶ Γωβρύαν· Ὑστάσπας δὲ Γαδάταν
 τὸν εὐνούχον προσήγε, δεόμενον τοῦ Κύρου μένειν. ἔνθα
 δὴ ὁ Κῦρος γινώσκων ὅτι Γαδάτας πάλαι ἀπωλώλει
 τῷ φόβῳ μὴ λυθείη ἢ στρατιά, ἐπιγελάσας εἶπεν· ὦ
 Γαδάτα, δῆλος εἰ, ἔφη, ὑπὸ Ὑστάσπου τοῦδε πεπεισμένος
 ταῦτα γινώσκειν ἃ λέγεις. καὶ ὁ Γαδάτας ἀνατείνας τὰς
 χεῖρας πρὸς τὸν οὐρανὸν ἀπώμοσεν ἢ μὴν μὴ ὑπὸ τοῦ
 Ὑστάσπου πεισθεῖς ταῦτα γινώσκειν· ἀλλ' οἶδα, ἔφη, ὅτι
 ἂν ὑμεῖς ἀπέλθητε, ἔρρει τὰμὰ παντελῶς· διὰ ταῦτ', ἔφη,
 καὶ τούτῳ ἐγὼ αὐτὸς διελεγόμην, ἐρωτῶν εἰ εἰδείη τί ἐν
 νῷ ἔχεις ὑπὲρ τῆς διαλύσεως τοῦ στρατεύματος ποιεῖν.
 καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπεν· Ἀδίκως ἄρα ἐγὼ Ὑστάσπαν τόνδε
 κατατιτῶμαι. Ἀδίκως μέντοι νῆ Δί', ἔφη ὁ Ὑστάσπας, ὦ
 Κῦρε· ἐγὼ γὰρ ἔλεγον τῷ Γαδάτῃ τῷδε τοσοῦτον μόνον
 ὥς οὐχ οἰὸν τέ σοι εἶη στρατεῦσθαι, λέγων ὅτι ὁ πατήρ σε
 μεταπέμποιτο. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος, Τί λέγεις; ἔφη· καὶ σὺ τοῦτο
 ἐτόλμησας ἐξευγκεῖν, εἴτ' ἐγὼ ἐβουλόμην εἶτε μή; Ναὶ μὰ
 Δί', ἔφη· ὁρῶ γάρ σε ὑπερεπιθυμοῦντα ἐν Πέρσῃς

τις Σάκας, ὁ δέ τις καὶ Γωβρύαν· Ὑστάσπας δὲ Γαδάταν
 τὸν |eunuch |bring to a place, ἐνον τοῦ Κύρου μένειν. ἔνθα
 δὴ ὁ Κῦρος γινώσκων ὅτι Γαδάτας πάλαι ἀπωλώλει
 τῷ |fear μὴ |release ἡ στρατιά, ἐπιγελάσας εἶπεν· ὦ
 Γαδάτα, |visible, |conspicuous ἡ, ὑπὸ Ὑστάσπου τοῦδε πεπεισμένος
 ταῦτα γινώσκειν ἂ λέγεις. καὶ ὁ Γαδάτας |lift, reach ἅς
 |out, threaten χεῖρας πρὸς τὸν οὐρανὸν |swear not to ἡ μὴν μὴ ὑπὸ τοῦ
 Ὑστάσπου πεισθεὶς ταῦτα γινώσκειν· ἀλλ' οἶδα, ἔφη, ὅτι
 ἂν ὑμεῖς ἀπέλθητε, ἔρρει τὰμὰ |complete, absolute διὰ ταῦτ', ἔφη,
 καὶ τούτῳ ἐγὼ αὐτὸς |go through, |ask εἰ εἰδείη τί ἐν
 |debate νῷ ἔχεις ὑπὲρ τῆς |breaking up τοῦ |army ποιεῖν.
 καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπεν· |unfair; ob-, |stinate, bad ἐγὼ Ὑστάσπαν τόνδε
 κατατιῶμαι. |unfair; |however ἡ Δί, ἔφη ὁ Ὑστάσπας, ὦ
 |obstinate, bad Κῦρε· ἐγὼ γὰρ ἐλεγον τῷ Γαδάτῃ τῷδε |so much μόνον
 ὥς οὐχ οἶόν τέ σοι εἶναι |make an expedition, |war, campaign
 |send; (mid) summon ὁ Κῦρος, τί λέγεις; ἔφη· καὶ σὺ τοῦτο
 |dare |carry off , |if, when-ever; |either/or |if, when-ever; |yea μὰ
 Δί, ἔφη· ὁρῶ γάρ σε ὑπερεπιθυμοῦντα ἐν Περσῶσι

and after them the Sakians, and then some one presented Gobryas, and Hystaspas brought in Gadatas the eunuch, whose entreaty was still the same. At that Cyrus, who knew already that for many a day Gadatas had been half-dead with fear lest the army should be disbanded, laughed outright and said, "Ah, Gadatas, you cannot conceal it: you have been bribed by my friend Hystaspas to take this view."

But Gadatas lifted up his hands to heaven and swore most solemnly that Hystaspas had not influenced him.

"Nay," said he, "it is because I know myself that, if you depart, I am ruined utterly. And therefore it was that I took it upon me to speak with Hystaspas myself, and ask him if he knew what was in your mind about the disbanding of the army."

And Cyrus said, "It would be unjust then, I suppose, to lay the blame on Hystaspas." "Yes, Cyrus, most unjust," said Hystaspas, "for I only said to Gadatas that it would be impossible for you to carry on the campaign, as your father wanted you home, and had sent for you."

"What?" cried Cyrus, "you dared to let that be known whether I wished it or not?"

"Certainly I did," he answered, "for I can see that you are mad to be

*vocabulary***δείκνυμι** (ὁ) show, point out**δεσπότης** -ου (m, 1) master, despot**διαλέγω** go through, debate ~legion**διαλύω** break up; relax, weaken**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish
~practice**εἰκός** likely**ἐπιδείκνυμι** (ὁ) display, exhibit**ἐπιθυμέω** (ὁ) wish, covet**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand
~station**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near,
direct, stop ~station**θρόνος** seat, chair, throne ~throne**καθέζομαι** act: set, seat; pass: sit
down, sit up**κοσμέω** marshal, array ~cosmos**κράτιστος** best**οἴκαδε** homeward ~economics**ὁμός** same ~homoerotic**ὁμοῦ** together**ὁμόω** unite ~homoerotic**ὅπου** where**παίζω** play ~pediatrician**περιέρχομαι** go around; come next to**πότερος** which, whichever of two**σεμνός** revered, holy**σιωπή** silence**σπουδή** zeal; (dat) with difficulty,
hastily ~repudiate**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war,
campaign ~strategy**στρατηγέω** be a general**στρατιά** army ~strategy**συνέρχομαι** come together**ὑπάγω** lead under the yoke, lead away
from ~demagogue

περίβλεπτον περιελθεῖν καὶ τῷ πατρὶ ἐπιδείξασθαι ἥ
 ἕκαστα διεπράξω. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἔφη· Σὺ δ' οὐκ ἐπιθυμείς
 οἴκαδε ἀπελθεῖν; Οὐ μὰ Δι', ἔφη, ὁ Ὑστάσπας, οὐδ' ἄπειμί
 γε, ἀλλὰ μένων στρατηγήσω, ἔστ' ἂν ποιήσω Γαδάταν
 τουτονὶ τοῦ Ἀσσυρίου δεσπότην.

Οἱ μὲν δὴ τοιαῦτ' ἔπαιζον σπουδῇ πρὸς ἀλλήλους. ἐν δὲ
 τούτῳ Κυαξάρης σεμνῶς κεκοσμημένος ἐξήλθε καὶ ἐπὶ
 θρόνου Μηδικοῦ ἐκαθέζετο. ὥς δὲ πάντες συνήλθον οὓς
 ἔδει καὶ σιωπὴ ἐγένετο, ὁ Κυαξάρης ἔλεξεν ὧδε. Ἄνδρες
 σύμμαχοι, ἴσως, ἐπειδὴ παρὼν τυγχάνω καὶ πρεσβύτερός
 εἰμι Κύρου, εἰκὸς ἄρχειν με λόγου. νῦν οὖν δοκεῖ μοι
 εἶναι καιρὸς περὶ τούτου πρῶτον διαλέγεσθαι πότερον
 στρατεύεσθαι ἔτι καιρὸς δοκεῖ εἶναι ἢ διαλύειν ἤδη τὴν
 στρατιάν· λεγέτω οὖν τις, ἔφη, περὶ αὐτοῦ τούτου ἥ
 γιγνώσκει. ἐκ τούτου πρῶτος μὲν εἶπεν ὁ Ὑρκάνιος·
 Ἄνδρες σύμμαχοι, οὐκ οἶδα μὲν ἔγωγε εἴ τι δεῖ λόγων
 ὅπου αὐτὰ τὰ ἔργα δεικνύει τὸ κράτιστον. πάντες γὰρ
 ἐπιστάμεθα ὅτι ὁμοῦ μὲν ὄντες πλείω κακὰ

περίβλεπτον |go around; καὶ τῷ πατρὶ |display, exhibit ἥ
 |come next to
 ἕκαστα |travel over, ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἔφη· Σὺ δ' οὐκ |wish, covet
 |accomplish
 |homeward. ἐλθεῖν; Οὐ μὰ Δεῦ, ἔφη, ὁ Ὑστάσπας, οὐδ' |be absent, go away,
 |return
 γε, ἀλλὰ μένων |be a general , ἔστ' ἂν ποιήσω Γαδάταν
 τουτονὶ τοῦ Ἀσσυρίου |master,
 |despot
 Οἱ μὲν δὴ τοιαῦτ' |play |zeal; (dat), with ἁλλήλους. ἐν δὲ
 |difficulty, hastily
 τούτῳ Κναξάρης |revered, |marshal, array ἐξήλθε καὶ ἐπὶ
 |holy
 |chair Μηδικοῦ ἐκαθέζετο. ὡς δὲ πάντες |come together
 ἔδει καὶ |silence ἐγένετο, ὁ Κναξάρης ἔλεξεν |thus Ἄνδρες
 σύμμαχοι, |equal ἐπειδὴ παρὼν τυγχάνω καὶ |elder
 εἰμι Κύρου, |likely ἄρχειν με λόγου. νῦν οὖν δοκεῖ μοι
 εἶναι καιρὸς περὶ τούτου πρῶτον |go through, de-|which,
 |bate |whichever
 |make an expedition, καιρὸς δοκεῖ εἶναι ἥ |break up; ῥε- |τὴν
 |war, campaign |lax, weaken
 |army λεγέτω οὖν τις, ἔφη, περὶ αὐτοῦ τούτου ἥ
 γιγνώσκει. ἐκ τούτου πρῶτος μὲν εἶπεν ὁ Ὑρκάνιος·
 Ἄνδρες σύμμαχοι, οὐκ οἶδα μὲν ἔγωγε εἴ τι δεῖ λόγων
 |where ὑπὸ τὰ ἔργα |show τὸ |best . πάντες γὰρ
 ἐπιστάμεθα ὅτι ὁμοῦ μὲν ὄντες πλείω κακὰ

home in Persia, the cynosure of every eye, telling your father how you wrought this and accomplished that.”

”Well,” said Cyrus, ”are you not longing to go home yourself?”

”No,” said the other. ”I am not. Nor have I any intention of going: here I shall stay and be general-in- chief until I make our friend Gadatas the lord and the Assyrian his slave.”

Thus half in jest and half in earnest they played with one another, and meanwhile Cyaxares had finished adorning himself and came forth in great splendour and solemnity, and sat down on a Median throne. And when all were assembled and silence was proclaimed, Cyaxares said:

”My friends and allies, perhaps, since I am present and older than Cyrus, it is suitable that I should address you first. It appears to me that the moment has come to discuss one question before all others, the question whether we ought to go on with the campaign or disband the army. Be pleased,” he added, ”to state your opinions on the matter.”

Then the leader of the Hyrcanians stood up at once and said:

”Friends and allies, I hardly think that words are needed when facts themselves show us the path to take. All of

vocabulary

γούν at least then

δαπανάω spend, consume, waste

δαπάνη cost, funds, extravagance

δαπανώ spend, consume, waste

δίχα in two, in two ways

ἐπιβουλεύω plot, plan, harm

~volunteer

ἐπίσταμαι know how, understand

~station

εὖωχέω fete, feed well

ἐφίστημι set; (mp) come/be near,

direct, stop ~station

ἡδέως pleasantly ~hedonism

ἡδύς sweet, pleasant ~hedonism

οἴκαδε homeward ~economics

οἰκεῖος household, familiar, proper

οἴκοι at home ~economics

πότε when?

πρόσθεν before (time, space)

προστίθηναι add; impose; (mp) agree;
side with ~thesis

στρατεύω make an expedition, war,
campaign ~strategy

συγγενής inborn, kin to

συμφέρω bring together; be expedient;
agree; (mp) happen ~bear

τοιόσδε such

ὁμέτερος (ῶ) yours

ὕπαγω lead under the yoke, lead away
from ~demagogue

φρουρά guard duty, a watch

φρουρέω keep watch

φρούριον fort

φρουρός watcher, guard

χωρίζω divide; distinguish, pull down

χωρίς separately; except, other than
~heir

τοὺς πολεμίους ποιούμεν ἢ πάσχομεν· ὅτε δὲ χωρὶς
 ἡμεν ἀλλήλων, ἐκείνοι ἡμῖν ἐχρῶντο ὡς ἐκείνοις ἦν
 ἡδιστον, ἡμῖν γε μὴν ὡς χαλεπώτατον. ἐπὶ τούτῳ ὁ
 Καδούσιος εἶπεν· Ἡμεῖς δὲ τί ἂν λέγοιμεν, ἔφη, περὶ
 τοῦ οἴκαδε ἀπελθόντες ἕκαστοι χωρὶς εἶναι, ὁπότε γε
 οὐδὲ στρατευομένοις, ὡς ἔοικε, χωρίζεσθαι συμφέρει;
 ἡμεῖς γοῦν οὐ πολὺν χρόνον δίχα τοῦ ὑμετέρου πλήθους
 στρατευσάμενοι δίκην ἔδομεν ὡς καὶ ὑμεῖς ἐπίστασθε. ἐπὶ
 τούτῳ Ἀρτάβαζος ὁ ποτε φήσας εἶναι Κύρου συγγενὴς
 ἔλεξε τοιάδε· Ἐγὼ δ', ἔφη, ὦ Κναξάρη, τοσοῦτον
 διαφέρομαι τοῖς πρόσθεν λέγουσιν· οὗτοι μὲν γάρ φασιν
 ἔτι δεῖν μένοντας στρατεύεσθαι, ἐγὼ δὲ λέγω ὅτι ὅτε μὲν
 οἴκοι ἦν, ἐστρατευόμην· καὶ γὰρ ἐβοήθουν πολλάκις τῶν
 ἡμετέρων ἀγομένων καὶ περὶ τῶν ἡμετέρων φρουρίων ὡς
 ἐπιβουλευσομένων πολλάκις πράγματα εἶχον φοβούμενός
 τε καὶ φρουρῶν· καὶ ταῦτ' ἔπραττον τὰ οἰκεία δαπανῶν.
 νῦν δ' ἔχω μὲν τὰ ἐκείνων φρούρια, οὐ φοβοῦμαι δ'
 ἐκείνους, εὐωχοῦμαι δὲ τὰ ἐκείνων καὶ πίνω τὰ τῶν

τοὺς πολεμίους ποιούμεν ἢ πάσχομεν· ὅτε δὲ |separately; except,
 ἡμεν ἀλλήλων, ἐκείνοι ἡμῖν ἐχρῶντο ὡς ἐκείνοις ἦν
 ἥδιστον, ἡμῖν γε μὴν ὡς |hard to bear . ἐπὶ τούτῳ ὁ
 Καδούσιος εἶπεν· Ἡμεῖς δὲ τί ἂν λέγοιμεν, ἔφη, περὶ
 τοῦ |homeward· ἐλθόντες ἕκαστοι |separately; ex-when γε
 οὐδὲ |make an expedition, ὡς ἔοικε, |divide; dis-|bring together; be expe-
 |war, campaign |tinguish, pull|dient; agree; (mp) hap-
 ἡμεῖς |at least then λὺν χρόνον |in two, in|down |pen
 |two ways |yours |numerical
 |make an expedition, ἵκην ἔδομεν ὡς καὶ ὑμεῖς ἐπίστασθε. ἐπὶ
 |war, campaign
 τούτῳ Ἀρτάβαζος ὃ ποτε φήσας εἶναι Κύρου |inborn, kin to
 ἔλεξε |such Ἐγὼ δ', ἔφη, ὦ Κναζάρη, |so much
 |carry on; dif- τοῖς πρόσθεν λέγουσιν· οὗτοι μὲν γὰρ φασιν
 |fer; excel
 ἔτι δεῖν μένοντας |make an expedition, ἢ δὲ λέγω ὅτι ὅτε μὲν
 |war, campaign
 |at home, |make an expedition, ἢ γὰρ |rescue |often τῶν
 |war, campaign
 |our, my ἀγομένων καὶ περὶ τῶν |our, my |fort ὡς
 |plot, plan, harm |often πράγματα εἶχον φοβούμενός
 τε καὶ φρουρῶν· καὶ ταῦτ' ἔπραττον τὰ |household, fa- ὧν.
 |miliar, proper
 νῦν δ' ἔχω μὲν τὰ ἐκείνων |fort , οὐ φοβοῦμαι δ'
 ἐκείνους, |fete, feed well τὰ ἐκείνων καὶ πίνω τὰ τῶν

us know that while we stand together we give our enemy more trouble than we get: but when we stood alone it was they who dealt with us as they liked best and we liked least."

Then the Cadousian followed.

"The less we talk," said he, "about breaking-up and going home separately the better; separation has done us anything but good, it seems to me, even on the march. My men and I, at any rate, very soon paid the penalty for private excursions; as I dare say you have not forgotten."

Upon that Artabazus rode, the Mede who had claimed kinship with Cyrus in the old days.

"Cyaxares," said he, "in one respect I differ from those who have spoken before me: they think we should stay here in order to go on with the campaign, but I think I am always on campaign at home. I was for ever out on some expedition or other, because our people were being harried, or our fortresses threatened, and a world of trouble I had, what with fears within and fighting without, and all too at my own expense. As it is now, I occupy the enemy's forts, my fear of them is gone, I make good cheer on their own good things, and I

*vocabulary***ἄημι** blow**ἀναπνέω** catch one's breath ~apnea**ἀποστερέω** despoil, defraud**ἀσθενής** weak**αὐξάνω** strengthen**ἀφαιρέω** take away ~heresy**δεξιὰ** right-hand ~dextrous**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous**δήτα** emphatic δῆ**διαλύω** break up; relax, weaken**ἐορτή** holiday, feast**ἐπαινέω** concur, praise, advise**ἐπιγίγνομαι** succeed, come after

~genus

ἐπιχειρέω do, try, attack ~chiral**θαυμαστός** wonderful; admirable**κτάομαι** acquire, possess**μέχρι** as far as, until**οἶκοι** at home ~economics**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle

~hoplite

πανήγυρις -εως (f) gathering**ποινή** blood-price ~penalty**στρατεία** expedition, campaign**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**ὑπέχω** promise; hold out one's hand;

submit to

ψεύδω be false, deceive; (mid) to lie

~pseudo-

πολεμίων. ὥς οὖν τὰ μὲν οἴκοι στρατείαν οὔσαν, τάδε δὲ ἐορτήν, ἐμοὶ μὲν οὐ δοκεῖ, ἔφη, διαλύειν τήνδε τὴν πανήγυριν. ἐπὶ τούτῳ ὁ Γωβρύας εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ δ', ὦ ἄνδρες σύμμαχοι, μέχρι μὲν τοῦδε ἐπαινῶ τὴν Κύρου δεξιάν· οὐδὲν γὰρ ψεύδεται ὦν ὑπέσχετο· εἰ δ' ἄπεισιν ἐκ τῆς χώρας, δηλὸν ὅτι ὁ μὲν Ἀσσύριος ἀναπνεύσεται, οὐ τίνων ποινὰς ὦν τε ὑμᾶς ἐπεχείρησεν ἀδικεῖν καὶ ὦν ἐμὲ ἐποίησεν· ἐγὼ δὲ ἐν τῷ μέρει ἐκείνῳ πάλιν δώσω δίκην ὅτι ὑμῖν φίλος ἐγενόμην.

Ἐπὶ τούτοις πᾶσι Κύρος εἶπεν· ὦ ἄνδρες, οὐδ' ἐμὲ λανθάνει ὅτι ἐὰν μὲν διαλύωμεν τὸ στράτευμα, τὰ μὲν ἡμέτερα ἀσθενέστερα γίγνοιτ' ἂν, τὰ δὲ τῶν πολεμίων πάλιν αὐξήσεται. ὅσοι τε γὰρ αὐτῶν ὅπλα ἀφήρηνται, ταχὺ ἄλλα ποιήσονται· ὅσοι τε ἵππους ἀπεστέρηνται, ταχὺ πάλιν ἄλλους ἵππους κτήσονται· ἀντὶ δὲ τῶν ἀποθανόντων ἕτεροι ἐφηβήσουσιν καὶ ἐπιγενήσονται· ὥστε οὐδὲν θαυμαστὸν εἰ πάνυ ἐν τάχει πάλιν ἡμῖν πράγματα παρέchein δυνήσονται. τί δῆτα ἐγὼ Κναζάρην

πολεμίων. ὥς οὖν τὰ μὲν |at |expedition, οὔσαν, τάδε
 |home |campaign
 δὲ |holiday, ἐμοὶ μὲν οὐ δοκεῖ, ἔφη, |break up; re- |δε τὴν
 |feast |lax, weaken
 |gathering ἐπὶ τούτῳ ὁ Γωβρύας εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ δ', ὦ
 ἄνδρες σύμμαχοι, |as far as, until ὡδὲ |concur τὴν Κύρου
 δεξιάν· οὐδὲν γὰρ |be false, de-|promise εἰ δ' |be absent, go
 |ceive; (mid) to |away, return
 τῆς |place, |visible, |lie ἐ μὲν Ἀσσύριος |catch one's breath |
 |conspicuous
 τίνων |blood-price τε ὑμᾶς |do, try, attack |be, do wrong; ἐμὲ
 |wrong someone
 ἐποίησεν· ἐγὼ δὲ ἐν τῷ μέρει ἐκείνῳ πάλιν δώσω |justice
 ὅτι ὑμῶν φίλος ἐγενόμην.

Ἐπὶ τούτοις πᾶσι Κῦρος εἶπεν· ὦ ἄνδρες, οὐδ' ἐμὲ
 |escape notice; ἵν μὲν |break up; relax, |army, τὰ μὲν
 |(mp+gen) forget |weaken
 |our, my |weak γίγνοιτ' ἂν, τὰ δὲ τῶν πολεμίων
 πάλιν |strengthen ὅσοι τε γὰρ αὐτῶν |tool |take away,
 ταχὺ ἄλλα ποιήσονται· ὅσοι τε ἵππους |despoil, defraud,
 ταχὺ πάλιν ἄλλους ἵππους κτήσονται· ἀντὶ δὲ τῶν
 ἀποθανόντων ἕτεροι ἐφηβήσουσιν καὶ ἐπιγενήσονται·
 ὥστε οὐδὲν |wonderful; εἰ |altogether, very, |πάλιν ἡμῶν
 |admirable
 πράγματα |furnish δυνήσονται. τί |emphatic δὴ |ναξάρην

drink their own good wine. Since home means fighting and service here means feasting, I am not in favour myself," said he, "of breaking up the company."

Then Gobryas spoke.

"Friends," said he, "I have trusted Cyrus' word and had no fault to find with him: what he promises that he performs: but if he leaves the country now, the Assyrian will be reprieved, he will never be punished for the wrongs he tried to inflict on you and did inflict on me: I shall be punished instead, because I have been your friend."

At that Cyrus rose at last and said:

"Gentlemen, I am well aware that the disbanding of our forces must mean the decrease of our power and the increase of theirs. If some of them have given up their weapons, they will soon procure others; if some have lost their horses, the loss will soon be made good; if some have fallen in battle, others, younger and stronger, will take their place. We need not be surprised if they are soon in a condition to cause us trouble again. Why, then, did I ask Cyaxares to put the question to debate? Because, I answer, I am

vocabulary

ἀέκων unwilling
ἄκων javelin; unwilling ~acme
ἀμηχανία helplessness ~mechanism
ἀνακομίζω take back/away
ἀναλίσκω (αἶ) consume, spend on
ἄνευ away from; not having; not
 needing ~Sp. sin
ἀντίπαλος rival; balanced
δήπου perhaps; is it not so?
ἐκών willingly, on purpose; giving in
 too easily
ἐμβάλλω throw in; inspire a mental
 state ~ballistic
ἐξελαύνω drive out, exile ~elastic
ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable
ἔρυμα -τος (n, 3) protection ~serve
θεράπων -οντος (m, 3) helper,
 henchman, servant ~therapy
ἰσχυρός (ῶ) strong, forceful, violent
καταλύω unyoke; destroy ~loose
λιμός (ι, f) famine

ὅποι to which place
ὅπου where
ὄχυρός strong, secure
ὄχυρόω fortify
παραιρέω take away
πρόσειμι approach, draw near; add
 ~ion
προσέρχομαι come forward, surrender,
 come in
προσίημι be allowed near
ρίγέω (ι) shudder with fear; be
 flustered ~frigid
ῥίγος -ους (n, 3) miserable, cold
 ~frigid
στέγη roof, ceiling, chamber
στρατεύω make an expedition, war,
 campaign ~strategy
στρατιά army ~strategy
στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier,
 mercenary ~strategy
χειμών -ος (m, 3) winter, storm

ἐκέλευσα λόγον ἐμβαλεῖν περὶ καταλύσεως τῆς στρατιᾶς;
 εὖ ἵστε ὅτι φοβούμενος τὸ μέλλον. ὁρῶ γὰρ ἡμῖν
 ἀντιπάλους προσιόντας οἷς ἡμεῖς, εἰ ὧδε στρατευσόμεθα,
 οὐ δυνησόμεθα μάχεσθαι. προσέρχεται μὲν γὰρ δήπου
 χειμῶν, στέγαι δὲ εἰ καὶ ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς εἰσιν, ἀλλὰ μὰ Δί' οὐχ
 ἵπποις οὐδὲ θεράπουσιν οὐδὲ τῷ δήμῳ τῶν στρατιωτῶν,
 ὧν ἄνευ ἡμεῖς οὐκ ἂν δυναίμεθα στρατεύεσθαι· τὰ
 δ' ἐπιτήδεια ὅπου μὲν ἡμεῖς ἐληλύθαμεν ὑφ' ἡμῶν
 ἀνήλωται· ὅποι δὲ μὴ ἀφίγμεθα, διὰ τὸ ἡμᾶς φοβεῖσθαι
 ἀνακεκομισμένοι εἰσὶν εἰς ἐρύματα, ὥστε αὐτοὶ μὲν ἔχειν,
 ἡμᾶς δὲ ταῦτα μὴ δύνασθαι λαμβάνειν. τίς οὖν οὕτως
 ἀγαθὸς ἢ τίς οὕτως ἰσχυρὸς ὥς λιμῷ καὶ ῥίγῃ δύναιτ' ἂν
 μαχόμενος στρατεύεσθαι; εἰ μὲν οὖν οὕτω στρατευσόμεθα,
 ἐγὼ μὲν φημι χρῆναι ἐκόντας ἡμᾶς καταλῦσαι τὴν
 στρατιὰν μᾶλλον ἢ ἄκοντας ὑπ' ἀμηχανίας ἐξελαθῆναι.
 εἰ δὲ βουλόμεθα ἔτι στρατεύεσθαι, τόδ' ἐγὼ φημι χρῆναι
 ποιεῖν, ὥς τάχιστα πειρᾶσθαι τῶν μὲν ἐκείνων ὀχυρῶν ὥς
 πλείστα παραιεῖν, ἡμῖν δ' αὐτοῖς ὥς πλείστα ὀχυρὰ

ἐκέλευσα λόγον |throw in; inspire ἀταλύσεως τῆς |army
 εὖ ἴστε ὅτι φοβούμενος τὸ μέλλον. ὁρῶ γὰρ ἡμῖν
 rival; προσιόντας οἷς ἡμεῖς, εἰ ὧδε |make an expedition,
 |balanced war, campaign
 οὐ δυνησόμεθα μάχεσθαι. |come forward, sur- γὰρ |perhaps; is
 |render, come in |it not so?
 |winter, |roof, ceiling, καὶ ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς εἰσιν, ἀλλὰ μὰ Δί' οὐχ
 |storm |chamber
 ἵπποις οὐδὲ |companion οὐδὲ τῷ δήμῳ τῶν |soldier,
 |mercenary
 ὧν |away from; not hav- ἂν δυναίμεθα |make an expedition, |
 |ing; not needing war, campaign
 δ' |fit, suitable |where μὲν ἡμεῖς ἐληλύθαμεν ὑφ' ἡμῶν
 |consume, |to which place, φέγμεθα, διὰ τὸ ἡμᾶς φοβεῖσθαι
 |spend on
 |take back/away εἰσὶν εἰς |protection, ὥστε αὐτοὶ μὲν ἔχειν,
 ἡμᾶς δὲ ταῦτα μὴ δύνασθαι λαμβάνειν. τίς οὖν οὕτως
 ἀγαθὸς ἢ τίς οὕτως |strong, force-|famine αἱ ῥίγαι δύναιτ' ἂν
 |ful, violent
 μαχόμενος |make an expedition, ἐν οὖν οὕτω |make an expedition,
 |war, campaign |war, campaign
 ἐγὼ μὲν φημι χρῆναι |willingly ἡμᾶς |unyoke; τὴν
 |destroy
 |army μᾶλλον ἢ ἄκοντας ὑπ' ἀμηχανίας |drive out
 εἰ δὲ βουλόμεθα ἔτι |make an expedition, ὃ ἐγὼ φημι χρῆναι
 |war, campaign
 ποιεῖν, ὡς τάχιστα πειρᾶσθαι τῶν μὲν ἐκείνων ὀχυρῶν ὡς
 πλείστα |take away ἡμῖν δ' αὐτοῖς ὡς πλείστα |strong,
 |secure

afraid of the future. I see opponents against us whom we cannot fight, if we conduct the campaign as we are doing now. Winter is advancing against us, and though we may have shelter for ourselves we have nothing, heaven knows, for our horses and our servants and the great mass of our soldiery, without whom we cannot even think of a campaign. As to provisions, up to the limits of our advance and because of that advance they have been exhausted; and beyond that line, owing to the terror we inspire, the inhabitants will have stowed their supplies away in strong places where they can enjoy them and we cannot get them. Where is the warrior, stout of heart and strong of will, who can wage war with cold and hunger? If our style of soldiering is to be only what it has been, I say we ought to disband at once of our own accord, and not wait to be driven from the field against our will by sheer lack of means. If we do wish to go forward, this is what we must do: we must detach from the enemy all the fortresses we can and secure all we can for our own: if this

vocabulary

ἄλλοτριόω estrange from
ἄμελέω disregard; (impers.) of course
ἀναδέχομαι catch, receive ~doctrine
ἀποδημέω be absent, abroad
ἀποτίθημι put away ~thesis
ἐγγύς near
ἐπιβουλεύω plot, plan, harm
 ~volunteer
ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable
εὐδία fair weather
καταλείπω leave behind, abandon
 ~eclipse
κτάομαι acquire, possess

οἰκεῖος household, familiar, proper
οἴκοθεν from home, from one's own
 resources ~economics
ὀκνέω shrink from, hesitate; worry
ὁπότερος which of two, either of two
πέλαγος -ους (n, 3) the open sea
 ~pelagic
πλησίος near, neighboring
πρόσορος neighboring
πρόσω forward, in the future; far
φρουρέω keep watch
φρούριον fort
χωρίον area; downwards

ποιεῖσθαι· ἐὰν γὰρ ταῦτα γένηται, τὰ μὲν ἐπιτήδεια πλείω ἔξουσιν ὁπότεροι ἂν πλείω δύνωνται λαβόντες ἀποτίθεσθαι, πολιορκήσονται δὲ ὁπότεροι ἂν ἥττους ᾧσι. νῦν δ' οὐδὲν διαφέρομεν τῶν ἐν τῷ πελάγει πλεόντων· καὶ γὰρ ἐκεῖνοι πλέουσι μὲν αἰεὶ, τὸ δὲ πεπλευσμένον οὐδὲν οἰκειότερον τοῦ ἀπλεύστου καταλείπουσιν. ἐὰν δὲ φρούρια ἡμῖν γένηται, ταῦτα δὴ τοῖς μὲν πολεμίοις ἀλλοτριώσει τὴν χώραν, ἡμῖν δ' ὑπ' εὐδία μᾶλλον πάντ' ἔσται. ὁ δ' ἴσως ἂν τινες ὑμῶν φοβηθῇεν, εἰ δεήσει πόρρω τῆς ἐαυτῶν φρουρεῖν, μηδὲν τοῦτο ὀκνήσητε. ἡμεῖς μὲν γὰρ ἐπείπερ καὶ ὥς οἴκοθεν ἀποδημοῦμεν, φρουρήσειν ὑμῖν ἀναδεχόμεθα τὰ ἐγγύτατα χωρία τῶν πολεμίων, ὑμεῖς δὲ τὰ πρόσσορα ὑμῖν αὐτοῖς τῆς Ἀσσυρίας ἐκεῖνα κτᾶσθε καὶ ἐργάζεσθε. ἐὰν γὰρ ἡμεῖς τὰ πλησίον αὐτῶν φρουροῦντες δυνώμεθα σφῆζεσθαι, ἐν πολλῇ ὑμεῖς εἰρήνῃ ἔσεσθε οἱ τὰ πρόσω αὐτῶν ἔχοντες· οὐ γὰρ οἶμαι δυνήσονται τῶν ἐγγὺς ἐαυτῶν ὄντων ἀμελοῦντες τοῖς πρόσω ὑμῖν ἐπιβουλεύειν.

ποιῆσθαι· ἐὰν γὰρ ταῦτα γένηται, τὰ μὲν |fit, suitable
 πλείω ἔξουσιν |which of two, ' πλείω δύνωνται λαβόντες
 |either of two
 |put away , |besiege δὲ |which of two, ἥττους ὦσι.
 |either of two
 νῦν δ' οὐδὲν |carry on; dif- τῶν ἐν τῷ |the open sea` ἐόντων·
 |fer; excel
 καὶ γὰρ ἐκεῖνοι πλέουσι μὲν αἶψά, τὸ δὲ πεπλευσμένον
 οὐδὲν |household, fa- τοῦ ἀπλεύστου |leave behind,· ἐὰν
 |miliar, proper |abandon
 δὲ |fort ἡμῖν γένηται, ταῦτα δὴ τοῖς μὲν πολεμίοις
 ἀλλοτριώσει τὴν |place , ἡμῖν δ' ὑπ' εὐδία μάλλον
 πάντ' ἔσται. ὁ δ' ἴσως ἂν τινες ὑμῶν φοβηθῇεν,
 εἰ δεήσει |forward, in the ἐαυτῶν |keep watch μηδὲν τοῦτο
 |future; far
 |hesitate; . ἡμεῖς μὲν γὰρ ἐπέπερ καὶ ὥς |from home
 |worry
 |be absent, abroad|keep watch ὑμῖν |receive τὰ |near
 |area; downwards` ἐμίων, ὑμεῖς δὲ τὰ |neighboring , ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς
 τῆς Ἀσσυρίας ἐκεῖνα κτᾶσθε καὶ |work . ἐὰν
 γὰρ ἡμεῖς τὰ |near αὐτῶν |keep watch δυνώμεθα
 σώζεσθαι, ἐν πολλῇ ὑμεῖς |peace ἔσεσθε οἱ τὰ |forward, in the fu-
 |future; far
 αὐτῶν ἔχοντες· οὐ γὰρ οἶμαι δυνήσονται τῶν |near
 ἐαυτῶν ὄντων |disregard τοῖς |forward, in the|plot, plan, harm
 |future; far

is done, the larger supply will be in the hands of those who can stow away the larger store, and the weaker will suffer siege. At present we are like mariners on the ocean: they may sail on for ever, but the seas they have crossed are no more theirs than those that are still unsailed. But if we hold the fortresses, the enemy will find they are living in a hostile land, while we have halcyon weather. Some of you may dread the thought of garrison duty far from home; if so, dispel your doubts. We Persians, who must, as it is, be exiles for the time, will undertake the positions that are nearest to the foe, while it will be for you to occupy the land on the marches between Assyria and yourselves and put it under tillage. For, if we can hold his inner line, your peace will not be disturbed in the outlying parts: he will scarcely neglect the danger at his door to attack

*vocabulary***διατριβή** activity, waste of time**ἐκάτερος** each of two**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable**ἐπιτρέπω** entrust, decide, allow

~trophy

ἐφίστημι set; (mp) come/be near,

direct, stop ~station

καθαιρέω take down, close ~heresy**καθίζω** set, sit, alight, set up ~sit**κῦρος** -εος (n, 3) authority; validity**μηχανή** machine; mechanism, way**μηχανοποιός** engineer**ὄχυρός** strong, secure**περαίνω** finish, accomplish**πορίζω** bring about, provide**πρόθυμος** (ὁ) willing, eager ~fume**πυργόω** wall, fortify**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**συμπροθυμέομαι** (υῦ) share in

eagerness with

τειχίζω build**τέκτων** (f) skilled worker ~technician**τοίνυν** well, then**ὑπέχω** promise; hold out one's hand;

submit to

φίλιος friendly

Ὡς δὲ ταῦτ' ἐρρήθη, οἳ τε ἄλλοι πάντες ἀνιστάμενοι
 συμπροθυμήσεσθαι ταῦτ' ἔφασαν καὶ Κναξάρης. Γαδάτας
 δὲ καὶ Γωβρύας καὶ τείχος ἐκάτερος αὐτῶν, ἦν
 ἐπιτρέψωσιν οἱ σύμμαχοι, τειχιεῖσθαι ἔφασαν, ὥστε καὶ
 ταῦτα φίλια τοῖς συμμάχοις ὑπάρχειν. ὁ οὖν Κῦρος
 ἐπεὶ πάντας ἐώρα προθύμους ὄντας πράττειν ὅσα ἔλεξε,
 τέλος εἶπεν· Εἰ τοίνυν περαίνειν βουλόμεθα ὅσα φαμέν
 χρῆναι ποιεῖν, ὥς τάχιστ' ἂν δέοι γενέσθαι μηχανὰς μὲν
 εἰς τὸ καθαιρεῖν τὰ τῶν πολεμίων τείχη, τέκτονας δὲ εἰς
 τὸ ἡμῖν ὀχυρὰ πυργοῦσθαι. ἐκ τούτου ὑπέσχετο ὁ μὲν
 Κναξάρης μηχανὴν αὐτὸς ποιησάμενος παρέξειν, ἄλλην
 δὲ Γαδάτας καὶ Γωβρύας, ἄλλην δὲ Τιγράνης· αὐτὸς δὲ
 Κῦρος ἔφη δύο πειράσεσθαι ποιήσασθαι. ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτ'
 ἔδοξεν, ἐπορίζοντο μὲν μηχανοποιούς, παρεσκευάζοντο δ'
 ἕκαστοι εἰς τὰς μηχανὰς ὧν ἔδει· ἄνδρας δ' ἐπέστησαν οἳ
 ἐδόκουν ἐπιτηδειότατοι εἶναι ἀμφὶ ταῦτ' ἔχειν.

Κῦρος δ' ἐπεὶ ἔγνω ὅτι διατριβὴ ἔσται ἀμφὶ ταῦτα, ἐκάθισε
 τὸ στράτευμα ἔνθα ὤρετο ὑγιεινότατον εἶναι

Ὡς δὲ ταύτ' ἐρρήθη, οἳ τε ἄλλοι πάντες ἀνιστάμενοι

|συμπροθυμέομαι?: share in eagerness with; or ξάρης. Γαδάτας
|συμπροθυμέομαι?: share in eagerness with

δὲ καὶ Γωβρύας καὶ |outdoor |each of two αὐτῶν, ἥν
|wall

|entrust, decide, οἱ σύμμαχοι, |build ἔφασαν, ὥστε καὶ
|allow

ταῦτα |friendly οἷς συμμάχοις |there is . . . ὁ οὖν |authority;
|validity

ἐπεὶ πάντας ἑώρα |willing, ὄντας πράττειν ὅσα ἔλεξε,
|eager

|end εἶπεν· Εἰ |well, |finish, βουλόμεθα ὅσα φαμέν
|then |accomplish

χρῆναι ποιεῖν, ὡς τάχιστ' ἂν δέοι γενέσθαι |machine; mecha-
|nism, way

εἰς τὸ |take down, close ὃν πολέμων |outdoor|worker
|wall

τὸ ἡμῖν |strong, |wall, fortify . . . ἐκ τούτου |promise ὁ μὲν
|secure

Κυαξάρης |machine; mecha- ποιησάμενος |furnish , ἄλλην
|nism, way

δὲ Γαδάτας καὶ Γωβρύας, ἄλλην δὲ Τιγράνης· αὐτὸς δὲ

Κῦρος ἔφη δύο πειράσεσθαι ποιήσασθαι. ἐπεὶ δὲ ταύτ'

ἔδοξεν, |bring about, μὲν |engineer , |prepare, render δ'
|provide

ἕκαστοι εἰς τὰς |machine; mecha- εἰ· ἄνδρας δ' |set; (mp) come/be near, di-
|nism, way |rect, stop

ἐδόκουν |fit, suitable εἶναι ἀμφὶ ταύτ' ἔχειν.

Κῦρος δ' ἐπεὶ ἔγνω ὅτι |activity, waste, |ai ἀμφὶ ταῦτα, |set, sit, alight,
|of time |set up

τὸ |army ἔνθα ᾔετο ὑγιεινότατον εἶναι

you out in the distance.”

At this the whole assembly rose to express their eagerness and assent, and Cyaxares stood up with them. And both Gادات and Gobryas offered to fortify a post if the allies wished, and thus provide two cities of refuge to start with.

Finally Cyrus, thus assured of the general consent to his proposals, said, "If we really wish to carry out what we have set ourselves, we must prepare battering-rams and siege engines, and get together mechanics and builders for our own castles." Thereupon Cyaxares at once undertook to provide an engine at his own expense, Gادات and Gobryas made themselves responsible for a second, Tigranes for a third, and Cyrus himself promised he would try to furnish two. That done, every one set to work to find engineers and artisans and to collect material for the machines; and superintendents were appointed from those best qualified for the work.

Now Cyrus was aware that all this would take some time, and therefore he encamped his troops in the healthiest spot he could find and the easiest to supply, strengthening,

vocabulary

ἀγωγή carrying; leadership
 ἀλίσκομαι be captured ~helix
 ἀντίπαλος rival; balanced
 ἀποστρατοπεδεύω camp away from
 ἀργύριον small coin
 ἀσφαλής safe, easy, steady, careful
 αὐτόμολος deserting, defecting
 ἐκπίμπλημι fulfil, accomplish
 ἐξάγω lead out ~demagogue
 ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable
 ἐρρωμένος vigorous, powerful
 ἐρωτάω ask about something
 εὐπρόσοδος accessible
 ἵππικός of horses ~hippo
 ἰσχύς -ος (f) strength; body of troops
 ἰσχύω be strong; win
 κτῆμα -τος (n, 3) possession
 οἶχομαι come, go, leave, be gone
 ὁπόθεν whence
 παντοδαπής of every kind, manifold

παντοδαπός of every kind, manifold
 Πέρσης Persian
 πορεία gait, march
 πότε when?
 προνομή foraging
 προσδέω bind also; need also
 πρόσω forward, in the future; far
 στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy
 στρατιά army ~strategy
 στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier,
 mercenary ~strategy
 συνίστημι unite; confront in battle
 ~station
 τάλαντον scale, a unit of weight
 ~talent
 τάξις -εως (f) arrangement, military
 unit
 ὑγιαίνω be healthy
 χρυσίον (ῥ) gold coin
 ὠφελέω help, be useful

καὶ εὐπροσοδώτατον ὅσα ἔδει προσκομίζεσθαι· ὅσα τε ἐρυμνότητος προσεδείτο, ἐποιήσατο, ὥς ἐν ἀσφαλεῖ οἱ αἰεὶ μένοντες εἶεν, εἴ ποτε καὶ πρόσω τῇ ἰσχύϊ ἀποστρατοπεδεύοιτο. πρὸς δὲ τούτοις ἐρωτῶν οὖς ᾤετο μάλιστα εἰδέναι τὴν χώραν ὁπόθεν ἂν ὥς πλείστα ὠφελοῖτο τὸ στράτευμα, ἐξῆγεν αἰεὶ εἰς προνομάς, ἅμα μὲν ὅπως ὅτι πλείστα λαμβάνοι τῇ στρατιᾷ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἅμα δ' ὅπως μᾶλλον ὑγιαίνοιεν καὶ ἰσχύοιεν διαπονούμενοι ταῖς πορείαις, ἅμα δ' ὅπως ἐν ταῖς ἀγωγαῖς τὰς τάξεις ὑπομμνήσκοιντο. ὁ μὲν δὴ Κῦρος ἐν τούτοις ἦν.

Ἐκ δὲ Βαβυλῶνος οἱ αὐτόμολοι καὶ οἱ ἀλίσκόμενοι ταῦτ' ἔλεγον ὅτι ὁ Ἀσσύριος οἷχοιτο ἐπὶ Λυδίας, πολλὰ τάλαντα χρυσίου καὶ ἀργυρίου ἄγων καὶ ἄλλα κτήματα καὶ κόσμον παντοδαπόν. ὁ μὲν οὖν ὄχλος τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἔλεγεν ὥς ὑπεκτίθιοιτο ἤδη τὰ χρήματα φοβούμενος· ὁ δὲ Κῦρος γιγνώσκων ὅτι οἷχοιτο συστήσων εἴ τι δύναιτο ἀντίπαλον ἐαυτῷ, ἀντιπαρεσκευάζετο ἐρρωμένως, ὥς μάχης ἔτι δεῖσον· ὥστ' ἐξεπίμπλη μὲν τὸ τῶν Περσῶν ἵππικόν,

καὶ |accessible ὅσα ἔδει προσκομίζεσθαι· ὅσα τε
 ἐρμυνότητος |bind also; need also ᾔσατο, ὥς ἐν |safe, easy, steady,
 |careful οἱ αἰεὶ μένοντες εἶεν, εἴ ποτε καὶ |forward, in the strength; body of
 |future; far |troops ἀποστρατοπεδεύοιτο. πρὸς δὲ τούτοις |ask οὗς
 ᾤετο μάλιστα εἰδέναι τὴν χώραν |whence ἂν ὥς πλείστα
 |help, be useful |army , |lead out ἰεὶ εἰς |foraging , ἅμα
 μὲν ὅπως ὅτι πλείστα λαμβάνοι τῇ |army τὰ |fit, suitable ,
 ἅμα δ' ὅπως μᾶλλον |be healthy καὶ |be strong; win νούμενοι
 ταῖς |gait, march , ἅμα δ' ὅπως ἐν ταῖς |carrying; γὰς τάξεις
 |leadership ὑπομμνήσκοντο. ὁ μὲν δὲ Κῦρος ἐν τούτοις ἦν.

Ἐκ δὲ Βαβυλῶνος οἱ |deserting, καὶ οἱ |be captured ταῦτ'
 |defecting ἔλεγον ὅτι ὁ Ἀσσύριος |come, go ἐπὶ Λυδίας, πολλὰ |scale, a unit
 |of weight |gold coin καὶ |small coin ἄγων καὶ ἄλλα |possession καὶ κόσμον
 παντοδαπόν. ὁ μὲν οὖν ὄχλος τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἔλεγεν
 ὥς ὑπεκτίθοντο ἤδη τὰ χρήματα φοβούμενος· ὁ δὲ Κῦρος
 γιγνώσκων ὅτι |come, go |unite; confront ἵδναιτο |rival;
 |in battle |balanced ἐαυτῷ, ἀντιπαρεσκευάζετο |vigorous,
 |powerful , ὥς μάχης ἔτι
 δεῖσον· ὥστ' |fulfil, μὲν τὸ τῶν Περσῶν |of horses,
 |accomplish

wherever necessary, the natural defences of the place, so that the detachment left in charge for the time should always be in complete security, even though he might be absent himself with the main body of his force. Nor was this all; he questioned those who knew the country best, and, learning where he would be rewarded for his pains, he would lead his men out to forage, and thus procure as large supplies as possible, keep his soldiers in the best of health and strength, and fix their drill in their minds.

So Cyrus spent his days, and meanwhile the deserters from Babylon and the prisoners who were captured all told the same story: they said that the king had gone off to Lydia, taking with him store of gold and silver, and riches and treasures of every kind. The mass of the soldiers were convinced that he was storing his goods away from fear, but Cyrus knew that he must have gone to raise, if possible, an opponent who could face them, and therefore he pushed his preparations forward vigorously, feeling that another battle must be fought. He filled up

vocabulary

αἰχμάλωτος captive ~acute
ἀκροβολίζομαι fight with missiles
ἄλλοθεν from elsewhere ~alien
ἄπωθέω repel, reject
ἄρμα -τος (n, 3) chariot
βάρος -ους (n, 3) weight, burden
βέλτιστος best, noblest
βλάπτω break, make fail
διακόσιοι (ἄ) two hundred
εἰκός likely
ἡνίοχος rein holder
καταλύω unyoke; destroy ~loose

κατασκευάζω equip, build
κράτιστος best
ὄπλον tool, weapon, ship's tackle
 ~hoplite
ὀπόθεν whence
πρόσθεν before (time, space)
προστίθμι add; impose; (mp) agree;
 side with ~thesis
συμβάλλω pit against; compare; mp:
 meet, fall in with ~ballistic
τριακόσιοι three hundred ~three
χίλιοι (ιι) thousand ~kilo-

τοὺς μὲν ἐκ τῶν αἰχμαλώτων, τοὺς δὲ τινὰς καὶ παρὰ
 τῶν φίλων λαμβάνων ἵππους· ταῦτα γὰρ παρὰ πάντων
 ἐδέχετο καὶ ἀπεωθεῖτο οὐδέν, οὔτε εἴ τις ὄπλον διδοίη
 καλὸν οὔτ' εἴ τις ἵππον· κατεσκευάζετο δὲ καὶ ἄρματα
 ἐκ τε τῶν αἰχμαλώτων ἀρμάτων καὶ ἄλλοθεν ὁπόθεν
 ἐδύνατο. καὶ τὴν μὲν Τρωικὴν διφρεῖαν πρόσθεν οὔσαν
 καὶ τὴν Κυρηναίων ἔτι καὶ νῦν ἀρματηλασίαν κατέλυσε·
 τὸν γὰρ πρόσθεν χρόνον καὶ οἱ ἐν τῇ Μηδίᾳ καὶ Συρίᾳ
 καὶ Ἀραβίᾳ καὶ πάντες οἱ ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ τοῖς ἄρμασιν
 οὕτως ἐχρῶντο ὥσπερ νῦν οἱ Κυρηναῖοι. ἔδοξε δ' αὐτῷ,
 ὃ κράτιστον εἰκὸς ἦν εἶναι τῆς δυνάμεως, ὄντων τῶν
 βελτίστων ἐπὶ τοῖς ἄρμασι, τοῦτο ἐν ἀκροβολιστῶν μέρει
 εἶναι καὶ εἰς τὸ κρατεῖν οὐδὲν μέγα βάρος συμβάλλεσθαι.
 ἄρματα γὰρ τριακόσια τοὺς μὲν μαχομένους παρέχεται
 τριακοσίους, ἵπποις δ' οὗτοι χρῶνται διακοσίους καὶ
 χιλίοις· ἡνίοχοι δ' αὐτοῖς εἰσὶ μὲν ὡς εἰκὸς οἷς μάλιστα
 πιστεύουσιν, οἱ βέλτιστοι· ἄλλοι δὲ εἰσὶ τριακόσιοι οὗτοι,
 οἳ οὐδ' ὅτιοῦν τοὺς πολεμίους βλάπτουσι. ταύτην μὲν

τοὺς μὲν ἐκ τῶν |captive , τοὺς δέ τινας καὶ παρὰ
 τῶν φίλων λαμβάνων ἵππους· ταῦτα γὰρ παρὰ πάντων
 |accept, receive, |repel, reject οὐδέν, οὔτε εἴ τις |tool διδοίη
 |await
 καλὸν οὗτ' εἴ τις ἵππον· |equip, build δὲ καὶ |chariot
 ἔκ τε τῶν |captive |chariot καὶ |from else-|whence
 |where
 ἐδύνατο. καὶ τὴν μὲν Τρωικὴν διφρέϊαν πρόσθεν οὔσαν
 καὶ τὴν Κυρηναίων ἔτι καὶ νῦν ἄρματῆλασίαν |unyoke;
 |destroy
 τὸν γὰρ πρόσθεν χρόνον καὶ οἱ ἐν τῇ Μηδίᾳ καὶ Συρίᾳ
 καὶ Ἀραβίᾳ καὶ πάντες οἱ ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ τοῖς |chariot
 οὕτως ἐχρῶντο ὥσπερ νῦν οἱ Κυρηναῖοι. ἔδοξε δ' αὐτῷ,
 ὃ |best |likely ἦν εἶναι τῆς δυνάμεως, ὄντων τῶν
 |best, noblest ἐπὶ τοῖς |chariot , τοῦτο ἐν |fight with missiles, ἔρει
 εἶναι καὶ εἰς τὸ |rule οὐδὲν μέγα |weight, |pit against; compare; mp:
 |burden |meet, fall in with
 |chariot γὰρ |three τοὺς μὲν μαχομένους |furnish
 |hundred
 |three hundred ἵπποις δ' οὗτοι χρῶνται |two hundred καὶ
 χιλίοις· |rein holder αὐτοῖς εἰς μὲν ὥς |likely οἷς μάλιστα
 πιστεύουσιν, οἱ |best, ἄλλοι δὲ εἰς |three οὔτοι,
 |noblest |hundred
 οἱ οὐδ' ὅτι οὖν τοὺς πολεμίους |break, make fail... ἵτην μὲν

the Persian cavalry to its full complement, getting the horses partly from the prisoners, partly from his own friends. There were two gifts he would never refuse, horses and good weapons. He also procured chariots, taking them from the enemy or wherever he could find them. The old Trojan type of charioteering, still in use to this day among the Cyrenaeans, he abolished; before his time the Medes, the Syrians, the Arabians, and all Asiatics generally, used their chariots in the same way as the Cyrenaeans do now. The fault of the system to his mind was that the very flower of the army, if the picked men were in the chariots, could only act at long range and so contribute little after all to the victory. Three hundred chariots meant twelve hundred horses and three hundred fighting-men, besides the charioteers, who would naturally be men above the common, in whom the warriors could place confidence: and that meant another three hundred debarred from injuring the enemy in any kind of way. Such was the

*vocabulary***ἀγκών** -ος (m, 3) elbow

~ankylosaurus

ἄημι blow**αἰχμάλωτος** captive ~acute**ἀνατρέπω** defeat, thwart ~trophy**ἄξων** ἄξονος (m, 3) axle ~axon**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot**δίπηγος** 2 cubits long**δίφρος** seat, chariot box ~bear**δρέπανον** sickle ~dermatology**ἐμβάλλω** throw in; inspire a mental state ~ballistic**ἐνθεν** thence, whence**ἐντίθημι** load; mp: take to heart

~thesis

ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable**ἡνιοχέω** hold reins**ἡνίοχος** rein holder**θωρακίζω** (ἄ) to arm, armor**ἰσχυρός** (ῶ) strong, forceful, violent**κάμηλος** (f) camel**καταλύω** unyoke; destroy ~loose**κατασκευάζω** equip, build**κατάσκοπος** spy, inspector**μέχρι** as far as, until**ξύλον** piece of wood ~xylophone**πλατύς** extensive, wide**πολεμιστήριος** of/for a warrior**προστίθημι** add; impose; (mp) agree; side with ~thesis**πύργος** ramparts, tower; line of troops**σιδήρεος** of iron ~siderite**συλλέγω** collect, assemble ~legion**συμπεραίνω** accomplish together**συναθροίζω** assemble, gather**συντρίβω** pulverize**τροχός** wheel**ὕψος** ὕψους (n, 3) height, summit

οὖν τὴν διφρείαν κατέλυσεν· ἀντὶ δὲ τούτου πολεμιστήρια κατεσκευάσατο ἄρματα τροχοῖς τε ἰσχυροῖς, ὥς μὴ ῥαδίως συντρίβηται, ἄξοσί τε μακροῖς· ἦττον γὰρ ἀνατρέπεται πάντα τὰ πλατέα· τὸν δὲ δίφρον τοῖς ἡνιόχοις ἐποίησεν ὥσπερ πύργον ἰσχυρῶν ξύλων· ὕψος δὲ τούτων ἐστὶ μέχρι τῶν ἀγκώνων, ὥς δύνωνται ἡνιοχεῖσθαι οἱ ἵπποι ὑπὲρ τῶν δίφρων· τοὺς δ' ἡνιόχους ἐθωράκισε πάντα πλὴν τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν. προσέθηκε δὲ καὶ δρέπανα σιδηρὰ ὥς διπήχη πρὸς τοὺς ἄξονας ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν τῶν τροχῶν καὶ ἄλλα κάτω ὑπὸ τῷ ἄξονι εἰς τὴν γῆν βλέποντα, ὥς ἐμβαλόντων εἰς τοὺς ἐναντίους τοῖς ἄρμασιν. ὥς δὲ τότε Κῦρος ταῦτα κατεσκεύασεν, οὕτως ἔτι καὶ νῦν τοῖς ἄρμασι χρῶνται οἱ ἐν τῇ βασιλείᾳ χώρα. ἦσαν δὲ αὐτῷ καὶ κάμηλοι πολλαὶ παρά τε τῶν φίλων συνειλεγμένοι καὶ αἱ αἰχμάλωτοι πᾶσαι συνηθροισμένοι. καὶ ταῦτα μὲν οὕτω συνεπεραίνετο.

Βουλόμενος δὲ κατάσκοπόν τινα πέμψαι ἐπὶ Λυδίας καὶ μαθεῖν ὅ τι πράττοι ὁ Ἀσσύριος, ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ ἐπιτήδειος

οὖν τὴν διφρείαν |unyoke; |destroy ἄντὶ δὲ τούτου |of/for a warrior
 |equip, build |chariot |wheel τε ἰσχυροῖς, ὥς μὴ
 ῥαδίως |pulverize , |axle τε μακροῖς· ἦττον γὰρ
 |defeat, thwart πάντα τὰ |extensive, wide δὲ δίφρον τοῖς
 |rein holder 'ποιήσεν ὥσπερ |wall, |tower ἰσχυρῶν ξύλων· |height, |summit
 δὲ τούτων ἐστὶ μέχρι τῶν |elbow , ὥς δύνωνται
 |hold reins οἱ ἵπποι ὑπὲρ τῶν δίφρων· τοὺς δ' |rein holder
 |to arm, armor ἵντα πλὴν τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν. προσέθηκε δὲ καὶ
 |sickle σιδηρὰ ὥς |2 cubits ὅς τοὺς |axle ἔνθεν καὶ
 ἔνθεν τῶν |wheel καὶ ἄλλα κάτω ὑπὸ τῷ |axle εἰς τὴν
 γῆν βλέποντα, ὥς ἐμβαλόντων εἰς τοὺς ἐναντίους τοῖς
 |chariot ὥς δὲ τότε Κῦρος ταῦτα |equip, build , οὕτως
 ἔτι καὶ νῦν τοῖς |chariot χρῶνται οἱ ἐν τῇ βασιλείᾳ χώρα.
 ἦσαν δὲ αὐτῷ καὶ |camel πολλαὶ παρά τε τῶν φίλων
 |collect, assemble καὶ αἱ |captive πᾶσαι |assemble, gather
 καὶ ταῦτα μὲν οὕτω συνεπεραίνετο.

Βουλόμενος δὲ |spy, inspector τινα πέμψαι ἐπὶ Λυδίας καὶ
 μαθεῖν ὅ τι πράττοι ὁ Ἀσσύριος, ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ |fit, suitable

system he abolished in favour of the war-chariot proper, with strong wheels to resist the shock of collision, and long axles, on the principle that a broad base is the firmer, while the driver's seat was changed into what might be called a turret, stoutly built of timber and reaching up to the elbow, leaving the driver room to manage the horses above the rim. The drivers themselves were all fully armed, only their eyes uncovered. He had iron scythes about two feet long attached to the axles on either side, and others, under the tree, pointing to the ground, for use in a charge. Such was the type of chariot invented by Cyrus, and it is still in use to-day among the subjects of the Great King. Beside the chariots he had a large number of camels, collected from his friends or captured from the enemy. Moreover, he decided to send a spy into Lydia to ascertain the movements of the king, and he thought that the right man for this

*vocabulary***ἀδικία** injustice, offence**ἀναγκάζω** force, compel**ἀπειλέω** vow, threaten, boast**ἀπόφημι** speak out ~fame**ἀσέβεια** impiety**βιάζω** use force on, violate**βιόω** live; (mp) make a living ~biology**ἐκών** willingly, on purpose; giving in too easily**ἔρως** -τος (m) love, desire ~erotic**εὐνοῦχος** eunuch**ἰσχυρός** (ῥ) strong, forceful, violent**καίπερ** even if**κατηγορέω** accuse; indicate**κρείσσων** more powerful; better**κρύπτω** hide, cover ~cryptic**κωλύω** (ῥ) hinder, prevent**λοιδορέω** abuse, revile**ὀκνέω** shrink from, hesitate; worry**ὀνομάζω** to address, name ~name**παρακαταθήκη** a deposit in trust**πιστός** faithful; trustworthy**προσφέρω** present; resemble; add**συμβάλλω** pit against; compare; mp: meet, fall in with ~ballistic**συνουσία** society, sex**τοιόσδε** such**ὑπηρετέω** serve**φάσκω** declare, promise, think ~fame

εἶναι Ἀράσπας ἐλθεῖν ἐπὶ τοῦτο ὁ φυλάττων τὴν καλὴν
 γυναῖκα. συνεβεβήκει γὰρ τῷ Ἀράσπα τοιάδε. ληφθεὶς
 ἔρωτι τῆς γυναικὸς ἠναγκάσθη προσενεγκεῖν λόγους αὐτῇ
 περὶ συνουσίας. ἡ δὲ ἀπέφησε μὲν καὶ ἦν πιστὴ τῷ
 ἀνδρὶ καίπερ ἀπόντι· ἐφίλει γὰρ αὐτὸν ἰσχυρῶς· οὐ μέντοι
 κατηγόρησε τοῦ Ἀράσπου πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον, ὀκνοῦσα
 συμβαλεῖν φίλους ἄνδρας. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ Ἀράσπας δοκῶν
 ὑπηρετήσῃν τῷ τυχεῖν ἃ ἐβούλετο ἠπειλήσε τῇ γυναικὶ
 ὅτι εἰ μὴ βούλοιτο ἐκοῦσα, ἄκουσα ποιήσοι ταῦτα, ἐκ
 τούτου ἡ γυνή, ὥς ἔδεισε τὴν βίαν, οὐκέτι κρύπτει,
 ἀλλὰ πέμπει τὸν εὐνούχον πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον καὶ κελεύει
 λέξαι πάντα. ὁ δ' ὥς ἤκουσεν, ἀναγέλασας ἐπὶ τῷ
 κρείττονι τοῦ ἔρωτος φάσκοντι εἶναι, πέμπει Ἀρτάβαζον
 σὺν τῷ εὐνούχῳ καὶ κελεύει αὐτῷ εἰπεῖν βιάζεσθαι μὲν μὴ
 τοιαύτην γυναῖκα, πείθειν δὲ εἰ δύναιτο, οὐκ ἔφη κωλύειν.
 ἐλθὼν δ' ὁ Ἀρτάβαζος πρὸς τὸν Ἀράσπαν ἐλοιδόρησεν
 αὐτόν, παρακαταθήκην ὀνομάζων τὴν γυναῖκα, ἀσέβειάν
 τε αὐτοῦ λέγων ἀδικίαν τε καὶ ἀκράτειαν, ὥστε τὸν

εἶναι Ἀράσπας ἐλθεῖν ἐπὶ τοῦτο ὁ guard;
watch τὴν καλὴν

γυναῖκα. συνεβεβήκει γὰρ τῷ Ἀράσπᾳ |such . ληφθεῖς

love, desire	τῆς γυναικὸς force, compel present; resem- λόγους αὐτῇ ble; add
------------------	--

περὶ συνουσίας. ἡ δὲ |speak out μὲν καὶ ἡν |faithful; . ᾧ
|trustworthy

<i>ἀνδρὶ</i>	even if	be absent, 'go'	<i>ἀλλὰ γὰρ αὐτὸν</i>	strong, force'	however
		away, return		ful, violent	

accuse;	τοῦ Ἀράσπου πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον,	hesitate;
indicate		worry

|pit against; cōmpare; ἄνδρας. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ Ἀράσπας δοκῶν
|mp: meet, fall in with

|serve τῷ τυχεῖν ἃ ἐβούλετο ἠπειλῆσε τῇ γυναικὶ

ὅτι εἰ μὴ βούλοιοτο |willingly, ἄκουσα ποιήσοι ταῦτα, ἐκ

τούτου ἡ γυνή, ὥς |to fear τὴν βίαν, |no more |hide, ,
|cover

ἀλλὰ πέμπει τὸν |eunuch πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον καὶ κελεύει

λέξαι πάντα. ὁ δ' ὥς ἤκουσεν, ἀναγελάσας ἐπὶ τῷ

κρείττονι τοῦ | love, | declare, promise, , πέμπει Ἀρτάβαζον
| desire | think

σὺν τῷ |eunuch καὶ κελεύει αὐτῷ εἰπεῖν |βιάζω?: use force, on; or βιάζω?:
use force on

τοιαύτην γυναῖκα, πείθειν δὲ εἰ δύναιτο, οὐκ ἔφη hinder,
prevent

ἐλθὼν δ' ὁ Ἀρτάβαζος πρὸς τὸν Ἀράσπαν | abuse, revile

αὐτόν, |a deposit in trust |to address, name , *νναῖκα*, |impeity

τε αὐτοῦ λέγων | injustice, τε καὶ ἀκράτειαν, ὥστε τὸν
| offence

purpose was Araspas, the officer in charge of the fair lady from Susa. Matters had gone ill with Araspas: he had fallen passionately in love with his prisoner, and been led to entreat her to be his paramour. She had refused, faithful to her husband who was far away, for she loved him dearly, but she forbore to accuse Araspas to Cyrus, being unwilling to set friend at strife with friend. But when at length Araspas, thinking it would help him in his desires, began to threaten her, saying that if she would not yield he would have his will of her by force, then in her dread of violence she could keep the matter hid no longer, and she sent her eunuch to Cyrus with orders to tell him everything. And when Cyrus heard it he smiled over the man who had boasted that he was superior to love, and sent Artabazus back with the eunuch to tell Araspas that he must use no violence against such a woman, but if he could persuade her, he might do so. But Artabazus, when he saw Araspas, rebuked him sternly, saying that the woman was a sacred trust, and his conduct disgraceful, impious,

*vocabulary***αἰσχύνῃ** (ῶ) shame, dishonor**αἰσχύνω** (ῶ) spoil, disgrace, disfigure, mar**αἵτιος** blameworthy; the cause

~etiology

ἀμάρτημα -τος (n, 3) failure, fault**ἄμαχος** unconquerable; noncombatant**ἀμελέω** disregard; (impers.) of course**ἀνθρώπινος** human**δακρύω** weep**διέρχομαι** pierce, traverse**ἐκποδών** out of the way**ἔρως** -τος (m) love, desire ~erotic**ἡσάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (active) defeat**θρόος** -ῶ sound**καρτερέω** be patient**καταγιγνώσκω** judge negatively**καταδύω** enter, sink**καταμανθάνω** examine, observe**λύπη** distress**ὅμοιος** like ~homoerotic**πρᾶος** soft, gentle**πρόσεμι** approach, draw near; add

~ion

προσίημι be allowed near**συμβουλευώ** give advice; (mid) consult

~volunteer

συμφορά collecting; accident, misfortune**σύνειμι** be with; have sex ~ion**ὑπολαμβάνω** take under one's support, seize; speak up; imagine

~epilepsy

φρόνιμος sensible, prudent

Ἀράσπαν πολλὰ μὲν δακρύειν ὑπὸ λύπης, καταδύεσθαι δ' ὑπὸ τῆς αἰσχύνης, ἀπολωλέναι δὲ τῷ φόβῳ μή τι καὶ πάθοι ὑπὸ Κύρου.

Ὁ Οὖν Κύρος καταμαθὼν ταῦτα ἐκάλεσεν αὐτὸν καὶ μόνος μόνῳ ἔλεξεν· Ὅρῳ σε, ἔφη, ὦ Ἀράσπα, φοβούμενόν τε ἐμέ καὶ ἐν αἰσχύνῃ δεινῶς ἔχοντα. παῦσαι οὖν τούτων· ἐγὼ γὰρ θεοὺς τε ἀκούω ἔρωτος ἡττησθαι, ἀνθρώπους τε οἶδα καὶ μάλα δοκοῦντας φρονίμους εἶναι οἷα πεπόνθασιν ὑπ' ἔρωτος· καὶ αὐτὸς δ' ἑμαυτοῦ κατέγνων μὴ ἂν καρτερῆσαι ὥστε συνὼν καλοῖς ἀμελεῖν αὐτῶν. καὶ σοὶ δὲ τούτου τοῦ πράγματος ἐγὼ αἰτιός εἰμι· ἐγὼ γάρ σε συγκατείρξα τούτῳ τῷ ἀμάχῳ πράγματι. καὶ ὁ Ἀράσπας ὑπολαβὼν εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ σὺ μὲν, ὦ Κῦρε, καὶ ταῦτα ὅμοιος εἶ οἷός περ καὶ τᾶλλα, πρῶός τε καὶ συγγνώμων τῶν ἀνθρωπίνων ἀμαρτημάτων· ἐμὲ δ', ἔφη, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ἄνθρωποι καταδύουσι τῷ ἄχει. ὥς γὰρ ὁ θροῦς διήλθε τῆς ἐμῆς συμφορᾶς, οἱ μὲν ἐχθροὶ ἐφῆδονταί μοι, οἱ δὲ φίλοι προσιόντες συμβουλεύουσιν ἐκποδὼν ἔχειν ἑμαυτόν,

Ἀράσπαν πολλὰ μὲν |weep ὑπὸ |distress |enter, sink

δ' ὑπὸ τῆς |shame, , ἀπολωλέναι δὲ τῷ |fear μή τι καὶ
|dishonor
πάθοι ὑπὸ Κύρου.

Ὁ Οὖν Κῦρος |examine, ταῦτα ἐκάλεσεν αὐτὸν καὶ μόνος
|observe
μόνῳ ἔλεξεν· Ὅρῳ σε, ἔφη, ὦ Ἀράσπα, φοβούμενόν τε
ἐμὲ καὶ ἐν αἰσχύνῃ δεινῶς ἔχοντα. |stop οὖν τούτων·

ἐγὼ γὰρ θεοὺς τε ἀκούω |love, |(pass) be weaker, bé over- τε
|desire |come; (active) defeat
οἶδα καὶ μάλα δοκοῦντας |sensible, εἶναι οἶα πεπόνθασιν
|prudent

ὑπ' |love, καὶ αὐτὸς δ' ἐμαντοῦ |judge negatively, ἂν
|desire
|be patient ὥστε |be with; have sex|disregard ὑτῶν. καὶ σοὶ

δὲ τούτου τοῦ πράγματος ἐγὼ |blameworthy; ἐγὼ γάρ σε
|the cause
συγκατεῖρξα τούτῳ τῷ |unconquerable; τι. καὶ ὁ Ἀράσπας
|noncombatant

|take under one's support, σὺ μὲν, ὦ Κῦρε, καὶ ταῦτα |like
|seize; speak up; imagine

εἰ οἴοσπερ καὶ τᾶλλα, |soft, τε καὶ συγγνώμων τῶν
|gentle

|human |failure, fault ἐμὲ δ', ἔφη, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι

ἄνθρωποι |enter, sink τῷ ἄχει. ὥς γὰρ ὁ |sound |pierce, ἧς
|traverse

ἐμῆς |collecting; , ἀccident, |hated, distasteful. τί μοι, οἱ δὲ φίλοι
|misfortune

προσιόντες |give advice; (mid)|out of the way... ἐμαντόν,
|consult

and wicked, till Araspas burst into tears of misery and shame, and was half dead at the thought of what Cyrus would do. Learning this, Cyrus sent for him, saw him alone, and said to him face to face:

"Araspas, I know that you are afraid of me and in an agony of shame. Be comforted; we are told that the gods themselves are made subject to desire, and I could tell you what love has forced some men to undergo, men who seemed most lofty and most wise. Did I not pass sentence on myself, when I confessed I was too weak to consort with loveliness and remain unmoved? Indeed it is I who am most to blame in the matter, for I shut you up myself with this irresistible power."

But Araspas broke in on his words:

"Ah, Cyrus, you are ever the same, gentle and compassionate to human weaknesses. But all the rest of the world has no pity on me; they drown me in wretchedness. As soon as the tattlers got wind of my misfortune, all my enemies exulted, and my friends came to me, advising me to make away with myself for fear of you,

vocabulary

ἄδικος unfair; obstinate, bad
ἀπολείπω leave behind, fail ~eclipse
ἀπολιμπάνω leave behind, fail
βούλευμα -τος (n, 3) resolution,
 purpose
ἐκφεύγω flee from, escape ~fugitive
ἰσχυρός (ῶ) strong, forceful, violent
κοινωνός partner
ναί yea
πιστός faithful; trustworthy

πιστόω reassure; also (pass) promise
προσποιέω give over to; pretend
 ~poet
σαφής clear, understandable
σοφίζω be clever, tricky
σοφιστής -οῦ (m, 1) expert
τοίνυν well, then
φιλοσοφέω philosophize, study
χαρίζομαι gratify ~charisma
χρήσιμος useful
ὠφελέω help, be useful

μή τι καὶ πάθω ὑπὸ σοῦ, ὡς ἡδικηκότος ἐμοῦ μεγάλα. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπεν· Εὖ τοίνυν ἴσθι, ὦ Ἀράσπα, ὅτι ταύτῃ τῇ δόξῃ οἶός τ' εἰ ἐμοί τε ἰσχυρῶς χαρίσασθαι καὶ τοὺς συμμάχους μεγάλα ὠφελῆσαι. Εἰ γὰρ γένοιτο, ἔφη ὁ Ἀράσπας, ὅ τι ἐγὼ σοι ἐν καιρῷ ἂν γενοίμην αὐτῷ χρήσιμος. Εἰ τοίνυν, ἔφη, προσποιησάμενος ἐμὲ φεύγειν ἐθέλοις εἰς τοὺς πολεμίους ἐλθεῖν, οἴομαι ἂν σε πιστευθῆναι ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων. Ἔγωγε ναὶ μὰ Δί', ἔφη ὁ Ἀράσπας, καὶ ὑπὸ τῶν φίλων οἶδα ὅτι ὡς σὲ πεφευγὼς λόγον ἂν παρέχοιμι. Ἔλθοις ἂν τοίνυν, ἔφη, ἡμῖν πάντα εἰδὼς τὰ τῶν πολεμίων· οἶμαι δὲ καὶ λόγων καὶ βουλευμάτων κοινωνὸν ἂν σε ποιοῖντο διὰ τὸ πιστεύειν, ὥστε μὴδὲ ἔν σε λεληθέναι ὦν βουλόμεθα εἰδέναι. Ὡς πορευσομένου, ἔφη, ἤδη νυνί· καὶ γὰρ τοῦτο ἴσως ἐν τῶν πιστῶν ἔσται τὸ δοκεῖν με ὑπὸ σοῦ μελλήσαντά τι παθεῖν ἐκπεφευγέναι. Ἡ καὶ δυνήσῃ ἀπολιπεῖν, ἔφη, τὴν καλὴν Πάνθειαν; Δύο γάρ, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, σαφῶς ἔχω ψυχάς· νῦν τοῦτο πεφιλοσόφηκα μετὰ τοῦ ἀδίκου σοφιστοῦ τοῦ Ἑρωτος.

μή τι καὶ πάθω ὑπὸ σοῦ, ὥς ^{|be, do wrong; wrong someone} οὐ μεγάλα.
καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπεν· Εὖ ^{|well, then} θι, ὦ Ἀράσπα, ὅτι ταύτη
τῇ δόξῃ οἶός τ' εἰ ἐμοί τε ^{|strong, forceful, violent} |gratify καὶ τοὺς
συμμάχους μεγάλα ^{|help, be useful} ὅτι γὰρ γένοιτο, ἔφη ὁ
Ἀράσπας, ὅ τι ἐγὼ σοι ἐν καιρῷ ἂν γενοίμην αὖ ^{|useful}
Εἰ ^{|well, then} ῥη, ^{|give over to; pretend} ἐμὲ φεύγειν ἐθέλεις εἰς
τοὺς πολεμίους ἐλθεῖν, οἴομαι ἂν σε πιστευθῆναι ὑπὸ
τῶν πολεμίων. Ἐγώ γε ^{|yea} μὰ Δί', ἔφη ὁ Ἀράσπας,
καὶ ὑπὸ τῶν φίλων οἶδα ὅτι ὥς σὲ πεφευγὼς λόγον ἂν
παρέχοιμι. Ἐλθοις ἂν ^{|well, then} ῥη, ἡμῖν πάντα εἰδὼς
τὰ τῶν πολεμίων· οἶμαι δὲ καὶ λόγων καὶ ^{|resolution, purpose}
^{|partner} ἂν σε ποιοῖντο διὰ τὸ πιστεύειν, ὥστε ^{|and not; not even}
σε ^{|escape notice; (mp+gen) forget} βουλόμεθα εἰδέναι. Ὡς πορευσομένου,
ἔφη, ἥδη νυνί· καὶ γὰρ τοῦτο ^{|equal} ἐν τῶν πιστῶν ἔσται τὸ
δοκεῖν με ὑπὸ σοῦ μελλήσαντά τι παθεῖν ^{|flee} Ἡ
καὶ δυνήσῃ ἀπολιπεῖν, ἔφη, τὴν καλὴν Πάνθειαν; Δύο γάρ,
ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, ^{|clear, understandable} ὑν τοῦτο ^{|philosophize, study}
μετὰ τοῦ ^{|unfair; ob-} ριστοῦ τοῦ Ἑρωτος.
^{|stinate, bad}

because my iniquity was so great.”

Then Cyrus said, “Now listen: this opinion about you may be the means by which you can do me a great kindness and your comrades a great service.” “Oh, that it were possible!” said Araspas, “for me ever to be of service to you!” “Well,” said the other, “if you went to the enemy, feigning that you had fled from me, I think they would believe you.” “I am sure they would,” said Araspas, “I know even my own friends would think that of course I ran away.” “Then you will come back to us,” Cyrus went on, “with full information about the enemy’s affairs; for, if I am right in my expectation, they will trust you and let you see all their plans, so that you need miss nothing of what we wish to know.” “I will be off this moment,” said Araspas; “it will be my best credential to have it thought I was just in time to escape punishment from you.”

“Then you can really bring yourself to leave the beautiful Pantheia?”

“Yes, Cyrus,” he answered, “I can; for I see now that we have two souls. This is the lesson of philosophy that I have learnt from the wicked sophist Love. If

vocabulary

ἀθροίζω press close together; (mid)
muster

αἰσχρός shameful

δῆλος visible, conspicuous

ἐγγύς near

ἐκτάσσω muster

ἐμβάλλω throw in; inspire a mental
state ~ballistic

ἐμποδών getting in the way

ἐξαγγέλλω bring news out ~angel

ἐπιχειρέω do, try, attack ~chiral

κράτιστος best

οἴκοι at home ~economics

ὅπη wherever, however

πιστός faithful; trustworthy

ποῖ whither? how long?

σθένος -εος (n, 3) strength

~neurasthenia

συμβουλευώ give advice; (mid) consult

~volunteer

τοίνυν well, then

οὐ γὰρ δὴ μία γε οὖσα ἅμα ἀγαθὴ τέ ἐστι καὶ κακὴ, οὐδ' ἅμα καλῶν τε καὶ αἰσchrῶν ἔργων ἐρᾷ καὶ ταῦτ' ἅμα βούλεται τε καὶ οὐ βούλεται πράττειν, ἀλλὰ δῆλον ὅτι δύο ἐστὸν ψυχά, καὶ ὅταν μὲν ἡ ἀγαθὴ κρατῇ, τὰ καλὰ πράττεται, ὅταν δὲ ἡ πονηρά, τὰ αἰσchrὰ ἐπιχειρεῖται. νῦν δὲ ὡς σὲ σύμμαχον ἔλαβε, κρατεῖ ἡ ἀγαθὴ καὶ πάνυ πολὺ. Εἰ τοίνυν καὶ σοὶ δοκεῖ πορεύεσθαι, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ὧδε χρὴ ποιεῖν, ἵνα κακείνοις πιστότερος ᾖς· ἐξάγγελλέ τε αὐτοῖς τὰ παρ' ἡμῶν, οὕτω τε ἐξάγγελλε ὡς ἂν αὐτοῖς τὰ παρὰ σοῦ λεγόμενα ἐμποδῶν μάλιστ' ἂν εἴη ὧν βούλονται πράττειν. εἴη δ' ἂν ἐμποδῶν, εἰ ἡμᾶς φαίης παρασκευάζεσθαι ἐμβαλεῖν ποι τῆς ἐκείνων χώρας· ταῦτα γὰρ ἀκούοντες ἤττον ἂν παντὶ σθένει ἀθροίζοντο, ἕκαστός τις φοβούμενος καὶ περὶ τῶν οἴκοι. καὶ μένε, ἔφη, παρ' ἐκείνοις ὅτι πλείστον χρόνον· ἃ γὰρ ἂν ποιῶσιν ὅταν ἐγγύτατα ἡμῶν ᾦσι, ταῦτα μάλιστα καιρὸς ἡμῖν εἰδέναι ἔσται. συμβούλευε δ' αὐτοῖς καὶ ἐκτάττεσθαι ὅπῃ ἂν δοκῇ κράτιστον εἶναι· ὅταν γὰρ σὺ

οὐ γὰρ δὴ μία γε οὖσα ἅμα ἀγαθὴ τέ ἐστι καὶ κακὴ, οὐδ'
 ἅμα καλῶν τε καὶ |shameful ἔργων ἐρᾷ καὶ ταῦτ' ἅμα
 βούλεται τε καὶ οὐ βούλεται πράττειν, ἀλλὰ |visible, "...
 |conspicuous
 δύο ἐστὸν ψυχά, καὶ |whenever ἡ ἀγαθὴ κρατῇ, τὰ καλὰ
 πράττεται, |whenever ἡ |oppressed; |shameful |do, try, attack
 |knaveish;
 νῦν δὲ ὥς σὲ σύμμαχον |useless ἔλαβε, |rule ἡ ἀγαθὴ καὶ |altogether, very
 πολὺ. Εἰ |well, then ... |σοὶ δοκεῖ πορεύεσθαι, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος,
 |thus |must, ... |μειν, ἵνα κἀκείνοις |faithful; ἦς· |bring news out
 |should |trustworthy
 τε αὐτοῖς τὰ παρ' ἡμῶν, οὕτω τε |bring news out ... ἂν
 αὐτοῖς τὰ παρὰ σοῦ λεγόμενα |getting in the way ... ἂν εἴη
 ὧν βούλονται πράττειν. εἴη δ' ἂν |getting in the way ... ἵς
 φαίης |prepare, render |throw in; inspire ἡς ἐκείνων χώρας·
 ταῦτα γὰρ ἀκούοντες ἦττον ἂν παντὶ |strength |press close together; (mid)
 |muster
 ἕκαστός τις φοβούμενος καὶ περὶ τῶν |at home ... |μένε, ἔφη,
 παρ' ἐκείνοις ὅτι πλείστον χρόνον· ἂ γὰρ ἂν ποιῶσιν |whenever
 |near ἡμῶν ὧσι, ταῦτα μάλιστα καιρὸς ἡμῖν εἰδέναι
 ἔσται. |give advice; Ὡς αὐτοῖς καὶ |muster |wherever, ... |ἡ
 |(mid) consult |however
 |best εἶναι· |whenever ... σὺ

we had but a single soul, how could she be at once evil and good? How could she be enamoured at once of nobleness and baseness, or at once desire and not desire one deed and the same? No, it is clear that we have two souls, and when the beautiful soul prevails, all fair things are wrought, and when the evil soul has the mastery, she lays her hand to shame and wickedness. But to-day my good soul conquers, because she has you to help her."

"Well," said Cyrus, "if you have decided on going, it is thus you had better go. Thus you will win their confidence, and then you must tell them what we are doing, but in such a way as to hinder their own designs. It would hinder them, for example, if you said that we were preparing an attack on their territory at a point not yet decided; for this would check the concentration of their forces, each leader being most concerned for the safety of his own home. Stay with them," he added, "till the last moment possible: what they do when they are close at hand is just what is most important for us to know. Advise them how to dispose their forces in the way that really seems the best, for then, after you are gone and although it may be known

*vocabulary***ἀναγκαῖος** coerced, coercing, slavery**ἀναδέχομαι** catch, receive ~doctrine**ἀπαλλαξείω** wish to get rid of**ἀπαλλάσσω** free from, remove; be freed, depart**βασιλεύω** be king**διασπάω** tear apart ~spatula**ἐπιχειρέω** do, try, attack ~chiral**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism**θεράπων** -οντος (m, 3) helper,

henchman, servant ~therapy

λυπέω (ῥ) annoy, distress**οἶχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone**ὀκνέω** shrink from, hesitate; worry**ὅπόσος** as many as, how many, how great**πῃ** somewhere, somehow**πιστός** faithful; trustworthy**πότε** when?**συλλαμβάνω** seize, capture; understand ~epilepsy**συμφέρω** bring together; be expedient; agree; (mp) happen ~bear**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military unit**ταράσσω** mess things up ~trachea**ὕβριστης** -οῦ (m, 1) wanton, savage**ὕπάγω** lead under the yoke, lead away from ~demagogue

ἀπέλθῃς εἰδέναι δοκῶν τὴν τάξιν αὐτῶν, ἀναγκαῖον οὕτω τετάχθαι αὐτοῖς· μετατάττεσθαι γὰρ ὁκνήσουσι, καὶ ἦν πῃ ἄλλη μετατάττωνται ἐξ ὑπογύου, ταραάζονται. Ἀράσπας μὲν δὴ οὕτως ἐξελθὼν καὶ συλλαβὼν τοὺς πιστοτάτους θεράποντας καὶ εἰπὼν πρὸς τινὰς ἃ ὥετο συμφέρειν τῷ πράγματι ὥχετο.

Ἡ Δὲ Πάνθεια ὥς ἦσθετο οἰχόμενον τὸν Ἀράσπαν, πέμψασα πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον εἶπε· Μὴ λυποῦ, ὦ Κῦρε, ὅτι Ἀράσπας οἴχεται εἰς τοὺς πολεμίους· ἦν γὰρ ἐμὲ ἐάσης πέμψαι πρὸς τὸν ἐμὸν ἄνδρα, ἐγὼ σοι ἀναδέχομαι ἥξειν πολὺ Ἀράσπου πιστότερον φίλον· καὶ δύναμιν δὲ οἶδ' ὅτι ὁπόσῃν ἂν δύνῃται ἔχων παρέσται σοι. καὶ γὰρ ὁ μὲν πατὴρ τοῦ νῦν βασιλεύοντος φίλος ἦν αὐτῷ· ὁ δὲ νῦν βασιλεύων καὶ ἐπεχείρησέ ποτε ἐμὲ καὶ τὸν ἄνδρα διασπάσαι ἀπ' ἀλλήλων· ὑβριστὴν οὖν νομίζων αὐτὸν εὖ οἶδ' ὅτι ἄσμενος ἂν πρὸς ἄνδρα οἷος σὺ εἰ ἀπαλλαγείῃ. ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Κῦρος ἐκέλευε πέμπειν πρὸς τὸν ἄνδρα· ἡ δ' ἔπεμψεν. ὥς δ' ἔγνω ὁ Ἀβραδάτας τὰ παρὰ τῆς

ἀπέλθῃς εἰδέναι δοκῶν τὴν τάξιν αὐτῶν, ἀναγκαῖον οὕτω

|arrange αὐτοῖς· μετατάττεσθαι γὰρ |hesitate; , καὶ ἤν πη
|worry

ἄλλη μετατάττωνται ἐξ ὑπογύου, |mess things up Ἰάρας

μὲν δὴ οὕτως ἐξελθὼν καὶ |seize, capture; ὑν- |faithful; trust-
|derstand |worthy

|companion καὶ εἰπὼν πρὸς τινὰς ἃ ὤετο |bring together; be expedient;
|agree; (mp) happen

|deed, fact, |come, go
|thing, affair;
|difficulty

Ἡ Δὲ Πάνθεια ὥς |perceive |come, go τὸν Ἰάραν,

πέμψασα πρὸς τὸν Κύρον εἶπε· Μὴ |annoy, , ὦ Κύρε, ὅτι
|distress

Ἰάρας |come, go εἰς τοὺς πολεμίους· ἣν γὰρ ἐμὲ εἰσῆς

πέμψαι πρὸς τὸν ἐμὸν ἄνδρα, ἐγὼ σοι |receive |be present, have
|arrived

πολὺν Ἰάραν |faithful; φίλον· καὶ δύναμιν δὲ οἶδ'
|trustworthy

ὅτι |as/how many/great, , αἱ ἔχων παρέσται σοι. καὶ γὰρ ὁ

μὲν πατὴρ τοῦ νῦν |be king φίλος ἦν αὐτῷ· ὁ δὲ

νῦν |be king καὶ |do, try, attack . γοτε ἐμὲ καὶ τὸν ἄνδρα

|tear apart ἀπ' ἀλλήλων· |wanton, οὖν |consider ὑς- |εἶ
|savage |tomary; believe

οἶδ' ὅτι |be pleased, enjoy, ὅς ἄνδρα οἷος σὺ εἶ ἀπαλλαγείη.

ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Κύρος ἐκέλευε πέμπειν πρὸς τὸν ἄνδρα·

ἣ δ' ἔπεμψεν. ὥς δ' ἔγνω ὁ Ἀβραδάτας τὰ παρὰ τῆς

that you are aware of their order, they will be forced to keep to it, they will not dare to change it, and should they do so at the last moment they will be thrown into confusion.”

Thereupon Araspas took his leave, called together his trustiest attendants, said what he thought necessary for the occasion, and departed.

Now Pantheia, when she heard that Araspas had fled, sent a messenger to Cyrus, saying:

”Grieve not, Cyrus, that Araspas has gone to join the foe: I will bring you a far trustier friend than he, if you will let me send for my husband, and I know he will bring with him all the power that he has. It is true that the old king was my husband’s friend, but he who reigns now tried to tear us two asunder, and my husband knows him for a tyrant and a miscreant, and would gladly be quit of him and take service with such a man as you.”

When Cyrus heard that, he bade Pantheia send word to her husband, and she did so. Now

*vocabulary***ᾄδω** sing**ἄημι** blow**ἀποδέω** bind; lack**ἀσπάζομαι** greet, salute**ἄω** aor: to sate ~sate**δεξιὰ** right-hand ~dextrous**εἰκός** likely**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism**θεράπων** -οντος (m, 3) helper,
henchman, servant ~therapy**κράτιστος** best**ὅμοιος** like ~homoerotic**ὀσιότης** -τος (f) piety**πειράζω** test a person ~pierce**Πέρσης** Persian**σκοπάω** watch, observe**σκοπέω** behold, consider**σκοπός** (f) lookout, overseer, spy,
target ~telescope**σπουδάζω** be busy, earnest ~repudiate**σύμβολον** token, seal**σύμβολος** token; omen**συνεργός** cooperating; colleague**σωφροσύνη** discretion, moderation**χίλιοι** (u) thousand ~kilo-

γυναικὸς σύμβολα, καὶ τᾶλλα δὲ ἥσθετο ὡς εἶχεν, ἄσμενος πορεύεται πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον ἵππους ἔχων ἀμφὶ τοὺς χιλίους. ὡς δ' ἦν πρὸς τοῖς τῶν Περσῶν σκοποῖς, πέμπει πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον εἰπὼν ὅς ἦν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος εὐθύς ἄγειν κελεύει αὐτὸν πρὸς τὴν γυναῖκα. ὡς δ' εἰδέτην ἀλλήλους ἡ γυνὴ καὶ ὁ Ἀβραδάτας, ἡσπάζοντο ἀλλήλους ὡς εἰκὸς ἐκ δυσελπίστων. ἐκ τούτου δὴ λέγει ἡ Πάνθεια τοῦ Κύρου τὴν ὁσιότητα καὶ τὴν σωφροσύνην καὶ τὴν πρὸς αὐτὴν κατοίκτισιν. ὁ δὲ Ἀβραδάτας ἀκούσας εἶπε· Τί ἂν οὖν ἐγὼ ποιῶν, ὦ Πάνθεια, χάριν Κύρῳ ὑπὲρ τε σοῦ καὶ ἐμαυτοῦ ἀποδοίην; Τί δὲ ἄλλο, ἔφη ἡ Πάνθεια, ἡ πειρώμενος ὅμοιος εἶναι περὶ ἐκείνον οἶόσπερ ἐκεῖνος περὶ σέ;

Ἐκ τούτου δὴ ἔρχεται πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον ὁ Ἀβραδάτας· καὶ ὡς εἶδεν αὐτόν, λαβόμενος τῆς δεξιᾶς εἶπεν· Ἀνθ' ὧν σὺ εὖ πεποίηκας ἡμᾶς, ὦ Κῦρε, οὐκ ἔχω τί μείζον εἶπω ἢ ὅτι φίλον σοι ἐμαυτὸν δίδωμι καὶ θεράποντα καὶ σύμμαχον· καὶ ὅσα ἂν ὀρῶ σε σπουδάζοντα, συνεργὸς πειράσομαι γίγνεσθαι ὡς ἂν δύνωμαι κράτιστος. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπεν·

γυναικὸς σύμβολα, καὶ τᾶλλα δὲ |perceive ὡς εἶχεν, |be pleased, enjoy

πορεύεται πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον ἵππους ἔχων ἀμφὶ τοὺς χιλίους.

ὥς δ' ἦν πρὸς τοῖς τῶν Περσῶν σκοποῖς, πέμπει πρὸς

τὸν Κῦρον εἰπὼν ὃς ἦν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος εὐθύς ἄγειν κελεύει

αὐτὸν πρὸς τὴν γυναῖκα. ὥς δ' |sing ἀλλήλους ἡ

γυνὴ καὶ ὁ Ἀβραδάτας, |greet, salute ἀλλήλους ὡς |likely ἐκ

δυσελπίστων. ἐκ τούτου δὴ λέγει ἡ Πάνθεια τοῦ Κύρου

τὴν |piety καὶ τὴν |discretion, moderation καὶ τὴν πρὸς αὐτὴν

κατοίκτισιν. ὁ δὲ Ἀβραδάτας ἀκούσας εἶπε· Τί ἂν οὖν ἐγὼ

ποιῶν, ὦ Πάνθεια, |grace Κύρω ὑπὲρ τε σοῦ καὶ ἑμαντοῦ

ἀποδοίην; Τί δὲ ἄλλο, ἔφη ἡ Πάνθεια, ἢ πειρώμενος |like

εἶναι περὶ ἐκείνον οἷόσπερ ἐκεῖνος περὶ σέ;

Ἐκ τούτου δὴ ἔρχεται πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον ὁ Ἀβραδάτας· καὶ

ὥς εἶδεν αὐτόν, λαβόμενος τῆς δεξιᾶς εἶπεν· Ἄνθ' ὧν σὺ

εὖ πεποίηκας ἡμᾶς, ὦ Κῦρε, οὐκ ἔχω τί μείζον εἶπω ἢ ὅτι

φίλον σοι ἑμαντὸν δίδωμι καὶ |companion καὶ σύμμαχον·

καὶ ὅσα ἂν ὀρώ σε |be busy, earnest, |cooperating; colleague
|cooperating; colleague

γίγνεσθαι ὡς ἂν δύνωμαι |best . καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπεν·

when Abradatas saw the tokens from his wife, and learnt how matters stood, he was full of joy, and set out for Cyrus' camp immediately, with a thousand horsemen in his train. And when he came to the Persian outposts he sent to Cyrus saying who he was, and Cyrus gave orders that he should be taken to Pantheia forthwith. So husband and wife met again after hope had well-nigh vanished, and were in each other's arms once more. And then Pantheia spoke of Cyrus, his nobleness, his honour, and the compassion he had shown her, and Abradatas cried:

"Tell me, tell me, how can I repay him all I owe him in your name and mine!" And she answered:

"So deal with him, my husband, as he has dealt with you."

And thus Abradatas went to Cyrus, and took him by the hand, and said:

"Cyrus, in return for the kindness you have shown us, I can say no more than this: I give myself to you, I will be your friend, your servant, and your ally: whatever you desire, I will help you to win, your fellow-worker always, so far as in me lies."

Then Cyrus answered:

"And

*vocabulary***ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot**βοά** din, a shout**βοάω** shout**βοεΐη** shield; leather, bovine**βόειος** shield; leather, bovine ~bovine**βοεύς** βοῦος (m) leather rope ~bovine**δειπνέω** eat, dine**δρεπανηφόρος** having a scythe or hook**ζεῦγος** -ους (n, 3) team of animals
~zygote**θώραξ** -ηχος (m) breastplate ~thorax**ἵππικός** of horses ~hippo**κατανοέω** notice, realize, learn**κατασκευάζω** equip, build**κατώτατος** lowest**κράνος** -εος (n, 3) helmet; ship's ram**μηχανή** machine; mechanism, way**οἷκημα** -τος (n, 3) room**ὀκτώ** eight ~octopus**ὁμοῖος** like ~homoerotic**σκηνέω** camp**σκηνόω** camp**σπουδάζω** be busy, earnest ~repudiate**συντελέω** contribute, constitute**χάλκεος** made of copper or bronze**χρυσόω** (ῥ) make golden, gild**ὡσαύτως** in the same way

Ἐγὼ δὲ δέχομαι· καὶ νῦν μὲν σε ἀφίημι, ἔφη, σὺν τῇ
 γυναικὶ δειπνεῖν· αὐθις δὲ καὶ παρ' ἐμοὶ δεήσει σε σκηνοῦν
 σὺν τοῖς σοῖς τε καὶ ἐμοῖς φίλοις.

Ἐκ τούτου ὁρῶν ὁ Ἀβραδάτας σπουδάζοντα τὸν
 Κῦρον περὶ τὰ δρεπανηφόρα ἄρματα καὶ περὶ τοὺς
 τεθωρακισμένους ἵππους τε καὶ ἱππέας, ἐπειράτο
 συντελεῖν αὐτῷ εἰς τὰ ἑκατὸν ἄρματα ἐκ τοῦ ἱππικοῦ τοῦ
 ἑαυτοῦ ὅμοια ἐκείνῳ· αὐτὸς δὲ ὡς ἡγησόμενος αὐτῶν ἐπὶ
 τοῦ ἄρματος παρεσκευάζετο. συνεζεύξατο δὲ τὸ ἑαυτοῦ
 ἄρμα τετράρρυμόν τε καὶ ἵππων ὀκτώ· ἡ δὲ Πάνθεια ἡ
 γυνὴ αὐτοῦ ἐκ τῶν ἑαυτῆς χρημάτων χρυσοῦν τε αὐτῷ
 θώρακα ἐποίησατο καὶ χρυσοῦν κράνος, ὡσαύτως δὲ καὶ
 περιβραχιόνια. τοὺς δὲ ἵππους τοῦ ἄρματος χαλκοῖς πᾶσι
 προβλήμασι κατεσκευάσατο.

Ἀβραδάτας μὲν ταῦτα ἔπραττε· Κῦρος δὲ ἰδὼν τὸ
 τετράρρυμον αὐτοῦ ἄρμα κατενόησεν ὅτι οἷόν τε εἶη καὶ
 ὀκτάρρυμον ποιήσασθαι, ὥστε ὀκτὼ ζεύγεσι βοῶν ἄγειν
 τῶν μηχανῶν τὸ κατώτατον οἶκημα· ἦν δὲ τοῦτο

Ἐγὼ δὲ |accept, re- :αὶ νῦν μὲν σε ἀφίημι, ἔφη, σὺν τῇ
|ceive, await
γυναικὶ |eat, dine |back, again, ἰ παρ' ἐμοὶ δεήσει σε σκηνοῦν
|moreover
σὺν τοῖς σοῖς τε καὶ ἐμοῖς φίλοις.

Ἐκ τούτου ὁρῶν ὁ Ἀβραδάτας |be busy, earnest τὸν
Κῦρον περὶ τὰ |having a scythe or|chariot καὶ περὶ τοὺς
|hook
τεθωρακισμένους ἵππους τε καὶ |rider , |try, test
|contribute, αὐτῷ εἰς τὰ |hundred|chariot ἐκ τοῦ |of horses τοῦ
|constitute
ἑαυτοῦ |like ἐκείνῳ· αὐτὸς δὲ ὡς ἡγησόμενος αὐτῶν ἐπὶ
τοῦ |chariot |prepare, render . συνεζεύξατο δὲ τὸ ἑαυτοῦ
|chariot τετράρρυνόν τε καὶ ἵππων |eight ἡ δὲ Πάνθεια ἡ
γυνὴ αὐτοῦ ἐκ τῶν ἑαυτῆς χρημάτων χρυσοῦν τε αὐτῷ
|breastplate· τοιήσατο καὶ χρυσοῦν |helmet; , |in the same way...
|ship's
περιβραχιόνια. τοὺς δὲ ἵππους τοῦ |ram|chariot χαλκοῖς πᾶσι
προβλήμασι |equip, build

Ἀβραδάτας μὲν ταῦτα ἔπραττε· Κῦρος δὲ ἰδὼν τὸ
τετράρρυνον αὐτοῦ |chariot|notice, real- ὅτι οἶόν τε εἴη καὶ
|ize, learn
ὀκτάρρυνον ποιήσασθαι, ὥστε |eight |team βοῶν ἄγειν
τῶν |machine; ` |lowest |room ἦν δὲ τοῦτο
|mechanism,
|way

I will take your gift: but for the moment you must leave me, and sup with your wife: another day you will let me play the host, and give you lodging with your friends and mine.”

Afterwards Abradatas perceived how much Cyrus had at heart the scythe-bearing chariots and the cavalry and the war-horses with their armour, and he resolved to equip a hundred chariots for him out of his own cavalry force. These he proposed to lead himself in a chariot of his own, four-poled and drawn by eight horses, all the eight protected by chest-plates of bronze. So Abradatas set to work, and this four-poled chariot of his gave Cyrus the idea of making a car with eight poles, drawn by eight yoke of oxen, to carry the lowest compartment of the battering engines, which stood, with its wheels, about

vocabulary

ἀγωγή carrying; leadership
ἀκολουθέω follow
ἀναβιβάζω make to mount, promote
βάρος -ους (n, 3) weight, burden
βλάβη harm
δικαιοσύνη justice
ἐλαχὺς small; comp.: less ~light
ἐπαλξίς -ος (f) a breastwork of planks?
ἐπικουρία rescue; auxiliary force
εὐδαιμονία prosperity
εὐπορος easily passed; rich
ζεῦγος -ους (n, 3) team of animals
 ~zygote
ξύλον piece of wood ~xylophone
οἶκημα -τος (n, 3) room
ὀκτώ eight ~octopus
ὄπλον tool, weapon, ship's tackle
 ~hoplite
πάχος -εος (n, 3) thickness
 ~pachyderm
πεῖρα an attempt

πείρω pierce, run through ~pierce
πεντεκαίδεκα 15
περίδρομος encircling, encircleable
 ~hippodrome
πύργος ramparts, tower; line of troops
ῥαίω smite
σκευή equipment
σκεῦος -εος (n, 3) thing, tool, vessel
σκευόω prepare, collect
σκηνή tent; stage
στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy
συνίστημι unite; confront in battle
 ~station
σωτηρία saving, preservation
τάλαντον scale, a unit of weight
 ~talent
τάξις -εως (f) arrangement, military
 unit
τροχός wheel
φάλαγξ -γος (f) rank of battle
 ~phalanx

τριώρυγον μάλιστα ἀπὸ τῆς γῆς σὺν τοῖς τροχοῖς. τοιοῦτοι δὲ πύργοι σὺν τάξει ἀκολουθοῦντες ἐδόκουν αὐτῷ μεγάλη μὲν ἐπικουρία γενήσεσθαι τῇ ἐαυτῶν φάλαγγι, μεγάλη δὲ βλάβη τῇ τῶν πολεμίων τάξει. ἐποίησε δὲ ἐπὶ τῶν οἰκημάτων καὶ περιδρόμους καὶ ἐπάλξεις· ἀνεβίβαζε δ' ἐπὶ τὸν πύργον ἕκαστον ἄνδρας εἴκοσιν. ἐπεὶ δὲ πάντα συνειστήκει αὐτῷ τὰ περὶ τοὺς πύργους, ἐλάμβανε τοῦ ἀγωγίου πείραν· καὶ πολὺ ῥᾶον ἦγε τὰ ὀκτὼ ζεύγη τὸν πύργον καὶ τοὺς ἐπ' αὐτῷ ἄνδρας ἢ τὸ σκευοφορικὸν βάρος ἕκαστον τὸ ζεύγος. σκευῶν μὲν γὰρ βάρος ἀμφὶ τὰ πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι τάλαντα ἦν ζεύγει· τοῦ δὲ πύργου, ὥσπερ τραγικῆς σκηνῆς τῶν ξύλων πάχος ἐχόντων, καὶ εἴκοσιν ἀνδρῶν καὶ ὅπλων, τούτων ἐγένετο ἕλαττον ἢ πεντεκαίδεκα τάλαντα ἐκάστῳ ζεύγει τὸ ἀγώγιον. ὥς δ' ἔγνω εὐπορον οὔσαν τὴν ἀγωγήν, παρεσκευάζετο ὥς ἄξων τοὺς πύργους σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι, νομίζων τὴν ἐν πολέμῳ πλεονεξίαν ἅμα σωτηρίαν τε καὶ δικαιοσύνην εἶναι καὶ εὐδαιμονίαν.

τριώρυγον μάλιστα ἀπὸ τῆς γῆς σὺν τοῖς |wheel
 τοιοῦτοι δὲ |wall, σὺν τάξει ἀκολουθοῦντες ἐδόκουν αὐτῷ
 |tower
 μεγάλη μὲν |rescue; aux- |γενήσεσθαι τῇ ἐαυτῶν |rank of battle
 |iliary force
 μεγάλη δὲ |harm τῇ τῶν πολεμίων τάξει. ἐποίησε δὲ ἐπὶ
 τῶν |room καὶ |encircling, en- καὶ |a breast-|make to mount,
 |circleable |work of|promote
 δ' ἐπὶ τὸν |wall, ἕκαστον ἄνδρας εἰκόσιν. ἐπεὶ δὲ πάντα
 |tower
 συνειστήκει αὐτῷ τὰ περὶ τοὺς |wall, , ἐλάμβανε τοῦ
 |tower
 ἀγωγίου πείραν· καὶ πολὺ ῥᾶον ἦγε τὰ |eight |team τὸν
 |wall, καὶ τοὺς ἐπ' αὐτῷ ἄνδρας ἢ τὸ σκευοφορικὸν
 |tower
 |weight, ἕκαστον τὸ |team . σκευῶν μὲν γὰρ |weight, ἀμφὶ
 |burden |burden
 τὰ πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι |scale, a unit of|team τοῦ δὲ |wall,
 |weight |tower ,
 ὥσπερ τραγικῆς |tent; τῶν ξύλων |thickness, ῥόντων, καὶ
 |stage
 εἴκοσιν ἀνδρῶν καὶ ὅπλων, τούτων ἐγένετο ἔλαττον ἢ
 |15 |scale, a unit of|κάστω |team τὸ ἀγώγιον. ὥς
 |of weight
 δ' ἔγνω |easily οὐσαν τὴν |carrying; παρεσκευάζετο ὥς
 |passed; |leadership
 |rich
 ἄξων τοὺς |wall, σὺν τῷ |army , νομίζων τὴν
 |tower
 ἐν πολέμῳ πλεονεξίαν ἅμα σωτηρίαν τε καὶ δικαιοσύνην
 εἶναι καὶ |prosperity .

twenty-seven feet from the ground. Cyrus felt that he had a series of such towers brought into the field at a fair pace they would be of immense service to him, and inflict as much damage on the enemy. The towers were built with galleries and parapets, and each of them could carry twenty men. When the whole was put together he tested it and found that the eight yoke of oxen could draw the whole tower with the men more easily than one yoke by itself could manage the ordinary weight of baggage, which came to about five-and- twenty talents apiece, whereas the tower, build of planks about as thick as the boards for a stage, weighed less than fifteen for each yoke. Thus, having satisfied himself that the attempt was perfectly possible, he arranged to take the towers into action, believing that in war selfishness meant salvation, justice, and happiness.

*vocabulary***ἀπαγγέλλω** announce, order, promise

~angel

ἐπιστέλλω send to, order**ἡδέως** pleasantly ~hedonism**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism**κατασκηνόω** set up camp**κατάσκοπος** spy, inspector**μεταπέμπω** send; (mid) summon

~pomp

συμμαχία alliance**τοίνυν** well, then**τοιόσδε** such**ὕπηρετέω** serve

6.2

Ἦλθον δ' ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ καὶ παρὰ τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ
 χρήματα ἄγοντες καὶ ἀπήγγελλον αὐτῷ ὅτι ὁ Ἰνδὸς
 ἐπιστέλλει τοιάδε. Ἐγώ, ὦ Κῦρε, ἤδομαι ὅτι μοι
 ἐπήγγειλας ὧν ἐδέου, καὶ βούλομαί σοι ξένος εἶναι
 καὶ πέμπω σοι χρήματα· κὰν ἄλλων δέῃ, μεταπέμπου.
 ἐπέσταλται δὲ τοῖς παρ' ἐμοῦ ποιεῖν ὅ τι ἂν σὺ κελεύῃς.
 ἀκούσας δὲ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπε· Κελεύω τοίνυν ὑμᾶς τοὺς
 μὲν ἄλλους μένοντας ἔνθα κατεσκηνώκατε φυλάττειν
 τὰ χρήματα καὶ ζῆν ὅπως ὑμῖν ἡδιστον· τρεῖς δέ μοι
 ἐλθόντες ὑμῶν ἐς τοὺς πολεμίους ὥς παρὰ τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ περὶ
 συμμαχίας, καὶ τὰ ἐκεῖ μαθόντες ὅ τι ἂν λέγωσί τε καὶ
 ποιῶσιν, ὥς τάχιστα ἀπαγγείλατε ἐμοί τε καὶ τῷ Ἰνδῷ·
 κὰν ταῦτά μοι καλῶς ὑπηρετήσητε, ἔτι μᾶλλον ὑμῖν χάριν
 εἶσομαι τούτου ἢ ὅτι χρήματα πάρεστε ἄγοντες. καὶ γὰρ
 οἱ μὲν δούλοις ἐοικότες κατάσκοποι οὐδὲν ἄλλο δύνανται
 εἰδότες ἀπαγγέλλειν ἢ ὅσα πάντες ἴσασιν· οἱ δὲ οἰοίπερ
 ὑμεῖς ἄνδρες πολλάκις καὶ τὰ βουλευόμενα

6.2

Ἦλθον δ' ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ καὶ παρὰ τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ

|possession, money, busi-ness |send to, order |such . Ἐγώ, ὦ Κῦρε, |ἤδομαι?: be pleased, enjoy; or
|announce, or-der, promise |ἤδομαι?: be pleased, enjoy

ἐπήγγειλας ὦν ἐδέου, καὶ βούλομαί σοι |stranger ἵναι

καὶ πέμπω σοι |possession, money, busi-ness |send; (mid) summon
|send to, order |Δὲ τοῖς παρ' ἐμοῦ ποιεῖν ὅ τι ἂν σὺ κελεύῃς.

ἀκούσας δὲ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπε· Κελεύω |well, then, μᾶς τοὺς

μὲν ἄλλους μένοντας ἔνθα |set up camp |guard; watch

τὰ |possession, money, busi-ness |three δέ μοι
ἐλθόντες ὑμῶν ἐς τοὺς πολεμίους ὡς παρὰ τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ περὶ

συμμαχίας, καὶ τὰ |there|learn ὅ τι ἂν λέγωσί τε καὶ

ποιῶσιν, ὡς τάχιστα |announce, or-der, promise ἐμοί τε καὶ τῷ Ἰνδῷ·

κἂν ταῦτά μοι καλῶς |serve , ἔτι μᾶλλον ὑμῖν |grace

εἴσομαι τούτου ἢ ὅτι |possession, money, busi-ness |spy, inspector οὐδὲν ἄλλο δύνανται

οἱ μὲν |born |seem, seem |servile |likely, beseech
εἰδότες |announce, or-der, promise ἢ ὅσα πάντες ἴσασιν· οἱ δὲ οἰοίπερ

ὑμεῖς ἄνδρες |often καὶ τὰ |(mp) to deliberate

6.2

About this time ambassadors came to Cyrus from India with gifts of courtesy and a message from their king, saying:

"I Send you greeting, Cyrus, and I rejoice that you told me of your needs. I desire to be your friend and I offer you gifts; and if you have need of anything more, I bid you say the word, and it shall be yours. I have told my men to do whatever you command."

Then Cyrus answered:

"This, then, is my bidding: the rest of you shall stay where you have pitched your tents; you shall guard your treasures and live as you choose: but three of you shall go to the enemy and make believe that you have come to him about an alliance with your king, and thus you shall learn how matters stand, and all they say and all they do, and so bring me word again with speed. And if you serve me well in this, I shall owe you even more than I could owe you for these gifts. There are some spies who are no better than slaves, and have no skill to find out anything more than is known already, but there are men of another sort, men of your stamp, who

vocabulary

ἐμβάλλω throw in; inspire a mental
 state ~ballistic
 ἐξάγω lead out ~demagogue
 ἐξεργάζομαι accomplish; undo
 ἐορτή holiday, feast
 ἐπαινέω concur, praise, advise
 ἐπαινός terrible
 ἐπιμελέομαι take care of, oversee
 ἐπινοέω intend
 ἔρις -δος (f) strife
 ἡδύς sweet, pleasant ~hedonism
 θήρα hunt ~fierce
 θυσία sacrifice
 ἵππικός of horses ~hippo
 καταμανθάνω examine, observe
 κράτιστος best

μεγαλοπρεπής befitting greatness
 μελετάω pursue, attend to, exercise
 ξενίζω be host, treat as a guest
 ~xenophobe
 παροξύνω stimulate, provoke
 πότε when?
 στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier,
 mercenary ~strategy
 συσκευάζω pack up
 τιμάω (i) honor, exalt
 τιμόω honor, exalt
 τοξικός of the bow, bowman
 ὑπέχω promise; hold out one's hand;
 submit to
 ὅστεραῖος the next; later
 χαρίζομαι gratify ~charisma

καταμανθάνουσιν. οἱ μὲν δὴ Ἴνδοι ἡδέως ἀκούσαντες καὶ ξενισθέντες τότε παρὰ Κύρῳ, συσκευασάμενοι τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἐπορεύοντο, ὑποσχόμενοι ἢ μὴν μαθόντες ὅσα ἂν δύνωνται πλείστα ἐκ τῶν πολεμίων ἥξειν ὡς δυνατόν τάχιστα.

Ὁ Δὲ Κύρος τά τε ἄλλα εἰς τὸν πόλεμον παρεσκευάζετο μεγαλοπρεπῶς, ὡς δὴ ἀνὴρ οὐδὲν μικρὸν ἐπινοῶν πράττειν, ἐπεμελείτο δὲ οὐ μόνον ὧν ἔδοξε τοῖς συμμάχοις, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἔριν ἐνέβαλλε πρὸς ἀλλήλους τοῖς φίλοις ὅπως αὐτοὶ ἕκαστοι φανοῦνται καὶ εὐοπλότατοι καὶ ἵππικώτατοι καὶ ἀκοντιστικώτατοι καὶ τοξικώτατοι καὶ φιλοπονώτατοι. ταῦτα δὲ ἐξειργάζετο ἐπὶ τὰς θήρας ἐξάγων καὶ τιμῶν τοὺς κρατίστους ἕκαστα· καὶ τοὺς ἄρχοντας δὲ οὓς ἐώρα ἐπιμελομένους τούτου ὅπως οἱ αὐτῶν κράτιστοι ἔσονται στρατιῶται, καὶ τούτους ἐπαινῶν τε παρώξυνε καὶ χαριζόμενος αὐτοῖς ὅ τι δύναιτο. εἰ δέ ποτε θυσίαν ποιοῖτο καὶ ἐορτὴν ἄγοι, καὶ ἐν ταύτῃ ὅσα πολέμου ἔνεκα μελετῶσιν ἄνθρωποι πάντων τούτων

|examine, observe οἱ μὲν δὴ Ἴνδοι |sweet ἀκούσαντες
 καὶ |be host τότε παρὰ Κύρῳ, |pack up τῇ
 |the next; later. |promise ἡ μὲν |learn ὅσα
 ἂν δύνωνται πλείστα ἐκ τῶν πολεμίων |be present, |powerful,
 |have |possible
 τάχιστα. arrived

Ὁ Δὲ Κῦρος τά τε ἄλλα εἰς τὸν πόλεμον |prepare, render
 |befitting greatness, ὥς δὴ ἀνὴρ οὐδὲν |small |intend
 πράττειν, |take care of, δὲ οὐ μόνον ὧν ἔδοξε τοῖς
 |oversee
 συμμάχοις, ἀλλὰ καὶ |strife |throw in; inspire. ἀλλήλους τοῖς
 φίλοις ὅπως αὐτοὶ ἕκαστοι φανοῦνται καὶ εὐοπλότατοι
 καὶ |of horses καὶ ἀκοντιστικώτατοι καὶ |of the bow, bowman
 καὶ φιλοπονώτατοι. ταῦτα δὲ |accomplish; undo. τὰς
 θήρας |lead out καὶ τιμῶν τοὺς |best ἕκαστα· καὶ
 τοὺς ἄρχοντας δὲ οὓς ἐώρα ἐπιμελομένους τούτου ὅπως
 οἱ αὐτῶν |best ἔσονται |soldier, , καὶ τούτους
 |mercenary
 ἐπαινῶν τε |stimulate, καὶ |gratify αὐτοῖς ὅτι δύναιτο.
 |provoke
 εἰ δέ ποτε |sacrifice ποιοῖτο καὶ |holiday, ἄγοι, καὶ ἐν ταύτῃ
 |feast
 ὅσα πολέμου |be- |pursue, attend θρωποι πάντων τούτων
 |cause, |to, exercise
 that

can discover plans that are not yet disclosed.”

The Indians listened gladly, and for the moment made themselves at home as the guests of Cyrus: but the next day they got ready and set off on their journey, promising to find out as much as they could of the enemy’s secrets and bring him word again with all possible speed.

Meanwhile Cyrus continued his preparations for the war on a magnificent scale, like one who meant to accomplish no small achievement. Not only did he carry out all the resolutions of the allies, but he breathed a spirit of emulation into his own friends and followers, till each strove to outshine his fellows in arms and accoutrements, in horsemanship and spearmanship and archery, in endurance of toil and danger. Cyrus would lead them out to the chase, and show especial honour to those who distinguished themselves in any way: he would whet the ambition of the officers by praising all who did their best to improve their men, and by gratifying them in every way he could. At every sacrifice and festival he instituted games and contests in all martial exercises, and

*vocabulary***ἄγών** -ος (m, 3) gathering place

~agony

ἄθλον ἀέθλου prize ~athlete**ἀποτελέω** accomplish, produce**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot**διάκειμαι** be in a condition**δρεπανηφόρος** having a scythe or hook**ἔκπλεως** full of, abundant**ἐπιχειρέω** do, try, attack ~chiral**κάμηλος** (f) camel**κατασκευάζω** equip, build**κατασκοπή** spying**μεγαλοπρεπής** befitting greatness**μετασκευάζω** change one's dress**μηχανή** machine; mechanism, way**μυρίος** (ο) 10,000 ~myriad**ὁμοίος** like ~homoerotic**παντελής** complete, absolute**Πέρσης** Persian**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war, campaign ~strategy**στρατός** common people/soldiers

~strategy

σχεδόν near, approximately at

~ischemia

τοξότης -ου (m, 1) archer ~toxic

ἀγῶνας ἐποίει καὶ ἄθλα τοῖς νικῶσι μεγαλοπρεπῶς
ἐδίδου, καὶ ἦν πολλή εὐθυμία ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι.

Τῷ δὲ Κύρῳ σχεδόν τι ἤδη ἀποτετελεσμένα ἦν ὅσα
ἐβούλετο ἔχων στρατεύεσθαι πλὴν τῶν μηχανῶν. καὶ γὰρ
οἱ Πέρσαι ἱππεῖς ἔκπλεω ἤδη ἦσαν εἰς τοὺς μυρίους, καὶ
τὰ ἄρματα τὰ δρεπανηφόρα, ἃ τε αὐτὸς κατεσκεύαζεν,
ἔκπλεω ἤδη ἦν εἰς τὰ ἑκατόν, ἃ τε Ἀβραδάτας ὁ Σούσιος
ἐπεχείρησε κατασκευάζειν ὅμοια τοῖς Κύρου, καὶ ταῦτα
ἔκπλεω ἦν εἰς ἄλλα ἑκατόν. καὶ τὰ Μηδικὰ δὲ ἄρματα
ἐπεπείκει Κῦρος Κναξάρην εἰς τὸν αὐτὸν τρόπον τοῦτον
μετασκευάσαι ἐκ τῆς Τρωικῆς καὶ Λιβυκῆς διφρείας· καὶ
ἔκπλεω καὶ ταῦτα ἦν εἰς ἄλλα ἑκατόν. καὶ ἐπὶ τὰς
καμήλους δὲ τεταγμένοι ἦσαν ἄνδρες δύο ἐφ' ἐκάστην
τοξόται. καὶ ὁ μὲν πλείστος στρατὸς οὕτως εἶχε τὴν
γνώμην ὥς ἤδη παντελῶς κεκρατηκῶς καὶ οὐδὲν ὄντα τὰ
τῶν πολεμίων.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ οὕτω διακειμένων ἦλθον οἱ Ἴνδοι ἐκ τῶν πολεμίων
οὓς ἐπεπόμφει Κῦρος ἐπὶ κατασκοπὴν, καὶ

|gathering ἐποίει καὶ |prize τοῖς νικῶσι |befitting greatness
|place

ἐδίδου, καὶ ἦν πολλὴ εὐθυμία ἐν τῷ |army

Τῷ δὲ Κύρῳ |about τι ἤδη |accomplish, ἦν ὅσα
|produce

ἐβούλετο ἔχων |make an expedi-|except ὧν |machine; mecha- ῥὰρ
|tion, war, cam- |nism, way
οἱ Πέρσαι |rider |paign |full of, abundant ἦν εἰς τοὺς μυρίους, καὶ

τὰ |chariot τὰ |having a scythe, ἃ τε αὐτὸς |equip, build
|or hook

|full of, abundant εἰς τὰ ἑκατόν, ἃ τε Ἀβραδάτας ὁ Σούσιος

|do, try, attack |equip, build |like τοῖς Κύρου, καὶ ταῦτα

|full of, abundant ἵλλα ἑκατόν. καὶ τὰ Μηδικὰ δὲ |chariot

ἐπεπείκει Κύρος Κναξάρην εἰς τὸν αὐτὸν τρόπον τοῦτον

|change one's dress τῆς Τρωικῆς καὶ Λιβυκῆς διφρείας· καὶ

|full of, abundant ἵλλα ἦν εἰς ἄλλα ἑκατόν. καὶ ἐπὶ τὰς

|camel δὲ |arrange ἦσαν ἄνδρες δύο ἐφ' ἐκάστην

|archer καὶ ὁ μὲν πλείστος |army οὕτως εἶχε τὴν

γνώμην ὥς ἤδη |complete, κεκρατηκῶς καὶ οὐδὲν ὄντα τὰ
|absolute

τῶν πολεμίων.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ οὕτω |be in a condition Ἰον οἱ Ἴνδοι ἐκ τῶν πολεμίων

οὓς ἐπεπόμφει Κύρος ἐπὶ |spying , καὶ

lavished prizes on the victors, till the whole army was filled with enthusiasm and confidence. By this time Cyrus had almost everything in readiness for the campaign, except the battering-machines. The Persian cavalry was made up to its full number of ten thousand men, and the scythed chariots were complete, a hundred of his own, and a hundred that Abradatas of Susa had provided. Beside these there were a hundred of the old Median chariots which Cyrus had persuaded Cyaxares to remodel on his own type, giving up the Trojan and Lydian style. The camels were ready also, each animal carrying a couple of mounted archers.

The bulk of the great army felt almost as though they had already conquered, and the enemy's power was held of no account.

While matters were thus, the Indians whom

*vocabulary***ἀναγκάζω** force, compel**ἀριθμός** number**ἀσπίς** -δος (f) shield ~spit**δωρέω** give ~donate**εἰσφέρω** carry into, carry along ~bear**Ἑλλήν** Greek**ἕπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of**ἡγεμών** -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide, chief ~hegemony**μισθόω** rent out; (pass) be hired**μυριάς** -δος (ῥ, f, 3) countless, myriad**πάμπολυς** very great**ποδῆρης** foot-length**προΐημι** send forth, abandon**προσέτι** in addition**προσπλέω** sail toward, against**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**συλλέγω** collect, assemble ~legion**συμμαχία** alliance**σχεδόν** near, approximately at
~ischemia

ἔλεγον ὅτι Κροῖσος μὲν ἡγεμὼν καὶ στρατηγὸς πάντων ἡρημένος εἴη τῶν πολεμίων, δεδογμένον δ' εἴη πᾶσι τοῖς συμμάχοις βασιλεῦσι πάσῃ τῇ δυνάμει ἕκαστον παρεῖναι, χρήματα δὲ εἰσφέρειν ἀμύπολλα, ταῦτα δὲ τελεῖν καὶ μισθουμένους οὓς δύναιντο καὶ δωρουμένους οἷς δέοι, ἤδη δὲ καὶ μεμισθωμένους εἶναι πολλοὺς μὲν Θρακῶν μαχαιροφόρους, Αἰγυπτίους δὲ προσπλεῖν, καὶ ἀριθμὸν ἔλεγον εἰς δώδεκα μυριάδας σὺν ἀσπίσι ποδῆρεσι καὶ δόρασι μεγάλοις, οἰάπερ καὶ νῦν ἔχουσι, καὶ κοπίσι· προσέτι δὲ καὶ Κυπρίων στράτευμα· παρεῖναι δ' ἤδη Κίλικας πάντας καὶ Φρύγας ἀμφοτέρους καὶ Λυκάονας καὶ Παφλαγόνας καὶ Καππαδόκας καὶ Ἀραβίους καὶ Φοίνικας καὶ σὺν τῷ Βαβυλῶνος ἄρχοντι τοὺς Ἀσσυρίους, καὶ Ἰῶνας δὲ καὶ Αἰολέας καὶ σχεδὸν πάντας τοὺς Ἑλληνας τοὺς ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ ἐποικούντας σὺν Κροίσῳ ἡναγκάσθαι ἔπεσθαι, πεπομφέναι δὲ Κροῖσον καὶ εἰς Λακεδαίμονα περὶ συμμαχίας· συλλέγεσθαι δὲ τὸ στράτευμα ἀμφὶ τὸν Πακτωλὸν ποταμόν, προῖέναι δὲ

ἔλεγον ὅτι Κροῖσος μὲν |leader καὶ στρατηγὸς πάντων
 ἡρημένος εἴη τῶν πολεμίων, δεδογμένον δ' εἴη πᾶσι
 τοῖς συμμάχοις βασιλεῦσι πάσῃ τῇ δυνάμει ἕκαστον
 παρῆναι, |possession, ᾧ |carry into, πάμπολλα, ταῦτα δὲ
 |money, business|carry along
 |fulfill, pay; p|rent out; (pass) οὓς δύναιντο καὶ δωρουμένους
 |pass: be fea-|be hired
 |sible
 οὓς δέοι, ἤδη δὲ καὶ |rent out; (pass) be εἶναι πολλοὺς
 |hired
 μὲν Θρακῶν μαχαιροφόρους, Αἰγυπτίους δὲ |sail toward, against
 καὶ |number ἔλεγον εἰς |twelve |countless, σὺν |shield
 |myriad
 |foot-length καὶ |spear μεγάλοις, οἷάπερ καὶ νῦν ἔχουσι,
 καὶ κοπίσι· |in addition ἔτι καὶ Κυπρίων |army
 παρῆναι δ' ἤδη Κίλικας πάντας καὶ Φρύγας |both
 καὶ Λυκάονας καὶ Παφλαγόνας καὶ Καππαδόκας καὶ
 Ἀραβίους καὶ Φοίνικας καὶ σὺν τῷ Βαβυλῶνος ἄρχοντι
 τοὺς Ἀσσυρίους, καὶ Ἰωνας δὲ καὶ Αἰολέας καὶ |about
 πάντας τοὺς |Greek τοὺς ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ ἐποικούντας σὺν
 Κροίσῳ |force, compel ἔπεσθαι, πεπομφέναι δὲ Κροῖσον
 καὶ εἰς Λακεδαίμονα περὶ συμμαχίας· |collect, δὲ τὸ
 |assemble
 |army ἀμφὶ τὸν Πακτωλὸν |river , |send forth, abandon

Cyrus had sent out returned with their report. Croesus had been chosen leader and general-in- chief; a resolution had been passed, calling on all the allied kings to bring up their entire forces, raise enormous sums for the war, and spend them in hiring mercenaries where they could and making presents where they must. Large numbers of Thracians, armed with the short sword, had already been enrolled, and a body of Egyptians were coming by sea, amounting—so said the Indians—to 120,000 men, armed with long shields reaching to their feet, huge spears (such as they carry to this day), and sabres. Beside these, an army was expected from Cyprus, and there were already on the spot all the Cilicians, the men of both the Phrygias, of Lycaonia, Paphlagonia, and Cappadocia, the Arabians, the Phoenicians, and all the Assyrians under the king of Babylon. Moreover, the Ionians, and Aeolians, and indeed nearly all the Hellenic colonists on the coast were compelled to follow in the train of Croesus. Croesus himself had already sent to Lacedaemon to propose an alliance with the Spartans. The armament was mustering on the banks of the Pactolus, and they were to push forward presently to

vocabulary

ἀγορά open assembly; place of, speech
 in ~agora
ἀθυμέω (ῥ) be disheartened
αἰχμάλωτος captive ~acute
ἀλίσκομαι be captured ~helix
αὐτόμολος deserting, defecting
βάρβαρος non-Greek
βλάβη harm
διαθέω run around
διαλέγω go through, debate ~legion
διαφοιτάω wander, cast about
εἰκός likely
εἶωθα be accustomed, in the habit
ἐνταῦθα there, here
ἐπιμελέομαι take care of, oversee
ἐρωτάω ask about something
ἥσυχος quiet
κατάσκοπος spy, inspector
κυκλέω carry on wheels ~cycle
κυκλώω circle, encircle
κωλύω (ῥ) hinder, prevent
μεστός full
ὅπόσος as many as, how many, how
 great

παραγγέλλω transmit; order, summon,
 recommend, encourage
προαγορεύω declare, predict, order
προεῖπον foretell, proclaim, order
 before
προθυμέομαι (ῥ) be eager
προλέγω prophecy, proclaim; preselect
 ~legion
προσίστημι set against; (mp) stand
 near
στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy
στρατιά army ~strategy
στρατός common people/soldiers
 ~strategy
συγκαλέω call together ~gallo
σύλλογος meeting
συνέρχομαι come together
σχεδόν near, approximately at
 ~ischemia
τοιόσδε such
ὕπηρέτης -ου (m, 1) servant, officer
φαιδρός beaming ~photon
φροντίς -τος (f) thought, care
ὠφέλεια -ίας profit

μέλλειν αὐτοὺς εἰς Θύμβραρα, ἔνθα καὶ νῦν ὁ σύλλογος τῶν ὑπὸ βασιλέα βαρβάρων τῶν κάτω Συρίας, καὶ ἀγορὰν πᾶσι παρηγγέλλαι ἐνταῦθα κομίζειν· σχεδὸν δὲ τούτοις ταῦτ᾽ ἔλεγον καὶ οἱ αἰχμάλωτοι· ἐπεμελείτο γὰρ καὶ τούτου ὁ Κῦρος ὅπως ἀλίσκονται παρ' ὧν ἔμελλε πεύσεσθαι τι· ἔπεμπε δὲ καὶ δούλοις ἐοικότας κατασκόπους ὡς αὐτομόλους· ὡς οὖν ταῦτα ἤκουσεν ὁ στρατὸς τοῦ Κύρου, ἐν φροντίδι τε ἐγένετο, ὥσπερ εἰκός, ἡσυχαιτέροί τε ἢ ὡς εἰώθεσαν διεφοίτων, φαιδροί τε οὐ πάνυ ἐφαίνοντο, ἐκυκλοῦντό τε καὶ μεστὰ ἦν πάντα ἀλλήλους ἐρωτώντων περὶ τούτων καὶ διαλεγομένων.

Ὡς δὲ ἦσθετο ὁ Κῦρος φόβον διαθέοντα ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ, συγκαλεῖ τοὺς τε ἄρχοντας τῶν στρατευμάτων καὶ πάντας ὁπόσων ἀθυμούντων ἐδόκει βλάβη τις γίγνεσθαι καὶ προθυμουμένων ὠφέλεια. προεῖπε δὲ τοῖς ὑπηρέταις, καὶ ἄλλος εἴ τις βούλοιτο τῶν ὀπλοφόρων προσίστασθαι ἀκουσόμενος τῶν λόγων, μὴ κωλύειν. ἐπεὶ δὲ συνῆλθον, ἔλεξε τοιάδε.

μέλλειν αὐτοὺς εἰς Θύμβραρα, ἔνθα καὶ νῦν ὁ |meeting
 τῶν ὑπὸ βασιλέα βαρβάρων τῶν κάτω Συρίας, καὶ
 ἀγορὰν πᾶσι |transmit; order, |there, here .ομιῶν· |about δὲ
 |summon, recom-
 τούτοις ταῦτα ἐλέγον καὶ οἱ |captive |take care of,
 |oversee
 γὰρ καὶ τούτου ὁ Κῦρος ὅπως |be captured παρ' ὧν
 ἔμελλε πεύσεσθαι τι· ἔπεμπε δὲ καὶ δούλοις ἐοικότας
 |spy, inspector ὥς |deserting, ὥς οὖν ταῦτα ἤκουσεν ὁ
 |defecting
 |army τοῦ Κύρου, ἐν |thought, care ἐγένετο, ὥσπερ |likely,
 |quiet τε ἢ ὥς |be accus-|wander, cast|beaming τε
 |tomed, in|about
 οὐ πάννυ ἐφαίνοντο, ἐκυκλουντό τε καὶ |full ἦν πάντα
 ἀλλήλους ἐρωτώντων περὶ τούτων καὶ |go through, debate
 Ὡς δὲ ἦσθετο ὁ Κῦρος φόβον |run around ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ,
 |call together τοὺς τε ἄρχοντας τῶν |army
 καὶ πάντας |as/how many/great· ἵτων ἐδόκει |harm τις
 γίγνεσθαι καὶ |be eager |profit προείπε
 δὲ τοῖς |servant, , καὶ ἄλλος εἴ τις βούλοιτο
 |officer
 τῶν ὀπλοφόρων |set against; (mp) ἀκουσόμενος τῶν
 |stand near
 λόγων, μὴ |hinder, ἐπεὶ δὲ |come together· ἔξε |such
 |prevent

Thymbrara (the place which is still the mustering-ground for all the Asiatic subjects of the Great King west of Syria), and orders had been issued to open a market there. This report agreed with the accounts given by the prisoners, for Cyrus was always at pains to give men captured from whom he could get some information, and he would also send out spies disguised as runaway slaves.

Such were the tidings, and when the army heard the news there was much anxiety and concern, as one may well suppose. The men went about their work with an unusual quietness, their faces clouded over, or gathered in knots and clusters everywhere, anxiously asking each other the news and discussing the report. When Cyrus saw that fear was in the camp, he called a meeting of his generals, and indeed of all whose dejection might injure the cause and whose confidence assist it. Moreover, he sent word that any of the attendants, or any of the rank and file, who wished to hear what he had to say, would be allowed to come and listen. When they met, he spoke as follows:

"My friends and allies, I

vocabulary

ἀγγελία message, news ~angel
ἀγγέλλω carry a message, announce
 ~angel
ἄκοντίζω throw, (+gen) at ~acute
ἄκοντιστής -οῦ (m, 1) spearman
 ~acute
ἀκροβόλισις -εως (f) skirmishing
ἀμείνων comparative of ἀγαθός, noble
ἀντίπαλος rival; balanced
δήτα emphatic δῆ
ἐκκόπτω cut out, down, off
θαρρέω be of good heart
θαρσέω be of good heart
θαυμαστός wonderful; admirable
κτάομαι acquire, possess
νίκη (t) victory ~Nike

ὅμοιος like ~homoerotic
ὀπλίζω prepare, arm ~hoplite
πολλαπλάσιος many times more
πρόσειμι approach, draw near; add
 ~ion
προσέρχομαι come forward, surrender,
 come in
πρόσθεν before (time, space)
προσίημι be allowed near
προστίθηναι add; impose; (mp) agree;
 side with ~thesis
συγκαλέω call together ~gallo
συλλέγω collect, assemble ~legion
τοίνυν well, then
τόξον bow ~toxic
τοξότης -ου (m, 1) archer ~toxic

Ἄνδρες σύμμαχοι, ἐγὼ τοῖνυν ὑμᾶς συνεκάλεσα ἰδὼν
 τινὰς ὑμῶν, ἐπεὶ αἱ ἀγγελίαι ἦλθον ἐκ τῶν πολεμίων,
 πάννυ ἐοικότας πεφοβημένοις ἀνθρώποις. δοκεῖ γάρ
 μοι θαυμαστὸν εἶναι εἴ τις ὑμῶν ὅτι μὲν οἱ πολέμοι
 συλλέγονται δέδοικεν, ὅτι δὲ ἡμεῖς πολὺ πλείους
 συνειλέγμεθα νῦν ἢ ὅτε ἐνικῶμεν ἐκείνους, πολὺ δὲ ἄμεινον
 σὺν θεοῖς παρεσκευάσμεθα νῦν ἢ πρόσθεν, ταῦτα δὲ
 ὁρῶντες οὐ θαρρεῖτε. ὦ πρὸς θεῶν, ἔφη, τί δῆτα ἂν
 ἐποιήσατε οἱ νῦν δεδοικότες, εἰ ἡγγελλόν τινες τὰ παρ'
 ἡμῖν νῦν ὄντα ταῦτα ἀντίπαλα ἡμῖν προσιόντα, καὶ
 πρῶτον μὲν ἡκούετε, ἔφη, ὅτι οἱ πρότερον νικήσαντες
 ἡμᾶς οὗτοι πάλιν ἔρχονται ἔχοντες ἐν ταῖς ψυχαῖς ἦν
 τότε νίκην ἐκτήσαντο· ἔπειτα δὲ οἱ τότε ἐκκόψαντες
 τῶν τοξοτῶν καὶ ἀκοντιστῶν τὰς ἀκροβολίσσεις νῦν οὗτοι
 ἔρχονται καὶ ἄλλοι ὅμοιοι τούτοις πολλαπλάσιοι· ἔπειτα
 δὲ ὥσπερ οὗτοι ὀπλισάμενοι τοὺς πεζοὺς τότε ἐνίκων, νῦν
 οὕτω καὶ οἱ ἱππεῖς αὐτῶν παρεσκευασμένοι πρὸς τοὺς
 ἱππέας προσέρχονται, καὶ τὰ μὲν τόξα καὶ

Ἄνδρες σύμμαχοι, ἐγὼ |well, then, iās |call together ἰδὼν
 τινὰς ὑμῶν, ἐπεὶ αἱ |message, news ἔχον ἐκ τῶν πολέμιων,
 |altogether, very -s πεφοβημένοις ἀνθρώποις. δοκεῖ γάρ
 μοι |wonderful;
 |admirable εἶναι εἴ τις ὑμῶν ὅτι μὲν οἱ πολέμοι
 |collect, |to fear , ὅτι δὲ ἡμεῖς πολὺ πλείους
 |assemble
 νῦν ἢ ὅτε |win, defeat ἡμεῖς, πολὺ δὲ |better
 |collect, |assemble
 σὺν θεοῖς |prepare, render νῦν ἢ πρόσθεν, ταῦτα δὲ
 ὁρῶντες οὐ θαρρεῖτε. ὦ πρὸς θεῶν, ἔφη, τί |emphatic δὴ
 ἐποιήσατε οἱ νῦν |to fear , εἰ |carry a message, s τὰ παρ'
 |announce
 ἡμῖν νῦν ὄντα ταῦτα |rival;
 |balanced ἡμῖν προσιόντα, καὶ
 πρῶτον μὲν ἡκούετε, ἔφη, ὅτι οἱ πρότερον |win, defeat
 ἡμᾶς οὗτοι πάλιν ἔρχονται ἔχοντες ἐν ταῖς ψυχαῖς ἦν
 τότε |victory ἐκτήσαντο· ἔπειτα δὲ οἱ τότε |cut out, down, off
 τῶν |archer καὶ ἀκοντιστῶν τὰς |skirmishing νῦν οὗτοι
 ἔρχονται καὶ ἄλλοι |like τούτοις |many times more ἔπειτα
 δὲ ὥσπερ οὗτοι |prepare, arm τοὺς |on foot; foot-|win, defeat
 |soldier
 οὕτω καὶ οἱ |rider αὐτῶν |prepare, render πρὸς τοὺς
 |rider |come forward, sur- |tὰ μὲν |bow καὶ
 |render, come in

make no secret of the reason I have called you here. It was because I saw that some of you, when the reports of the enemy reached us, looked like men who were panic-stricken. But I must say I am astonished that any of you should feel alarm because the enemy is mustering his forces, and not be reassured by remembering that our own is far larger than it was when we conquered him before, and far better provided, under heaven, with all we need. I ask you how you would have felt, you who are afraid now, if you had been told that a force exactly like our own was marching upon us, if you had heard that men who had conquered us already were coming now, carrying in their hearts the victory they had won, if you knew that those who made short work then of all our bows and javelins were advancing again, and others with them, ten thousand times as many? Suppose you heard that the very men who had routed our infantry once were coming on now equipt as before, but this time on horseback, scorning arms and

vocabulary

ἄημι blow

ἄκόντιον diminutive of javelin

ἀνέχω raise; mid: endure, submit

ἄξων ἄξονος (m, 3) axle ~axon

ἀπαγγέλλω announce, order, promise
~angel

ἀποδοκιμάζω reject

ἀποστρέφω turn back, turn off course
~atrophy

ἀρήγω succor; prevent ~right

ἄρμα -τος (n, 3) chariot

διανοέω have in mind

δρέπανον sickle ~dermatology

ἡνίοχος rein holder

ἡσάομαι (pass) be weaker, be
overcome; (active) defeat

θώραξ -ηχος (m) breastplate ~thorax

ἰσόπεδον (ī) flat spot

ἰσχυρός (ō) strong, forceful, violent

κάμηλος (f) camel

κράνος -εος (n, 3) helmet; ship's ram

κωλύω (ō) hinder, prevent

ξύλινος wooden

παλτός brandished, hurled

πρόσειμι approach, draw near; add
~ion

προσελαύνω go to, approach ~elastic

πρόσθεν before (time, space)

προστίθηναι add; impose; (mp) agree;
side with ~thesis

πύργος ramparts, tower; line of troops

σιδήρεος of iron ~siderite

τάξις -εως (f) arrangement, military
unit

ὑπερέχω be over; protect

φυγή flight, means of escape ~fugitive

ἀκόντια ἀποδεδοκιμάκασι, παλτὸν δὲ ἐν ἰσχυρὸν ἕκαστος
 λαβὼν προσελαύνειν διανενόηται ὡς ἐκ χειρὸς τὴν μάχην
 ποιησόμενος· ἔτι δὲ ἄρματα ἔρχεται, ἃ οὐχ οὕτως ἐστήξει
 ὥσπερ πρόσθεν ἀπεστραμμένα ὥσπερ εἰς φυγὴν, ἀλλ' οἷ
 τε ἵπποι εἰσὶ κατατεθωρακισμένοι οἱ ἐν τοῖς ἄρμασιν, οἷ τε
 ἡνίοχοι ἐν πύργοις ἐστᾶσι ξυλίνοις τὰ ὑπερέχοντα ἅπαντα
 συνεστεγασμένοι θώραξι καὶ κράνεσι, δρέπανά τε σιδηρᾶ
 περὶ τοῖς ἄξοσι προσήρμостαι, ὡς ἐλῶντες καὶ οὗτοι εὐθὺς
 εἰς τὰς τάξεις τῶν ἐναντίων· πρὸς δ' ἔτι κάμηλοι εἰσὶν
 αὐτοῖς ἐφ' ὧν προσελῶσιν, ὧν μίαν ἐκάστην ἑκατὸν ἵπποι
 οὐκ ἂν ἀνάσχωιντο ἰδόντες· ἔτι δὲ πύργους προσίασιν
 ἔχοντες ἀφ' ὧν τοῖς μὲν ἐαυτῶν ἀρήξουσιν, ἡμᾶς δὲ
 βάλλοντες κωλύσουσι τοῖς ἐν τῷ ἰσοπέδῳ μάχεσθαι· εἰ
 δὴ ταῦτα ἀπήγγελλέ τις ὑμῖν ἐν τοῖς πολεμίοις ὄντα, οἱ
 νῦν φοβούμενοι τί ἂν ἐποιήσατε; ὁπότε ἀπαγγελλομένων
 ὑμῖν ὅτι Κροῖσος μὲν ἦρται τῶν πολεμίων στρατηγός,
 ὃς τοσούτῳ Σύρων κακίων ἐγένετο ὅσῳ Σύροι μὲν μάχῃ
 ἡττηθέντες ἔφυγον, Κροῖσος δὲ ἰδὼν ἡττημένους ἀντὶ

|diminu- |reject , |brandished, ἐν |strong, force- ΤΟΣ
 tive of |hurled |ful, violent
 javelin
 κάρων |go to, approach διανενόηται ὡς ἐκ χειρὸς τὴν μάχην

ποιησόμενος· ἔτι δὲ |chariot ἔρχεται, ἃ οὐχ οὕτως ἐστήξει

ὥσπερ πρόσθεν |turn back ὥσπερ εἰς |flight, means' οἷ
 of escape

τε ἵπποι εἰσὶ κατατεθωρακισμένοι οἱ ἐν τοῖς |chariot , οἷ τε

|rein holder |wall, ἐστᾶσι |wooden τὰ |be over; protect' ..αντα
 tower

συνεστεγασμένοι |breastplate ..ι |helmet; , |sickle τε σιδηρᾶ
 ship's ram

περὶ τοῖς |axle προσήρμονται, ὡς ἐλώντες καὶ οὐτοι εὐθὺς

εἰς τὰς τάξεις τῶν |opposite πρὸς δ' ἔτι |camel εἰσὶν

αὐτοῖς ἐφ' ὧν προσελῶσιν, ὧν μίαν ἐκάστην ἑκατὸν ἵπποι

οὐκ ἂν |raise; endure ἰδόντες· ἔτι δὲ |wall, προσίασιν
 tower

ἔχοντες ἀφ' ὧν τοῖς μὲν ἐαυτῶν |succor; , ἡμᾶς δὲ
 prevent

βάλλοντες |hinder, τοῖς ἐν τῷ |flat spot μάχεσθαι· εἰ
 prevent

δὴ ταῦτα |announce, or- ις ὑμῖν ἐν τοῖς πολεμίοις ὄντα, οἷ
 der, promise

νῦν φοβούμενοι τί ἂν ἐποιήσατε; |when |announce, order,
 promise

ὑμῖν ὅτι Κροῖσος μὲν ἥρηται τῶν πολεμίων στρατηγός,

ὅς |so much Σύρων κακίων ἐγένετο ὅσῳ Σύροι μὲν μάχῃ

| (pass) be weaker, be over- , ροῖσος δὲ ἰδὼν | (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (ac-
 come; (active) defeat | (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (ac-
 come; (active) defeat

javelins, each man armed with one stout spear, ready to charge home? Suppose you heard of chariots, made on a new pattern, not to be kept motionless, standing, as hitherto, with their backs turned to the foe as if for flight, but with the horses shielded by armour, and the drivers sheltered by wooden walls and protected by breastplates and helmets, and the axles fitted with iron scythes so that they can charge straight into the ranks of the foe? And suppose you heard that they have camels to ride on, each one of which would scare a hundred horses, and that they will bring up towers from which to help their own friends, and overwhelm us with volleys of darts so that we cannot fight them on level ground? If this were what you had heard of the enemy, I as you, once again, you who are now so fearful what would you have done? You who turn pale when told that Croesus has been chosen commander-in- chief, Croesus who proved himself so much more cowardly than the Syrians, that when they were worsted in battle and fled, instead of helping them,

vocabulary

ἀγγέλλω carry a message, announce
 ~angel

ἀμείνων comparative of ἀγαθός, noble

ἀρήγω succor; prevent ~right

ἀριστάω eat lunch ~aristocrat

ἄχθομαι be burdened with

δήπου perhaps; is it not so?

διαγγέλλω send news, proclaim

διατίθηναι arrange; set out goods for
 sale ~thesis

ἐξαγγέλλω bring news out ~angel

ἐξεργάζομαι accomplish; undo

ἡδομαι be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism

μισθόω rent out; (pass) be hired

οἶχομαι come, go, leave, be gone

Πέρσης Persian

πλουτέω be rich

τοίνυν well, then

φαῦλος trifling

ὠφελέω help, be useful

τοῦ ἀρήγειν τοῖς συμμάχοις φεύγων ὄχρετο· ἔπειτα δὲ διαγγέλλεται δήπου ὅτι αὐτοὶ μὲν οἱ πολέμοι οὐχ ἱκανοὶ ἡγοῦνται ὑμῖν εἶναι μάχεσθαι, ἄλλους δὲ μισθοῦνται, ὡς ἄμεινον μαχουμένους ὑπὲρ σφῶν ἢ αὐτοί. εἰ μέντοι τισὶ ταῦτα μὲν τοιαῦτα ὄντα δεινὰ δοκεῖ εἶναι, τὰ δὲ ἡμέτερα φαῦλα, τούτους ἐγὼ φημι χρῆναι, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἀφεῖναι εἰς τοὺς ἐναντίους· πολὺ γὰρ ἐκεῖ ὄντες πλείω ἂν ἡμᾶς ἢ παρόντες ὠφελοῖεν.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα εἶπεν ὁ Κῦρος, ἀνέστη Χρυσάντας ὁ Πέρσης καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε. ὦ Κῦρε, μὴ θαύμαζε εἴ τινες ἐσκυθρώπασαν ἀκούσαντες τῶν ἀγγελλομένων· οὐ γὰρ φοβηθέντες οὕτω διετέθησαν, ἀλλ' ἀχθεσθέντες· ὥσπερ γε, ἔφη, εἴ τινων βουλομένων τε καὶ οἰομένων ἤδη ἀριστήσῃν ἐξαγγελθείη τι ἔργον ὃ ἀνάγκη εἶη πρὸ τοῦ ἀρίστου ἐξεργάσασθαι, οὐδεὶς ἂν οἶμαι ἡσθείη ἀκούσας· οὕτω τοίνυν καὶ ἡμεῖς ἤδη οἰόμενοι πλουτήσῃν, ἐπεὶ ἡκούσαμεν ὅτι ἐστὶ περίλοιπον ἔργον ὃ δεῖ ἐξεργάσασθαι, συνεσκυθρωπάσαμεν, οὐ φοβούμενοι, ἀλλὰ πεποιῆσθαι

τοῦ |succor; prevent τοῖς συμμαχοῖς φεύγων |come, go ἔπειτα δὲ
 |send news, pro-claim |perhaps; is it not so? αὐτοὶ μὲν οἱ πολέμοι οὐχ |sufficient; fit, em-
 |powered
 ἡγούνται ὑμῖν εἶναι μάχεσθαι, ἄλλους δὲ |rent out; (pass)-S
 |be hired
 |better μαχουμένους ὑπὲρ σφῶν ἢ αὐτοί. εἰ |however ἰσὶ
 ταῦτα μὲν τοιαῦτα ὄντα δεινὰ δοκεῖ εἶναι, τὰ δὲ |our, my
 |trifling, τούτους ἐγὼ φημι χρῆναι, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἀφείναι εἰς
 τοὺς |opposite πολὺ γὰρ |there ὄντες πλείω ἂν ἡμᾶς ἢ
 παρόντες |help, be useful
 Ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα εἶπεν ὁ Κῦρος, |stand up; arouse ἵτας ὁ
 Πέρσης καὶ ἔλεξεν |thus ὦ Κῦρε, μὴ |marvel εἴ τινες
 ἐσκυθρόπασαν ἀκούσαντες τῶν |carry a message, οὐ γὰρ
 |announce
 |scare, scare away οὕτω |arrange; set out |be burdened with
 |goods for sale
 γε, ἔφη, εἴ τινων βουλομένων τε καὶ οἰομένων ἥδη
 |eat lunch |bring news out |εἰ ἔργον ὁ |necessity εἴη |before, forward
 ἀρίστου |accomplish; undo ὑδεὶς ἂν οἶμαι |be pleased, enjoy
 οὕτω |well, then καὶ ἡμεῖς ἥδη οἰόμενοι |be rich, ἐπεὶ
 ἡκούσαμεν ὅτι ἐστὶ περίλοιπον ἔργον ὃ δεῖ |accomplish; undo
 συνεσκυθρωπάσαμεν, οὐ |scare, scare, ἀλλὰ πεποιῆσθαι
 |away

his own allies, he took to his heels himself. We are told, moreover, that the enemy himself does not feel equal to facing you alone, he is hiring others to fight for him better than he could for himself. I can only say, gentlemen, that if any individual considers our position as I describe it alarming or unfavourable, he had better leave us. Let him join our opponents, he will do us far more service there than here.”

When Cyrus had ended, Chrysantas the Persian stood up and said:

”Cyrus, you must not wonder if the faces of some were clouded when they heard the news. The cloud was a sign of annoyance, not of fear. Just as if,” he went on, ”a company were expecting breakfast immediately, and then were told there was some business that must be got through first, I do not suppose any of them would be particularly pleased. Here we were, saying to ourselves that our fortunes were made, and now we are informed there is still something to be done, and of course our countenances fell, not because we were afraid, but because we could have wished it all

vocabulary

ἀγωνίζομαι contend, exert oneself
ἀπολαύω have use, have a benefit
ἀσφαλής safe, easy, steady, careful
ἄχθομαι be burdened with
ἔλαιον oil, olive oil ~olive
ἐννοέω consider
ἐπαινέω concur, praise, advise
ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable
ἡδομαι be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism
θαρρέω be of good heart
θαρσέω be of good heart
ἵσχω imitate, liken to, guess ~victor
καρποφόρος fruit-bearing

ὅπου where

πη somewhere, somehow
πρόβατον cattle, flocks, herds
προσχύζω wash
ῥαίω smite
σίτος grain, bread, food ~parasite
σῦκον fig
συλλέγω collect, assemble ~legion
συναγορεύω support
φθάζω do first, outstrip
φθάνω (ᾱ) do first, outstrip
φοῖνιξ -χος (m) red or purple dye or color; bay (horse); palm tree

ἂν ἤδη καὶ τοῦτο βουλόμενοι. ἀλλὰ γὰρ ἐπειδὴ οὐ
 περὶ Συρίας μόνον ἀγωνιούμεθα, ὅπου σίτος πολὺς καὶ
 πρόβατά ἐστι καὶ φοίνικες οἱ καρποφόροι, ἀλλὰ καὶ περὶ
 Λυδίας, ἔνθα πολὺς μὲν οἶνος, πολλὰ δὲ σῦκα, πολὺ δὲ
 ἔλαιον, θάλαττα δὲ προσκλύζει καθ' ἣν πλείω ἔρχεται ἢ
 ὅσα τις ἐώρακεν ἀγαθὰ, ταῦτα, ἔφη, ἐννοούμενοι οὐκέτι
 ἀχθόμεθα, ἀλλὰ θαρροῦμεν ὡς μάλιστα, ἵνα θᾶπτον καὶ
 τούτων τῶν Λυδίων ἀγαθῶν ἀπολαύωμεν. ὁ μὲν οὕτως
 εἶπεν· οἱ δὲ σύμμαχοι πάντες ἥσθησάν τε τῷ λόγῳ καὶ
 ἐπήνεσαν.

Καὶ μὲν δὴ, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ὦ ἄνδρες, δοκεῖ μοι ἵεναι ἐπ'
 αὐτοὺς ὡς τάχιστα, ἵνα πρῶτον μὲν αὐτοὺς φθάσωμεν
 ἀφικόμενοι, ἣν δυνώμεθα, ὅπου τὰ ἐπιτήδεια αὐτοῖς
 συλλέγεται· ἔπειτα δὲ ὅσῳ ἂν θᾶπτον ἴωμεν, τοσούτῳ
 μείω μὲν τὰ παρόντα αὐτοῖς εὐρήσομεν, πλείω δὲ τὰ
 ἀπόντα. ἐγὼ μὲν δὴ οὕτω λέγω· εἰ δέ τις ἄλλη πη
 γιγνώσκει ἢ ἀσφαλέστερον εἶναι ἢ ῥᾶον ἡμῖν, διδασκέτω.
 ἐπεὶ δὲ συνηγόρευον μὲν πολλοὶ ὡς χρῶν εἶη ὅτι τάχιστα

ἂν ἤδη καὶ τοῦτο βουλόμενοι. ἀλλὰ γὰρ ἐπειδὴ οὐ
 περὶ Συρίας μόνον |contend, exert|where grain, πολὺς καὶ
 |oneself bread,
 |cattle, flocks, τι καὶ |red, red dye;fruit-bearing food, ἀλλὰ καὶ περὶ
 |herds |palm tree
 Λυδίας, ἔνθα πολὺς μὲν |wine , πολλὰ δὲ |fig , πολὺ δὲ
 |oil , θάλαττα δὲ |wash καθ' ἣν πλείω ἔρχεται ἢ
 ὅσα τις ἐώρακεν ἀγαθά, ταῦτα, ἔφη, |consider |no more
 |be burdened with` θαρροῦμεν ὥς μάλιστα, ἵνα θᾶπτον καὶ
 τούτων τῶν Λυδίων ἀγαθῶν |have use, have ὁ μὲν οὕτως
 |a benefit
 εἶπεν· οἱ δὲ σύμμαχοι πάντες |be pleased, enjoy, λόγῳ καὶ
 |concur .
 Καὶ μὲν δὴ, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ὦ ἄνδρες, δοκεῖ μοι ἵεναι ἐπ'
 αὐτοὺς ὥς τάχιστα, ἵνα πρῶτον μὲν αὐτοὺς φθάσωμεν
 |arrive , ἣν δυνώμεθα, |where τὰ |fit, suitable αὐτοῖς
 |collect, ἔπειτα δὲ ὅσω ἂν θᾶπτον |imitate, |so much
 |assemble liken to,
 μείω μὲν τὰ παρόντα αὐτοῖς εὐρήσομεν, πλείω δὲ τὰ
 |be absent, go' γὰρ μὲν δὴ οὕτω λέγω· εἰ δέ τις ἄλλη πη
 |away, return
 γινώσκει ἢ |safe, easy, steady, εἶναι ἢ ῥᾶον ἡμῶν, |teach
 |careful
 ἐπεὶ δὲ |support μὲν πολλοὶ ὥς |must, εἴη ὅτι τάχιστα
 |should

over and done with. However, since it now appears that Syria is not to be the only prize—though there is much to be got in Syria, flocks and herds and corn and palm-trees yielding fruit—but Lydia as well, Lydia the land of wine and oil and fig-trees, Lydia, to whose shores the sea brings more good things than eyes can feast on, I say that once we realise this we can mope no longer, our spirits will rise apace, and we shall hasten to lay our hands on the Lydian wealth without delay.”

So he spoke, and the allies were well pleased at his words and gave him loud applause.

”Truly, gentlemen,” said Cyrus, ”as Chrysantas says, I think we ought to march without delay, if only to be beforehand with our foes, and reach their magazines before they do themselves; and besides, the quicker we are, the fewer resources we shall find with them. That is how I put the matter, but if any one sees a safer or an easier way, let him instruct us.”

But many speakers followed, all urging an immediate

*vocabulary***ἀνασκευάζω** pack up**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not needing ~Sp. sin**ἀντιλέγω** contradict, oppose**ἐθίζω** accustom**ἐξαπίνης** suddenly**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable**λογίζομαι** reckon, consider**μείων** less, smaller**νόσημα** -τος (n, 3) disease**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle

~hoplite

ὀπόσος as many as, how many, how great**πεντεκαίδεκα** 15**περιπίπτω** embrace; fall in with**σίτος** grain, bread, food ~parasite**συσκευάζω** pack up**τετράπους** (2) quadruped**τοιόσδε** such**ὕδροποτέω** drink water

πορεύεσθαι ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους, ἀντέλεγε δὲ οὐδείς, ἐκ
τούτου δὴ ὁ Κῦρος ἤρχετο λόγου τοιούδε.

Ἄνδρες σύμμαχοι, αἱ μὲν ψυχαὶ καὶ τὰ σώματα καὶ
τὰ ὄπλα οἷς δεῖσαι χρῆσθαι ἐκ πολλοῦ ἡμῖν σὺν θεῷ
παρεσκευάσται· νῦν δὲ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια δεῖ εἰς τὴν ὁδὸν
συσκευάζεσθαι αὐτοῖς τε ἡμῖν καὶ ὁπόσοις τετράποσι
χρώμεθα μὴ μείον ἢ εἴκοσιν ἡμερῶν. ἐγὼ γὰρ λογιζόμενος
εὐρίσκω πλέον ἢ πεντεκαίδεκα ἡμερῶν ἐσομένην ὁδόν, ἐν
ἣ οὐδὲν εὐρήσομεν τῶν ἐπιτηδείων· ἀνεσκευάσται γὰρ τὰ
μὲν ὑφ' ἡμῶν, τὰ δ' ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων ὅσα ἐδύναντο.
συσκευάζεσθαι οὖν χρὴ σίτον μὲν ἱκανόν· ἄνευ γὰρ τούτου
οὔτε μάχεσθαι οὔτε ζῆν δυναίμεθ' ἄν· οἶνον δὲ τοσοῦτον
ἕκαστον ἔχειν χρὴ ὅσος ἱκανὸς ἔσται ἐθίσαι ἡμᾶς αὐτοὺς
ὑδροποτεῖν· πολλὴ γὰρ ἔσται τῆς ὁδοῦ ἄοινος, εἰς ἣν οὐδ'
ἂν πάνυ πολὺν οἶνον συσκευασώμεθα, διαρκέσει. ὥς οὖν
μὴ ἑξαπίνης ἄοινοι γενόμενοι νοσήμασι περιπίπτωμεν,
ὧδε χρὴ ποιεῖν· ἐπὶ μὲν τῷ σίτῳ νῦν εὐθὺς ἀρχώμεθα
πίνειν ὕδωρ· τοῦτο

πορεύεσθαι ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους, |contradict, δὲ οὐδεὶς, ἐκ
|oppose
τούτου δὴ ὁ Κύρος ἤρχετο λόγου |such .

Ἄνδρες σύμμαχοι, αἱ μὲν ψυχαὶ καὶ τὰ σώματα καὶ
τὰ |tool οἷς δεήσει χρῆσθαι ἐκ πολλοῦ ἡμῖν σὺν θεῷ

|prepare, render νῦν δὲ τὰ |fit, suitable δεῖ εἰς τὴν ὁδὸν

|pack up αὐτοῖς τε ἡμῖν καὶ |as/how |quadruped
|many/great

χρώμεθα μὴ |less, ἢ, |twenty ἡμερῶν. ἐγὼ γὰρ |reckon,
|smaller |consider

εὕρισκω πλέον ἢ |15 ἡμερῶν ἐσομένην ὁδόν, ἐν

ἧ οὐδὲν εὐρήσομεν τῶν |fit, suitable |pack up γὰρ τὰ

μὲν ὑφ' ἡμῶν, τὰ δ' ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων ὅσα ἐδύναντο.

|pack up οὖν χρὴ |grain, μὲν |suffi- |away from; not hav-
|bread, |cient; fit, |ing; not needing
οὔτε μάχεσθαι οὔτε ζῆν δύναίμε|food |empow-
|ered οἶνον δὲ |so much

ἕκαστον ἔχειν χρὴ ὅσος |sufficient; ἢ - |fit, |accustom, ἅς αὐτοὺς
|empowered

|drink water πολλὴ γὰρ ἔσται τῆς ὁδοῦ αἶνος, εἰς ἣν οὐδ'

ἂν |altogether, very - ἵνον |pack up , διαρκέσει. ὥς οὖν

μὴ |suddenly αἶνοι γενόμενοι |disease |embrace; fall in,
|with

|thus χρὴ ποιεῖν· ἐπὶ μὲν τῷ |grain, νῦν εὐθὺς ἀρχώμεθα
|bread,
|food

πίνειν ὕδωρ· τοῦτο

march, without one speech in opposition, and so Cyrus took up the word again and said:

”My friends and allies, God helping us, our hearts, our bodies, and our weapons have now been long prepared: all that remains is to get together what we need for ourselves and our animals on a march of at least twenty days. I reckon that the journey itself must take more than fifteen, and not a vestige of food shall we find from end to end. It has all been made away with, partly by ourselves, partly by our foes, so far as they could. We must collect enough corn, without which one can neither fight nor live: and as for wine, every man must carry just so much as will accustom him to drink water: the greater part of the country will be absolutely devoid of wine, and the largest supply we could take with us would not hold out. But to avoid too sudden a change and the sickness that might follow, this is what we must do. We must begin

vocabulary

αἰτιάομαι blame ~etiology
ἀναπαύω cause to cease ~pause
ἀνέχω raise; mid: endure, submit
ἀπάγω lead away, back ~demagogue
ἄρτος bread, loaf
ἀφαιρέω take away ~heresy
ἄφθονος ungrudging, plentiful
ἄχρηστος useless, unprofitable
βάρος -ους (n, 3) weight, burden
δεῖπνον meal, food
δεῖπνος meal, food
δεύω moisten; lack
ἐνδέω tie to, entangle; lack
ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable
ἐσθής clothes ~vest
ἐφθός boiled
ἡδύς sweet, pleasant ~hedonism

ἰσχυρός (ῥ) strong, forceful, violent
καθεύδω lie down
καταδαπανάω squander, consume
μᾶζα barley bread; lump
μάσσω handle, knead ~mass
μείων less, smaller
μεταβάλλω alter, transform
μεταβολή change, exchange
μιμέομαι (ι) imitate, represent
περισσεύω be supernumerary, abound
σίτος grain, bread, food ~parasite
σκευάζω prepare, collect
ὕγιαίνω be healthy
ὑποφέρω carry out of danger ~bear
φύσις -εως (f) nature (of a thing)
 ~physics
φύω produce, beget; clasp ~physics
χειμών -ος (m, 3) winter, storm

γὰρ ἤδη ποιοῦντες οὐ πολὺ μεταβαλοῦμεν. καὶ γὰρ
 ὅστις ἀλφιτοσιτεῖ, ὕδατι μεμαγμένην αἰὲ τὴν μᾶζαν ἐσθίει,
 καὶ ὅστις ἀρτοσιτεῖ, ὕδατι δεδευμένον τὸν ἄρτον, καὶ τὰ
 ἐφθὰ δὲ πάντα μεθ' ὕδατος τοῦ πλείστου ἐσκεύασται.
 μετὰ δὲ τὸν σῖτον ἐὰν οἶνον ἐπιπίνωμεν, οὐδὲν μείον
 ἔχουσα ἢ ψυχὴ ἀναπαύσεται. ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ τοῦ
 μετὰ δεῖπνον ἀφαιρεῖν χρή, ἔστ' ἂν λάθωμεν ὑδροπόται
 γενόμενοι. ἢ γὰρ κατὰ μικρὸν παράλλαξις πᾶσαν ποιεῖ
 φύσιν ὑποφέρειν τὰς μεταβολάς· διδάσκει δὲ καὶ ὁ θεός,
 ἀπάγων ἡμᾶς κατὰ μικρὸν ἔκ τε τοῦ χειμῶνος εἰς τὸ
 ἀνέχεσθαι ἰσχυρὰ θάληνη ἔκ τε τοῦ θάλπους εἰς τὸν
 ἰσχυρὸν χειμῶνα· ὃν χρὴ μιμουμένους εἰς ὃ δεῖ ἐλθεῖν
 προειθισμένους ἡμᾶς ἀφικνεῖσθαι. καὶ τὸ τῶν στρωμάτων
 δὲ βάρος εἰς τὰπιτήδεια καταδαπανᾶτε· τὰ μὲν γὰρ
 ἐπιτήδεια περιττεύοντα οὐκ ἄχρηστα ἔσται· στρωμάτων
 δὲ ἐνδεηθέντες μὴ δείσητε ὥς οὐχ ἡδέως καθευδήσετε· εἰ
 δὲ μή, ἐμὲ αἰτιᾶσθε. ἐσθὴς μέντοι ὅτω ἐστὶν ἀφθονωτέρα
 παροῦσα, πολλὰ καὶ ὑγιαίνουντι καὶ

γὰρ ἤδη ποιοῦντες οὐ πολὺ |alter, transform καὶ γὰρ
 ὅστις ἀλφιτοσιτεῖ, ὕδατι |handle, knead ἀεὶ τὴν |barley ἐσθίει,
 καὶ ὅστις ἄρτοσιτεῖ, ὕδατι |moisten; lack ὃν ἄρτον, καὶ τὰ
 |boiled δὲ πάντα μεθ' ὕδατος τοῦ πλείστου |prepare,
 μετὰ δὲ τὸν σίτον ἐὰν οἶνον ἐπιπίνωμεν, οὐδὲν |less,
 ἔχουσα ἢ ψυχὴ |cause to cease ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ τοῦ
 μετὰ δαίπνον |take away χρή, ἔστ' ἂν λάθωμεν ὑδροπόται
 γενόμενοι. ἢ γὰρ κατὰ μικρὸν παράλλαξις πᾶσαν ποιεῖ
 φύσιν |carry away τὰς |change, διδάσκει δὲ καὶ ὁ θεός,
 |exchange
 |lead away, back κατὰ μικρὸν ἕκ τε τοῦ |winter, εἰς τὸ
 |storm
 |raise; ἰσχυρὰ θάλην ἕκ τε τοῦ θάλπους εἰς τὸν
 |endure
 ἰσχυρὸν |winter, ὃν χρή |imitate, εἰς ὃ δεῖ ἐλθεῖν
 |storm |represent
 προειθισμένους ἡμᾶς ἀφικνεῖσθαι. καὶ τὸ τῶν στρωμάτων
 δὲ |weight, εἰς |fit, suitable |squander, τὰ μὲν γὰρ
 |burden |consume
 |fit, suitable |be supernumer- ὡς |useless, un- ἵται στρωμάτων
 |ary, abound |profitable
 δὲ |tie to μὴ δείσητε ὡς οὐχ |sweet |lie down εἰ
 δὲ μὴ, ἐμὲ |blame |clothes μέντοι ὅτω ἐστὶν |ungrudging,
 |plentiful
 παρούσα, πολλὰ καὶ |be healthy καὶ

by taking water with our food: we can do this without any great change in our habits. For every one who eats porridge has the oatmeal mixed with water, and every one who eats bread has the wheat soaked in water, and all boiled meat is prepared in water. We shall not miss the wine if we drink a little after the meal is done. Then we must gradually lessen the amount, until we find that, without knowing it, we have become water-drinkers. Gradual change enables every creature to go through a complete conversion; and this is taught us by God, who leads us little by little out of winter until we can bear the blazing heat of summer, and out of heat back again into the depths of winter. So should we follow God, and take one step after another until we reach our goal. What you might spend on heavy rugs and coverlets spend rather on food: any superfluity there will not be wasted: and you will not sleep less soundly for lack of bedclothes; if you do, I give you leave to blame me. But with clothing the case is different: a man can hardly have too much of that in

vocabulary

αἰσχύνῃ (ῑ) shame, dishonor
ἀκέρατος unmixed; unharmed
ἀκονάω sharpen
ἄλμυρός salty
ἄμαξα wagon
ἀπαγορεύω forbid; fail, be worn out
ἀργέω not work; (pass) be fruitless, left undone
ἀρκέω satisfy; ward off, defend; suffice
ἄρμα -τος (n, 3) chariot
ἀρτάω hang something on
ἀρτέομαι be ready
ἀσθενέω be weak, sick
αὐτόθεν from that place
δριμύς (ι) sharp, piercing, bitter
εἰκός likely
ἐκβαίνω come forth, disembark ~basis
ἔπειμι lie upon; approach ~ion
ἐπικουρέω fight in another's cause
 ~cereal
ἐπιλανθάνω mp: forget ~Lethe

ἱμάς -ντος (ι, m, 3) strap
κάμνω toil, be tired, acquire by toil; be troubled; be sick
κατατρίβω (ι) wear out, use up
κοῦφος light, nimble
λόγχῃ spear point; lot
ξυήλῃ curved knife
ξύλον piece of wood ~xylophone
ξύω (ῑ) smooth
ὄγκος barb of an arrow
ὅπου where
ὄργανον tool; body organ
ὄψον piece of cooked meat, relish
παιδεύω raise; train
παλτός brandished, hurled
περιπλέω sail around ~float
πραΐξις -εως (f) result, business
 ~practice
ρήγνυμι (ῑ) to break
σίτος grain, bread, food ~parasite
συσκευάζω pack up
τύχη fortune, act of a god

κάμνοντι ἐπικουρεῖ. ὅψα δὲ χρή συνεσκευάσθαι ὅσα ἐστὶν
 ὀξέα καὶ δριμέα καὶ ἀλμυρά· ταῦτα γὰρ ἐπὶ σίτον τε ἄγει
 καὶ ἐπὶ πλείστον ἀρκεῖ. ὅταν δ' ἐκβαίνωμεν εἰς ἀκέραια,
 ὅπου ἤδη εἰκὸς ἡμᾶς σίτον λαμβάνειν, χειρομύλας
 χρή αὐτόθεν παρασκευάσασθαι αἷς σιτοποιησόμεθα·
 τοῦτο γὰρ κουφότατον τῶν σιτοποιικῶν ὀργάνων.
 συνεσκευάσθαι δὲ χρή καὶ ὧν ἀσθενοῦντες δέονται
 ἄνθρωποι· τούτων γὰρ ὁ μὲν ὄγκος μικρότατος, ἣν δὲ
 τύχη τοιαύτη γένηται, μάλιστα δεήσει. ἔχειν δὲ χρή καὶ
 ἱμάντας· τὰ γὰρ πλείστα καὶ ἀνθρώποις καὶ ἵπποις ἱμᾶσιν
 ἥρτηται· ὧν κατατριβομένων καὶ ῥήγνυμένων ἀνάγκη
 ἀργεῖν, ἣν μή τις ἔχῃ περίζυγα. ὅστις δὲ πεπαιδευταί
 καὶ παλτὸν ζύσασθαι, ἀγαθὸν καὶ ξυήλης μὴ ἐπιλαθέσθαι.
 ἀγαθὸν δὲ καὶ ῥίνην φέρεσθαι· ὁ γὰρ λόγχην ἀκονῶν
 ἐκεῖνος καὶ τὴν ψυχὴν τι παρακονᾷ. ἔπεστι γάρ τις
 αἰσχύνῃ λόγχην ἀκονῶντα κακὸν εἶναι. ἔχειν δὲ χρή καὶ
 ξύλα περίπλεω καὶ ἄρμασι καὶ ἀμάξαις· ἐν γὰρ πολλαῖς
 πράξεσι πολλὰ ἀνάγκη καὶ τὰ ἀπαγορεύοντα

toil, ac- fight in an- piece ὅ pack up ὅσα ἐστὶν
 quire, be other's cause cooked meat,
 tired καὶ sharp, pierc- salty ταῦτα γὰρ ἐπὶ σίτον τε ἄγει
 |ing, bitter
 καὶ ἐπὶ πλείστον satisfy; ward ὅff, come forth εἰς unmixed;,
 |defend; suffice |unharméd
 ὅπου ἤδη |likely ἡμᾶς σίτον λαμβάνειν, χειρομύλας
 χρὴ |from that place, ισκενάσασθαι αἷς σιτοποιησόμεθα·
 τοῦτο γὰρ |light, nimble τῶν σιτοποικῶν |tool; body organ
 |pack up δὲ χρὴ καὶ ὦν ἀσθενοῦντες δέονται
 ἄνθρωποι· τούτων γὰρ ὁ μὲν ὄγκος μικρότατος, ἣν δὲ
 |fortune, act ἴτη γένηται, μάλιστα δεήσει. ἔχειν δὲ χρὴ καὶ
 |of a god
 |strap τὰ γὰρ πλείστα καὶ ἀνθρώποις καὶ ἵπποις |strap
 ἥρτηται· ὦν |wear out, use up καὶ |to break ἀνάγκη
 |not work; (pass) be ἔχη περίζυγα. ὅστις δὲ πεπαίδευται
 |fruitless, left undone
 καὶ |brandishes smooth, ἀγαθὸν καὶ |curved μὴ ἐπιλαθέσθαι.
 |hurled |knife
 ἀγαθὸν δὲ καὶ ῥίνην φέρεσθαι· ὁ γὰρ |spear ἀκονῶν
 |point;
 ἐκεῖνος καὶ τὴν ψυχὴν τι παρακονᾷ. |lot ἐπεστι γὰρ τις
 |shame, |spear |sharpen κακὸν εἶναι. ἔχειν δὲ χρὴ καὶ
 |dishonor |point;
 |lot ξύλα περιπλεω καὶ ἄρμασι καὶ |wagon ἐν γὰρ πολλαῖς
 πράξεισι πολλὰ ἀνάγκη καὶ τὰ |forbid; fail, be
 |worn out

sickness or in health. And for seasoning you should take what is sharp and dry and salted, for such meats are more appetising and more satisfying. And since we may come into districts as yet unravaged where we may find growing corn, we ought to take handmills for grinding; these are the lightest machines for the purpose. Nor must we forget to supply ourselves with medicines—they are small in bulk and, if need arises, invaluable. And we ought to have a large supply of straps—I wonder what is not fastened by a strap to man or horse? But straps wear out and get broken and then things are at a standstill unless there are spare ones to be had. Some of you have learnt to shave spears, so that it would be as well not to forget a plane, and also to carry a rasp, for the man who sharpens a spearhead will sharpen his spirit too. He will feel ashamed to whet the edge and be a coward. And we must take plenty of timber for chariots and waggons; there is bound to be many a breakdown on the road. Also we

vocabulary

ἄκοντίζω throw, (+gen) at ~acute
ἄκοντιστής -οῦ (m, 1) spearman
 ~acute
ἄμαξα wagon
ἀναγκάζω force, compel
ἀναγκαῖος coerced, coercing, slavery
ἄξινη (i) war-axe
ἀπογράφω copy, register
ἀποδοχιμάζω reject
ἀρκέω satisfy; ward off, defend; suffice
δρέπανον sickle ~dermatology
ἐνδεής inadequate
ἐνδέω tie to, entangle; lack
ἐξετάζω inspect, interrogate, estimate
ἡγεμών -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide, chief ~hegemony
κατασκευάζω equip, build
κοινός communal, ordinary
κοινόω make common; cooperate

ὁδοποιέω make a path
ὄργανον tool; body organ
πανταχοῦ everywhere; completely
παραγίγνομαι be beside, attend
 ~genus
παρίημι dangle; pass over, allow ~jet
πέλεκυς ax (for war or woodcutting)
σκευοφόρος pack animal, porter
στρατεύω make an expedition, war, campaign ~strategy
σφενδονάω sling
σφενδονέω sling
σφενδονήτης -ου (m, 1) slinger
τοξότης -ου (m, 1) archer ~toxic
τροφή food, upkeep ~atrophy
ὕποζύγιον beast of burden ~zygote
χειροτέχνης -ου (m, 1) artisan
χρήσιμος useful
ὠφέλιμος helping, useful

εἶναι. ἔχειν δὲ δεῖ καὶ τὰ ἀναγκαιότατα ὄργανα ἐπὶ ταῦτα
 πάντα· οὐ γὰρ πανταχοῦ χειροτέχναι παραγίγνονται·
 τὸ δ' ἐφ' ἡμέραν ἀρκέσον ὀλίγοι τινὲς οἱ οὐχ ἱκανοὶ
 ποιῆσαι. ἔχειν δὲ χρὴ καὶ ἄμην καὶ σμινύην κατὰ
 ἄμαξαν ἐκάστην, καὶ κατὰ τὸν νωτοφόρον δὲ ἀξίνην
 καὶ δρέπανον· ταῦτα γὰρ καὶ ἰδίᾳ ἐκάστῳ χρήσιμα καὶ
 ὑπὲρ τοῦ κοινοῦ πολλάκις ὠφέλιμα γίνεται. τὰ μὲν
 οὖν εἰς τροφήν δέοντα οἱ ἡγεμόνες τῶν ὀπλοφόρων
 ἐξετάζετε τοὺς ὑφ' ὑμῖν αὐτοῖς· οὐ γὰρ δεῖ παριέναι
 ὅτου ἂν τις τούτων ἐνδέχεται· ἡμεῖς γὰρ τούτων ἐνδεεῖς
 ἐσόμεθα. ἃ δὲ κατὰ τὰ ὑποζύγια κελεύω ἔχειν, ὑμεῖς οἱ
 τῶν σκευοφόρων ἄρχοντες ἐξετάζετε, καὶ τὸν μὴ ἔχοντα
 κατασκευάζεσθαι ἀναγκάζετε. ὑμεῖς δ' αὖ οἱ τῶν ὁδοποιῶν
 ἄρχοντες ἔχετε μὲν ἀπογεγραμμένους παρ' ἐμοῦ τοὺς
 ἀποδεδοκιμασμένους καὶ τοὺς ἐκ τῶν ἀκοντιστῶν καὶ τοὺς
 ἐκ τῶν τοξοτῶν καὶ τοὺς ἐκ τῶν σφενδονητῶν· τούτων
 δὲ χρὴ τοὺς μὲν ἀπὸ τῶν ἀκοντιστῶν πέλεκυν ἔχοντας
 ξυλοκόπον ἀναγκάζειν στρατεύεσθαι, τοὺς δ' ἀπὸ

εἶναι. ἔχειν δὲ δεῖ καὶ τὰ |coerced, coercing, |tool; body' organ ἵτα
 |slavery
 πάντα· οὐ γὰρ |everywhere; |artisan |be beside, attend
 |completely
 τὸ δ' ἐφ' ἡμέραν |satisfy; ward' off, |τινὲς οἳ οὐχ |sufficient; fit, em-
 |defend; suffice |powered
 ποιῆσαι. ἔχειν δὲ χρὴ καὶ ἄμην καὶ σμινύην κατὰ
 |wagon ἐκάστην, καὶ κατὰ τὸν νωτοφόρον δὲ |axe
 καὶ |sickle ταῦτα γὰρ καὶ ἰδίᾳ ἐκάστῳ |useful καὶ
 ὑπὲρ τοῦ κοινοῦ |often |helping, |γίγνεται. τὰ μὲν
 |useful
 οὖν εἰς |food, δέοντα οἱ |leader τῶν ὀπλοφόρων
 |upkeep
 |inspect, interro-ς ὑφ' ὑμῶν αὐτοῖς· οὐ γὰρ δεῖ |dangle; pass
 |gate, estimate |over, allow
 οὗτου ἂν τις τούτων |tie to ἡμεῖς γὰρ τούτων |inadequate
 ἐσόμεθα. ἃ δὲ κατὰ τὰ |beast of burden ὧς ἔχειν, ὑμεῖς οἱ
 τῶν |pack animal, porter, ντες |inspect, interro- τὸν μὴ ἔχοντα
 |gate, estimate
 |equip, build |force, compel ὑμεῖς δ' αὖ οἱ τῶν ὁδοποιῶν
 ἄρχοντες ἔχετε μὲν |copy, register παρ' ἐμοῦ τοὺς
 |reject καὶ τοὺς ἐκ τῶν ἀκοντιστῶν καὶ τοὺς
 ἐκ τῶν |archer καὶ τοὺς ἐκ τῶν σφενδονητῶν· τούτων
 δὲ χρὴ τοὺς μὲν ἀπὸ τῶν ἀκοντιστῶν |ax ἔχοντας
 ξυλοκόπον |force, compel |make an expedition, ἵς δ' ἀπὸ
 |war, campaign

shall need the most necessary tools for repairs, since smiths and carpenters are not to be found at every turn, but there are few who cannot patch up a makeshift for the time. Then there should be a mattock and a shovel apiece for every waggon, and on every beast of burden a billhook and an axe, always useful to the owner and sometimes a boon to all. The provisions must be seen to by the officers of the fighting-line; they must inspect the men under their command and see that nothing is omitted which any man requires; the omission would be felt by us all. Those of you who are in command of the baggage-train will inspect what I have ordered for the animals and insist upon every man being provided who is not already supplied. You, gentlemen, who are in command of the road-makers, you have the lists of the soldiers I have disqualified from serving as javelin-men, bowmen, or slingers, and you will make

vocabulary

ἀγορά open assembly; place of, speech
 in ~agora
ἀλίσκομαι be captured ~helix
ἄμαξα wagon
ἀπολύω loose, free from ~loose
ἐμπορος passenger; merchant ~pierce
ἐπειδὴν when, after
ἐπίσταμαι know how, understand
 ~station
ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable
ἔπω (mid) follow, accompany; (act,
 uncommon) handle, take care of
ἐφίστημι set; (mp) come/be near,
 direct, stop ~station
ἡλικία time of life, contemporaries
ἵλα (ἱᾶ) military group
μισθός reward, wages
ὅθεν whence
ὄργανον tool; body organ
παρέρχομαι pass, escape
προερέω say beforehand
προλέγω prophecy, proclaim; preselect

~legion

προσάγω bring to a place
 ~demagogue
προσδέω bind also; need also
πωλέομαι go back and forth
πωλέω sell
σχυτότομος leather worker
στερέω steal, take
στέρομαι lack, lose
στρατιά army ~strategy
στρατιωτικός military
σφενδονάω sling
σφενδονέω sling
σφενδονήτης -ου (m, 1) slinger
τάξις -εως (f) arrangement, military
 unit
τέκτων (f) skilled worker ~technician
τέχνη craft, art, plan, contrivance
 ~technology
τοξότης -ου (m, 1) archer ~toxic
ὕπηρετέω serve
χάλκεος made of copper or bronze
χαλκεύς -ος (m) smith

τῶν τοξοτῶν σμινύην, τοὺς δ' ἀπὸ τῶν σφειδονητῶν
 ἄμην· τούτους δὲ ἔχοντας ταῦτα πρὸ τῶν ἀμαξῶν κατ'
 ἴλας πορεύεσθαι, ὅπως ἦν τι δέῃ ὁδοποιίας, εὐθύς ἐνεργοί
 ἦτε, καὶ ἐγὼ ἦν τι δέωμαι, ὅπως εἰδῶ ὅθεν δεῖ λαβόντα
 τούτοις χρῆσθαι. ἄξω δὲ καὶ τοὺς ἐν τῇ στρατιωτικῇ
 ἡλικίᾳ σὺν τοῖς ὀργάνοις χαλκέας τε καὶ τέκτονας καὶ
 σκυτοτόμους, ὅπως ἂν τι δέῃ καὶ τοιούτων τεχνῶν ἐν
 τῇ στρατιᾷ μηδὲν ἐλλείπηται. οὗτοι δὲ ὀπλοφόρου μὲν
 τάξεως ἀπολελύσονται, ἃ δὲ ἐπίστανται, τῷ βουλομένῳ
 μισθοῦ ὑπηρετοῦντες ἐν τῷ τεταγμένῳ ἔσονται. ἦν δέ
 τις καὶ ἔμπορος βούληται ἔπεσθαι πωλεῖν τι βουλόμενος,
 τῶν μὲν προειρημένων ἡμερῶν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἔχειν ἦν τι
 πωλῶν ἀλίσκῃται, πάντων στερήσεται· ἐπειδὰν δ' αὐται
 παρέλθωσιν αἱ ἡμέραι, πωλήσει ὅπως ἂν βούληται. ὅστις
 δ' ἂν τῶν ἐμπόρων πλείστην ἀγορὰν παρέχων φαίνεται,
 οὗτος καὶ παρὰ τῶν συμμάχων καὶ παρ' ἐμοῦ δώρων καὶ
 τιμῆς τεύξεται. εἰ δέ τις χρημάτων προσδεῖσθαι νομίζει
 εἰς ἐμπολὴν, γνωστῆρας ἐμοὶ προσαγαγὼν καὶ

τῶν |archer σμινύην, τοὺς δ' ἀπὸ τῶν σφενδονητῶν

ἄμην· τούτους δὲ ἔχοντας ταῦτα |before, |in |wagon κατ' |forward

ἱλας πορεύεσθαι, ὅπως ἦν τι δέη ὁδοποιίας, εὐθὺς ἐνεργοὶ

ἦτε, καὶ ἐγὼ ἦν τι δέωμαι, ὅπως εἰδῶ |whence ἰ λαβόντα

τούτοις χρῆσθαι. ἄξω δὲ καὶ τοὺς ἐν τῇ |military

|time of life, contem-|tool; body organ |as τε καὶ |worker καὶ |poraries

σκυτοτόμους, ὅπως ἂν τι δέη καὶ τοιούτων |craft ἐν

τῇ |army μὴδὲν ἐλλείπηται. οὗτοι δὲ ὅπλοφόρου μὲν

τάξεως |loose, free from , ἃ δὲ ἐπίστανται, τῷ βουλομένῳ

|reward, |serve ἐν τῷ |arrange ἔσονται. ἦν δέ |wages

τις καὶ |passenger; |ούληται ἔπεσθαι |sell τι βουλόμενος, |merchant

τῶν μὲν προειρημένων ἡμερῶν τὰ |fit, suitable ἔχειν ἦν τι

|sell |be captured , πάντων στερήσεται· |when, δ' αὖται |after

|pass, escape αἱ ἡμέραι, πωλήσει ὅπως ἂν βούληται. ὅστις

δ' ἂν τῶν |passenger; πλείστην |assembly |furnish φαίνεται, |merchant

οὗτος καὶ παρὰ τῶν συμμάχων καὶ παρ' ἐμοῦ |gift καὶ

|honor, τεύξεται. εἰ δέ τις |possession, |...-σδεῖσθαι |consider customary; |value money, busi- |believe

εἰς ἐμπολήν, γνωστήρας ἐμοὶ |bring to a place :αἰ

the old javelin men march with axes for felling timber, the bowmen with mattocks, and the slingers with shovels. They will advance by squads in front of the waggons so that if there is any road-making to be done you may set to work at once, and in case of need I may know where to get the men I want. I mean also to take a corps of smiths, carpenters, and cobblers, men of military age, provided with the proper tools, to supply any possible need. These men will not be in the fighting-line, but they will have a place assigned to them where they can be hired by any one who likes. If any huckster wishes to follow the army with his wares, he may do so, but if caught selling anything during the fifteen days for which provisions have been ordered, he will be deprived of all his goods: after the fifteen days are done he may sell what he likes. Any merchant who offers us a well-stocked market will receive recompense and honour from the allies and myself. And if any one needs an advance of money for trading, he must send me guarantors who will undertake that he will march with the army, and then he can

vocabulary

ἐγγυητής -οῦ (m, 1) guarantor
ἐγγύς near
ἐνδέω tie to, entangle; lack
ἐνοράω look at, notice something in
ἐπιλανθάνω mp: forget ~Lethe
εὐτρεπίζω to ready
ἡγεμών -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide, chief ~hegemony
θύω (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω
καταμανθάνω examine, observe
καταμένω stay; not change
μετέρχομαι seek, visit
ὀρμέω be anchored
ὀρμή pressure, assault, order

~hormone

προαγορεύω declare, predict, order
προερέω say beforehand
προλέγω prophecy, proclaim; preselect
 ~legion
σημαίνω give orders to; show; mark
 ~semaphore
στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy
στρατιά army ~strategy
συμβάλλω pit against; compare; mp: meet, fall in with ~ballistic
συσκευάζω pack up
τάξις -εως (f) arrangement, military unit

ἐγγυητὰς ἧ μὴν πορεύσεσθαι σὺν τῇ στρατιᾷ, λαμβανέτω
ὦν ἡμεῖς ἔχομεν. ἐγὼ μὲν δὴ ταῦτα προαγορεύω· εἰ δέ
τίς τι καὶ ἄλλο δέον ἐνορᾷ, πρὸς ἐμὲ σημαίνεται. καὶ
ὕμεῖς μὲν ἀπιόντες συσκευάζεσθε, ἐγὼ δὲ θύσομαι ἐπὶ
τῇ ὀρμῇ· ὅταν δὲ τὰ τῶν θεῶν καλῶς ἔχῃ, σηματοῦμεν.
παρεῖναι δὲ χρή ἅπαντας τὰ προειρημένα ἔχοντας εἰς τὴν
τεταγμένην χώραν πρὸς τοὺς ἡγεμόνας αὐτῶν. ὕμεῖς δὲ οἱ
ἡγεμόνες τὴν ἑαυτοῦ ἕκαστος τάξιν εὐτρεπισάμενος πρὸς
ἐμὲ πάντες συμβάλλετε, ἵνα τὰς ἑαυτῶν ἕκαστοι χώρας
καταμάθῃτε.

6.3

Ἀκούσαντες δὲ ταῦτα οἱ μὲν συνεσκευάζοντο, ὁ δὲ
Κῦρος ἐθύετο. ἐπεὶ δὲ καλὰ τὰ ἱερὰ ἦν, ὥρματο
σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι· καὶ τῇ μὲν πρώτῃ ἡμέρᾳ
ἐξεστρατοπεδεύσατο ὡς δυνατὸν ἐγγύτατα, ὅπως εἴ τίς
τι ἐπιλεησμένος εἴη, μετέλθοι, καὶ εἴ τίς τι ἐνδεόμενος
γνοίῃ, τοῦτο ἐπιπαρασκευάσαιτο. Κναξάρης μὲν οὖν τῶν
Μήδων ἔχων τὸ τρίτον μέρος κατέμενε, ὡς μηδὲ

|guarantor ἡ μὴν πορεύεσθαι σὺν τῇ |army , λαμβανέτω
 ὦν ἡμεῖς ἔχομεν. ἐγὼ μὲν δὲ ταῦτα |declare, pre- εἰ δέ
 |dict, order
 τίς τι καὶ ἄλλο δέον |look at, notice some- |give orders to; καὶ
 |thing in |show; mark
 ὑμεῖς μὲν |be absent, |pack up , ἐγὼ δὲ |rush; sacrifice`
 |go away,
 τῇ ὁρμῇ· |return |whenever ἂ τῶν θεῶν καλῶς ἔχη, |give orders to;
 |show; mark
 παρῆναι δὲ |must, "...:αντας τὰ προειρημένα ἔχοντας εἰς τὴν
 |should
 |arrange χώραν πρὸς τοὺς |leader αὐτῶν. ὑμεῖς δὲ οἱ
 |leader τὴν ἑαυτοῦ ἕκαστος τάξιν |to ready πρὸς
 ἐμὲ πάντες |pit against; compare;`s ἑαυτῶν ἕκαστοι χώρας
 |mp: meet, fall in with
 |examine,
 |observe

6.3

Ἀκούσαντες δὲ ταῦτα οἱ μὲν |pack up , ὁ δὲ
 Κῦρος |rush; sacrifice`..εἰ δὲ καλὰ τὰ ἱερὰ ἦν, |spur, rush at
 σὺν τῷ |army καὶ τῇ μὲν πρώτῃ ἡμέρᾳ
 ἐξεστρατοπεδεύσατο ὥς |powerful, |near , ὅπως εἴ τίς
 |possible
 τι |mp: forget εἴη, |seek, visit , καὶ εἴ τίς τι |tie to
 γνοίῃ, τοῦτο ἐπιπαρασκευάσαιτο. Κναξάρης μὲν οὖν τῶν
 Μήδων ἔχων τὸ |third μέρος |stay; not change |and not; not even

draw on our funds. These are the general orders: and I will ask any of you who think that anything has been omitted to point it out to me. You will now go back to your quarters and make your preparations, and while you do so I will offer sacrifice for our journey and when the signs are favourable we will give the signal. At that you must present yourselves, with everything I have ordered, at the appointed place, under your own officers. And you, gentlemen," said he, turning to the officers, "when your divisions are all in line, you will come to me in a body to receive your final orders."

6.3

With these instructions the army went to make their preparations while Cyrus offered sacrifice.

As soon as the victims were favourable, he set out with his force.

On the first day they encamped as near by as possible, so that anything left behind could easily be fetched and any omission readily supplied. Cyaxares stayed in Media with a third of the Median troops

*vocabulary***ἄθροός** grouped**ἄμαξα** wagon**ἀναβιβάζω** make to mount, promote**ἀναγκαῖος** coerced, coercing, slavery**ἀποκωλύω** hinder from/from using**ἐμποδίζω** fetter, hinder**ἐνθεν** thence, whence**ἐντίθημι** load; mp: take to heart

~thesis

ἐπιμελέομαι take care of, oversee**ἐπιτάσσω** enjoin; place near**ἐρῆμος** empty**εὐσκοπος** hawkeyed, accurate

~telescope

ἐφάπω drive, meet, follow ~sequel**κωλύω** (ὄ) hinder, prevent**οἴκοι** at home ~economics**ὀπισθεν** behind, hereafter**ὅπου** where**ὄρμαθός** series of things**πεδινός** flat**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)**προστίθημι** add; impose; (mp) agree;

side with ~thesis

σημεῖον sign**σκευοφόρος** pack animal, porter**σκοπός** (f) lookout, overseer, spy,

target ~telescope

στενός narrow**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,

mercenary ~strategy

ταξίαρχος military rank**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military

unit

ὑπολείπω leave as a leftover; leave a

person behind ~eclipse

φάλαγξ -γος (f) rank of battle

~phalanx

τὰ οἴκοι ἔρημα εἶη. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἐπορεύετο ὡς ἐδύνατο
τάχιστα, τοὺς ἵππείας μὲν πρώτους ἔχων, καὶ πρὸ
τούτων διερευνητὰς καὶ σκοποὺς αἰεὶ ἀναβιβάζων ἐπὶ
τὰ πρόσθεν εὐσκοπώτατα· μετὰ δὲ τούτους ἦγε τὰ
σκευοφόρα, ὅπου μὲν πεδινὸν εἶη, πολλοὺς ὀρμαθοὺς
ποιούμενος τῶν ἀμαξῶν καὶ τῶν σκευοφόρων· ὅπισθεν δὲ
ἢ φάλαγξ ἐφεπομένη, εἴ τι τῶν σκευοφόρων ὑπολείποιτο,
οἱ προστυγχάνοντες τῶν ἀρχόντων ἐπεμέλοντο ὡς μὴ
κωλύοντο πορεύεσθαι. ὅπου δὲ στενωτέρα εἶη ἢ
ὁδός, διὰ μέσου ποιούμενοι τὰ σκευοφόρα ἔνθεν καὶ
ἐνθεν ἐπορεύοντο οἱ ὄπλοφόροι· καὶ εἴ τι ἐμποδίζοι, οἱ
κατὰ ταῦτα γιγνόμενοι τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἐπεμέλοντο.
ἐπορεύοντο δὲ ὡς τὰ πολλὰ αἱ τάξεις παρ' ἑαυταῖς ἔχουσαι
τὰ σκευοφόρα· ἐπετέτακτο γὰρ πᾶσι τοῖς σκευοφόροις
κατὰ τὴν ἑαυτῶν ἐκάστους τάξιν ἰέναι, εἰ μὴ τι ἀναγκαῖον
ἀποκωλύοι. καὶ σημεῖον δὲ ἔχων ὁ τοῦ ταξιάρχου
σκευοφόρος ἠγείτο γνωστὸν τοῖς τῆς ἑαυτοῦ τάξεως·
ὥστε ἀθρόοι ἐπορεύοντο, ἐπεμελοῦντό

τὰ |at home, ἡμα εἷη. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἐπορεύετο ὥς ἐδύνατο
 τάχιστα, τοὺς ἰππέας μὲν πρώτους ἔχων, καὶ πρὸ
 τούτων διερευνητὰς καὶ |lookout αἰεὶ |make to mount, πὶ
 |promote
 τὰ πρόσθεν |hawkeyed, μετὰ δὲ τούτους ἦγε τὰ
 |accurate
 |pack animal, |where μὲν |flat εἷη, πολλοὺς |series of things
 |porter
 ποιούμενος τῶν |wagon καὶ τῶν |pack animal, |behind, δὲ
 |porter |hereafter
 ἢ |rank of |drive, meet, follow. τῶν |pack animal, |leave (food, person)
 |battle |porter
 οἱ προστυγχάνοντες τῶν ἀρχόντων |take care of, ὥς μὴ
 |oversee
 |hinder, πορεύεσθαι. |where δὲ |narrow εἷη ἢ
 |prevent
 ὁδός, διὰ μέσου ποιούμενοι τὰ |pack animal, |porter καὶ
 ἔνθεν ἐπορεύοντο οἱ ὅπλοφόροι· καὶ εἴ τι |fetter, , οἱ
 |hinder
 κατὰ ταῦτα γιγνόμενοι τῶν στρατιωτῶν |take care of,
 |oversee
 ἐπορεύοντο δὲ ὥς τὰ πολλὰ αἱ τάξεις παρ' ἑαυταῖς ἔχουσαι
 τὰ |pack animal, |enjoin; place γὰρ πᾶσι τοῖς |pack animal, |porter
 |porter |near
 κατὰ τὴν ἑαυτῶν ἐκάστους τάξιν ἵεναι, εἰ μὴ τι ἀναγκαῖον
 |hinder from/from αἰ σημείον δὲ ἔχων ὁ τοῦ |military rank
 |using
 |pack animal, |porter. ὁ γνωστὸν τοῖς τῆς ἑαυτοῦ τάξεως·
 ὥστε |grouped ἐπορεύοντο, |take care of,
 |oversee

in order not to leave their own country undefended. Cyrus himself pushed forward with all possible speed, keeping his cavalry in the van and constantly sending explorers and scouts ahead to some look-out. Behind the cavalry came the baggage, and on the plains he had long strings of waggons and beasts of burden, and the main army behind them, so that if any of the baggage-train fell back, the officers who caught them up would see that they did not lose their places in the march. But where the road was narrower the fighting-men marched on either side with the baggage in the middle, and in case of any block it was the business of the soldiers on the spot to attend to the matter. As a rule, the different regiments would be marching alongside their own baggage, orders having been given that all members of the train should advance by regiments unless absolutely prevented. To help matters the brigadier's own body-servant led the way with an ensign known to his men, so that each regiment marched together,

*vocabulary***ἀγγέλλω** carry a message, announce

~angel

ἀφοράω look away, at ~panorama**ἐξαγγέλλω** bring news out ~angel**ἰσχυρός** (ῥ) strong, forceful, violent**καινός** new, fresh, strange**καπνός** smoke**καταμανθάνω** examine, observe**καταχωρίζω** emplace; record**κονιορτός** cloud of dust**μετεωρίζω** raise; give hope**νέμω** to allot, to pasture ~nemesis**ξύλον** piece of wood ~xylophone**πλησίος** near, neighboring**πρόειμι** to have been before, earlier

~ion

πρόσθεν before (time, space)**προστίθημι** add; impose; (mp) agree;

side with ~thesis

πρόσω forward, in the future; far**σάος** safe, alive**σαφής** clear, understandable**σκοπός** (f) lookout, overseer, spy, target ~telescope**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier, mercenary ~strategy**συλλαμβάνω** seize, capture; understand ~epilepsy**σχεδόν** near, approximately at ~ischemia**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military unit**τήχω** melt**ὑποζύγιον** beast of burden ~zygote**ὑπολείπω** leave as a leftover; leave a person behind ~eclipse**χίλος** (ι) fodder

τε ἰσχυρῶς ἕκαστος τῶν ἑαυτοῦ ὥς μὴ ὑπολείποντο.
καὶ οὕτω ποιούντων οὔτε ζητεῖν ἔδει ἀλλήλους ἅμα τε
παρόντα ἅπαντα καὶ σαώτερα ἦν καὶ θάττον τὰ δέοντα
εἶχον οἱ στρατιῶται.

Ὡς δ' οἱ προϊόντες σκοποὶ ἔδοξαν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ὁρᾶν
ἀνθρώπους λαμβάνοντας καὶ χιλὸν καὶ ξύλα, καὶ ὑποζύγια
δὲ ἐώρων ἕτερα τοιαῦτα ἄγοντα, τὰ δὲ καὶ νεμόμενα,
καὶ τὰ πρόσω αὐ ἀφορῶντες ἐδόκουν καταμανθάνειν
μετεωριζόμενον ἢ καπνὸν ἢ κονιορτόν, ἐκ τούτων πάντων
σχεδὸν ἐγίνωσκον ὅτι εἴη που πλησίον τὸ στράτευμα
τῶν πολεμίων. εὐθύς οὖν πέμπει τινὰ ὁ σκόπαρχος
ἀγγελοῦντα ταῦτα τῷ Κύρῳ. ὁ δὲ ἀκούσας ταῦτα ἐκείνους
μὲν ἐκέλευσε μένοντας ἐπὶ ταύταις ταῖς σκοπαῖς ὅτι ἂν αἰὲ
καινὸν ὁρῶσιν ἐξαγγέλλειν· τάξιν δ' ἔπεμψεν ἱππέων εἰς
τὸ πρόσθεν καὶ ἐκέλευσε πειραθῆναι συλλαβεῖν τινὰς τῶν
ἀνὰ τὸ πεδίον ἀνθρώπων, ὅπως σαφέστερον μάθοιεν τὸ
ὄν. οἱ μὲν δὴ ταχθέντες τοῦτο ἔπραττον. αὐτὸς δὲ τὸ ἄλλο
στράτευμα αὐτοῦ κατεχώριζεν, ὅπως παρασκευάσαιτο

τε |strong, force- ιστος τῶν ἑαυτοῦ ὥς μὴ |leave (food, person)
|ful, violent

καὶ οὕτω ποιούντων οὔτε |seek ἔδει ἀλλήλους ἅμα τε

παρόντα ἅπαντα καὶ |safe ἦν καὶ θάπτον τὰ δέοντα

εἶχον οἱ |soldier,
|mercenary

Ὡς δ' οἱ |to have been|lookout ἔδοξαν ἐν τῷ |plain, sea, ἡ
|before, ear-

ἀνθρώπους λαμβάνοντας καὶ |fodder καὶ |piece, ὄν|beast of burden
|wood

δὲ ἐώρων ἕτερα τοιαῦτα ἄγοντα, τὰ δὲ καὶ |distribute ,

καὶ τὰ |forward, in the|look away, at ἐδόκουν |examine, observe
|future; far

μετεωρίζομενον ἢ |smoke ἢ |cloud of dust ὅτι τούτων πάντων

|about ἐγίγνωσκον ὅτι εἴη που |near τὸ |army

τῶν πολεμίων. εὐθὺς οὖν πέμπει τινὰ ὁ σκόπαρχος

|carry a message, ἵστα τῷ Κύρῳ. ὁ δὲ ἀκούσας ταῦτα ἐκείνους
|announce

μὲν ἐκέλευσε μένοντας ἐπὶ ταύταις ταῖς σκοπαῖς ὅτι ἂν αἰὲ

|new, fresh, strange|bring news out ἄξιον δ' ἔπεμψεν |rider εἰς

τὸ πρόσθεν καὶ ἐκέλευσε πειραθῆναι |seize, capture; ἵστας τῶν
|understand

ἀνὰ τὸ |plain, sea ἡρώπων, ὅπως |clear, under- μάθοιεν τὸ
|standable

ὄν. οἱ μὲν δὲ ταχθέντες τοῦτο ἔπραττον. αὐτὸς δὲ τὸ ἄλλο

|army αὐτοῦ |emplace; , ὅπως |prepare, render
|record

the men doing their best to keep up with their comrades. Thus there was no need to search for each other, everything was to hand, there was greater security, and the soldiers could get what they wanted more quickly.

After some days the scouts ahead thought they could see people in the plain collecting fodder and timber, and then they made out beasts of burden, some grazing and others already laden, and as they scanned the distance they felt sure they could distinguish something that was either smoke rising or clouds of dust; and from all this they concluded that the enemy's army was not far off. Whereupon their commander despatched a messenger with the news to Cyrus, who sent back word that the scouts should stay where they were, on their look-out, and tell him if they saw anything more, while he ordered a squadron of cavalry to ride forward, and intercept, if they could, some of the men on the plain and so discover the actual state of affairs. While the detachment carried out this order Cyrus halted the rest of his army to make such dispositions as

*vocabulary***ἀνερωτάω** question**ἀνιάω** (ι) vex**ἀριστάω** eat lunch ~aristocrat**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot**ἀρμάμαξα** Persian carriage**ἄρnuμαι** get, win**ἐγγύς** near**ἐνθένδε** hence**ἐπέρομαι** ask as well; ask then**ἔρομαι** ask a question, ask about, go searching through**ἡγεμών** -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide, chief ~hegemony**κατατρέχω** overrun; trash talk**μηχανή** machine; mechanism, way**ναί** yea**ξύλον** piece of wood ~xylophone**ὁμός** same ~homoerotic**ὁμοῦ** together**ὁμόω** unite ~homoerotic**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon, recommend, encourage**παρασάγγης** -ου (m, 1) Persian unit, ca. 5 km**παρεγγυάω** entrust; pass an order**παρέρχομαι** pass, escape**πέζα** end of a chariot pole**πόσος** how many, much, far?**προέρχομαι** proceed, come out**προνοέω** foresee, think of ~paranoia**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near; add ~ion**προσίημι** be allowed near**προφυλακή** picket**σκευοφόρος** pack animal, porter**σπάνιος** rare, scanty**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**στρατός** common people/soldiers ~strategy**στρατόω** be on a campaign ~strategy**συγκαλέω** call together ~gallo**συλλαμβάνω** seize, capture; understand ~epilepsy**συνάδω** sing together, agree**συναείδω** sing together, agree**σύνειμι** be with; have sex ~ion**συνίζω** collapse, sink**σύνοιδα** know about someone; think proper**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military unit**χίλος** (ι) fodder

ὅσα ᾔετο χρῆναι πρὶν πάνυ ὁμοῦ εἶναι. καὶ πρῶτον μὲν ἀριστῶν παρηγγύησεν, ἔπειτα δὲ μένοντας ἐν ταῖς τάξεσι τὸ παραγγελλόμενον προνοεῖν· ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡρίστησαν, συνεκάλεσε καὶ ἱππέων καὶ πεζῶν καὶ ἄρμάτων ἡγεμόνας, καὶ τῶν μηχανῶν δὲ καὶ τῶν σκευοφόρων τοὺς ἄρχοντας καὶ τῶν ἄρμαμαξῶν· καὶ οὗτοι μὲν συνῆσαν. οἱ δὲ καταδραμόντες εἰς τὸ πεδῖον συλλαβόντες ἀνθρώπους ἤγαγον· οἱ δὲ ληφθέντες ἀνερωτῶμενοι ὑπὸ τοῦ Κύρου ἔλεγον ὅτι ἀπὸ τοῦ στρατοπέδου εἶεν, προεληλυθότες ἐπὶ χιλόν, οἱ δ' ἐπὶ ξύλα, παρελθόντες τὰς προφυλακάς· διὰ γὰρ τὸ πλῆθος τοῦ στρατοῦ σπάνια πάντ' εἶναι. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος ταῦτα ἀκούσας, Πόσον δέ, ἔφη, ἄπεστιν ἐνθένδε τὸ στράτευμα; οἱ δ' ἔλεγον· Ὡς δύο παρασάγγας. ἐπὶ τούτοις ἤρετο ὁ Κῦρος· Ἡμῶν δ', ἔφη, λόγος τις ἦν παρ' αὐτοῖς; Ναὶ μὰ Δί, ἔφασαν, καὶ πολὺς γε ὥς ἐγγὺς ἤδη εἶτε προσιόντες. Τί οὖν; ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ἥ καὶ ἔχαιρον ἀκούοντες ἰόντας; τοῦτο δὲ ἐπήρετο τῶν παρόντων ἕνεκα. Οὐ μὰ Δί, εἶπον ἐκεῖνοι, οὐ μὲν δὴ ἔχαιρον, ἀλλὰ καὶ μάλα ἡνιῶντο.

ὅσα ὤετο χρήναι πρὶν πάνν ὁμοῦ εἶναι. καὶ πρῶτον
 μὲν |eat lunch |entrust; pass an, |ἐπειτα δὲ μένοντας ἐν ταῖς
 |order
 τάξεσι τὸ |transmit; order, sum-|foresee, |ἐπεὶ δὲ |eat lunch ,
 |mon, recommend, en-|think of
 |call together |courage καὶ ὑππέων καὶ πεζῶν καὶ |chariot |leader ,
 καὶ τῶν |machine; mecha- ἰ τῶν |pack animal, porter ἄρχοντας
 |nism, way
 καὶ τῶν |Persian καὶ οὗτοι μὲν συνῆσαν. οἱ δὲ
 |carriage
 |overrun; trash talk εἰς τὸ |plain, sea|seize, capture; ἀνθρώπους
 |understand
 ἡγαγον· οἱ δὲ ληφθέντες |question ὑπὸ τοῦ Κύρου
 ἔλεγον ὅτι ἀπὸ τοῦ στρατοπέδου εἶεν, |proceed, come out ἢ πὶ
 |fodder, οἱ δ' ἐπὶ |piece , |pass, escape τὰς |picket διὰ
 |of
 γὰρ τὸ πλῆθος τοῦ στρατοῦ |rare, πάντ' εἶναι. καὶ ὁ
 |scanty
 Κῦρος ταῦτα ἀκούσας, |how many, ὥς, |be absent, hence
 |far? |go away,
 τὸ |army , οἱ δ' ἔλεγον· Ὡς δύο |ca. 5 km |return ἐπὶ
 τούτοις ἤρετο ὁ Κῦρος· Ἡμῶν δ', ἔφη, λόγος τις ἦν παρ'
 αὐτοῖς; |yea μὰ Δί', ἔφασαν, καὶ πολὺς γε ὥς |near ἤδη εἶτε
 προσιόντες. Τί οὖν; ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ἡ καὶ ἔχαιρον ἀκούοντες
 ἰόντας; τοῦτο δὲ |ask as well; ὦν παρόντων ἔνεκα. Οὐ μὰ Δί',
 |ask then
 εἶπον ἐκεῖνοι, οὐ μὲν δὴ ἔχαιρον, ἀλλὰ καὶ μάλα |vex .

he thought necessary before coming to close quarters. His first order was for the troops to take their breakfast: after breakfast they were to fall in and wait for the word of command. When breakfast was over he sent for all the officers from the cavalry, the infantry, and the chariot brigade, and for the commanders of the battering engines and the baggage train, and they came to him. Meanwhile the troop of horse had dashed into the plain, cut off some of the men, and now brought them in captive. The prisoners, on being questioned by Cyrus, said they belonged to the camp and had gone out to forage or cut wood and so had passed beyond their own pickets, for, owing to the size of their army, everything was scarce.

"How far is your army from here?" asked Cyrus. "About seven miles," said they. "Was there any talk about us down there?" said he. "We should think there was," they answered; "it was all over the camp that you were coming." "Ah," said Cyrus, "I suppose they were glad to hear we were coming so soon?" (putting this question for his officers to hear the answer). "That they were not," said the prisoners, "they were anything but glad; they were miserable." "And what

*vocabulary***ἄδηλος** invisible, unknown**αἰχμάλωτος** captive ~acute**ἀπάγω** lead away, back ~demagogue**δεκάς** -δος (f, 3) decade, group of ten
~decimal**εἰκάζω** liken; conjecture**ἐκτάσσω** muster**Ἕλλην** Greek**προελαύνω** ride on**προφαίνω** show; pass: appear

~photon

στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**συχνός** long; many; extensive**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military
unit**φυγάς** -δος (m, 3) exile, refugee

~fugitive

φυγή flight, means of escape ~fugitive**χθές** yesterday

Νῦν δ', ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, τί ποιοῦσιν; Ἐκτάττονται, ἔφασαν· καὶ ἐχθρὸς δὲ καὶ τρίτην ἡμέραν τὸ αὐτὸ τοῦτο ἔπραττον. Ὁ δὲ τάττων, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, τίς ἐστίν; οἱ δὲ ἔφασαν· Αὐτός τε Κροῖσος καὶ σὺν αὐτῷ Ἕλληνας ἀνὴρ, καὶ ἄλλος δέ τις Μῆδος· οὗτος μέντοι ἐλέγετο φευγὰς εἶναι παρ' ὑμῶν. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπεν· Ἄλλ', ὦ Ζεῦ μέγιστε, λαβεῖν μοι γένοιτο αὐτὸν ὡς ἐγὼ βούλομαι.

Ἐκ τούτου τοὺς μὲν αἰχμαλώτους ἀπάγειν ἐκέλευσεν, εἰς δὲ τοὺς παρόντας ὡς λέξων τι ἀνήγετο. ἐν τούτῳ δὲ παρὴν ἄλλος αὖ παρὰ τοῦ σκοπάρχου, λέγων ὅτι ἱππέων τάξις μεγάλη ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ προφαίνετο· καὶ ἡμεῖς μὲν, ἔφη, εἰκάζομεν ἐλαύνειν αὐτοὺς βουλομένους ἰδεῖν τόδε τὸ στράτευμα. καὶ γὰρ πρὸ τῆς τάξεως ταύτης ἄλλοι ὡς τριάκοντα ἱππεῖς συχνὸν προελαύνουσι, καὶ μέντοι, ἔφη, κατ' αὐτοὺς ἡμᾶς, ἴσως βουλόμενοι λαβεῖν, ἣν δύνωνται, τὴν σκοπὴν· ἡμεῖς δ' ἐσμὲν μία δεκάς οἱ ἐπὶ ταύτης τῆς σκοπῆς. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος ἐκέλευσε τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν αἰεὶ ὄντων ἱππέων ἐλάσαντας ὑπὸ τὴν σκοπὴν ἀδήλους τοῖς

Νῦν δ', ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, τί ποιοῦσιν; |muster , ἔφασαν·
 καὶ |yesterday καὶ |third ἡμέραν τὸ αὐτὸ τοῦτο ἔπραττον.
 Ὁ δὲ |arrange , ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, τίς ἐστιν; οἱ δὲ ἔφασαν· Αὐτός
 τε Κροΐσος καὶ σὺν αὐτῷ Ἕλληνας ἀνὴρ, καὶ ἄλλος δέ τις
 Μῆδος· οὗτος |however ᾠέγετο φυγὰς εἶναι παρ' ὑμῶν. καὶ
 ὁ Κῦρος εἶπεν· Ἄλλ', ὦ Ζεῦ μέγιστε, λαβεῖν μοι γένοιτο
 αὐτὸν ὡς ἐγὼ βούλομαι.

Ἐκ τούτου τοὺς μὲν |captive |lead away, back...σεν, εἰς
 δὲ τοὺς παρόντας ὡς λέξων τι |lead up; ἔν τούτῳ δὲ
 (mp) set sail
 παρῇν ἄλλος αὖ παρὰ τοῦ σκοπάρχου, λέγων ὅτι |rider
 τάξις μεγάλη ἐν τῷ |plain, |show; pass: appear... ἡμεῖς μὲν,
 sea
 ἔφη, |liken; |drive αὐτοὺς βουλομένους ἰδεῖν τόδε τὸ
 |conjecture
 |army . καὶ γὰρ |before, |τάξεως ταύτης ἄλλοι ὡς
 |forward
 |thirty |rider |long; |ride on , καὶ |however ἔφη,
 |many;
 κατ' αὐτοὺς ἡμᾶς, |extensive |equal βουλόμενοι λαβεῖν, ἣν δύνωνται,
 τὴν σκοπὴν· ἡμεῖς δ' ἐσμὲν μία |decade ρί ἐπὶ ταύτης τῆς
 σκοπῆς. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος ἐκέλευσε τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν αἰὲ ὄντων
 |rider |drive ὑπὸ τὴν σκοπὴν |invisible, τοῖς
 |unknown

are they doing now?" asked Cyrus. "Forming their line of battle," answered they; "yesterday and the day before they did the same."

"And their commander?" said Cyrus, "who is he?" "Croesus himself," said they, "and with him a Greek, and also another man, a Mede, who is said to be a deserter from you."

"Ah," cried Cyrus, "is that so? Most mighty Zeus, may I deal with him as I wish!"

Then he had the prisoners led away and turned to speak to his officers, but at this moment another scout appeared, saying that a large force of cavalry was in the plain. "We think," he added, "that they are trying to get a sight of our army. For about thirty of them are riding ahead at a good round pace and they seem to be coming straight for our little company, perhaps to capture our look-out if they can, for there are only ten of us there."

At that Cyrus sent off a detachment from his own bodyguard, bidding them gallop up to the place, unseen by

vocabulary

ἀναπηδάω leap up, start up
ἀνατείνω lift, reach out, threaten
ἀπαντάω encounter, come upon
ἀφανής unseen, occult, obscure
δεκάς -δος (f, 3) decade, group of ten
 ~decimal
δεξιόομαι salute, greet
διαμένω continue, persevere
ἔδρα (ᾱ) seat, seated group
 ~polyhedron
ἕζομαι act: set, seat; pass: sit down, sit
 up ~sit
εἰκός likely
ἐκπλήσσω panic, be knocked out
 ~plectrum
ἐντός within
ἐξανίστημι raise, bring/send out
ἐπιμελέομαι take care of, oversee
ἠώς ἡῶθι (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene
θεράπων -οντος (m, 3) helper,

henchman, servant ~therapy
κατάσκοπος spy, inspector
λυπέω (ῥ) annoy, distress
μηδαμῇ nowhere
ὀπλίζω prepare, arm ~hoplite
πάλαι long ago ~paleo
πάλη wrestling ~Pallas
πάλλω shake, brandish ~Pallas
προσελαύνω go to, approach ~elastic
σκοπᾶω watch, observe
σκοπέω behold, consider
σκοπός (f) lookout, overseer, spy,
 target ~telescope
τάξις -εως (f) arrangement, military
 unit
ὕπαντάω meet
ὕπηρέτης -ου (m, 1) servant, officer
φίλιος friendly
φύλαξ -χος (m) guard; sentry
 ~phylactery

πολεμίοις ἀτρεμίαν ἔχουν. Ὅταν δ', ἔφη, ἡ δεκάς ἡ ἡμετέρα λείπη τὴν σκοπὴν, ἐξαναστάντες ἐπίθεσθε τοῖς ἀναβαίνουσιν ἐπὶ τὴν σκοπὴν. ὥς δὲ ὑμᾶς μὴ λυπῶσιν οἱ ἀπὸ τῆς μεγάλης τάξεως, ἀντέξελθε σύ, ἔφη, ὦ Ὑστάσπα, τὴν χιλιοστὺν τῶν ἱππέων λαβὼν καὶ ἐπιφάνηθι ἐναντίος τῇ τῶν πολεμίων τάξει. διώξης δὲ μηδαμῇ εἰς ἀφανές, ἀλλ' ὅπως αἱ σκοπαί σοι διαμένωσιν ἐπιμεληθεὶς πάριθι. ἂν δ' ἄρα ἀνατείναντές τινες τὰς δεξιὰς προσελαύνωσιν ὑμῖν, δέχεσθε φιλίως τοὺς ἄνδρας.

Ὁ Μὲν δὴ Ὑστάσπας ἀπιὼν ὠπλίζετο· οἱ δ' ὑπηρέται ἤλαυνον εὐθὺς ὥς ἐκέλευσεν. ἀπαντᾷ δ' αὐτοῖς καὶ δὴ ἐντὸς τῶν σκοπῶν σὺν τοῖς θεράπουσιν ὁ πεμφθεὶς πάλαι κατάσκοπος, ὁ φύλαξ τῆς Σουσίδος γυναικός. ὁ μὲν οὖν Κῦρος ὥς ἤκουσεν, ἀναπηδήσας ἐκ τῆς ἑδρας ὑπήντα τε αὐτῷ καὶ ἐδεξιούτο· οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι, ὥσπερ εἰκὸς μηδὲν εἰδότας, ἐκπεπληγμένοι ἦσαν τῷ πράγματι, ἕως Κῦρος εἶπεν· Ἄνδρες φίλοι, ἥκει ἡμῖν ἀνὴρ ἄριστος. νῦν γὰρ ἤδη πάντας ἀνθρώπους δεῖ εἰδέναι τὰ τούτου

πολεμίοις ἀτρεμίαν ἔχειν. Ὅταν δ', ἔφη, ἡ |decade ἡ
 |our, my λείπη τὴν σκοπὴν, |raise, bring/send ἐπίθεσθε τοῖς
 |out
 |go up, embark ἐπὶ τὴν σκοπὴν. ὥς δὲ ὑμᾶς μὴ |annoy, οἱ
 |distress
 ἀπὸ τῆς μεγάλης τάξεως, ἀντέξελθε σύ, ἔφη, ὦ Ὑστάσπα,
 τὴν χιλιοστὴν τῶν |rider λαβὼν καὶ ἐπιφάνηθι |opposite
 τῇ τῶν πολεμίων τάξει. |chase δὲ |nowhere εἰς |unseen, , oc-
 |cult, obscure
 ἀλλ' ὅπως αἱ σκοπαί σοι |continue, |take care of, πάρηθι.
 |persevere |oversee
 ἂν δ' ἄρα |lift, reach out, τινες τὰς |right- |go to, approach
 |threaten |hand
 ὑμῖν, δέχεσθε |friendly τοὺς ἄνδρας.

Ὁ Μὲν δὲ Ὑστάσπας |be |prepare, arm -ί δ' |servant,
 |absent, |officer
 ἤλαυνον εὐθὺς ὡς ἐκέλευσεν. |go away, |encounter, come upon καὶ δὲ
 |return
 |within τῶν σκοπῶν σὺν τοῖς |companion ὁ πεμφθεὶς πάλαι
 |spy, inspector , ὁ |guard; τῆς Σουσίδος γυναικός. ὁ μὲν οὖν
 |sentry
 Κῦρος ὡς ἤκουσεν, |leap up, start up τῆς |seat |meet
 τε αὐτῷ καὶ |salute, οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι, ὥσπερ |likely μηδὲν
 |greet
 εἰδότας, |panic, be knocked ἦσαν τῷ πράγματι, ἕως Κῦρος
 |out
 εἶπεν· Ἄνδρες φίλοι, ἥκει ἡμῖν ἀνὴρ ἄριστος. νῦν γὰρ ἡδὲ
 πάντας ἀνθρώπους δεῖ εἰδέναι τὰ τούτου

the enemy, and stay there motionless. "Wait," he said, "until our own ten must leave the spot and then dash out on the thirty as they come up the hill. And to prevent any injury from the larger body, do you, Hystaspas," said he, turning to the latter, "ride out with a thousand horse, and let them see you suddenly, face to face. But remember not to pursue them out of sight, come back as soon as you have secured our post. And if any of your opponents ride up with their right hands raised, welcome them as friends."

Accordingly Hystaspas went off and got under arms, while the bodyguard galloped to the spot. But before they reached the scouts, some one met them with his squires, the man who had been sent out as a spy, the guardian of the lady from Susa, Araspas himself. When the news reached Cyrus, he sprang up from his seat, went to meet him himself, and clasped his hand, but the others, who of course knew nothing, were utterly dumbfounded, until Cyrus said:

"Gentlemen, the best of our friends has come back to us. It is high time that all men should know what he has done.

vocabulary

αἰσχρός shameful
αἵτιος blameworthy; the cause
 ~etiology
ἄλις in plenty; enough ~helix
ἀσπάζομαι greet, salute
ἀσφαλής safe, easy, steady, careful
βαρύνω (ὑ) oppress ~baritone
δεξιόομαι salute, greet
διανοέω have in mind
διηγέομαι detail, describe
ἐλασσώω diminish, degrade
ἐλαττώω diminish, degrade
ἐλαχός small; comp.: less ~light
ἐξαγγέλλω bring news out ~angel
ἡσάομαι (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (active) defeat

ἰσχυρός (ὑ) strong, forceful, violent
κινδυνεύω encounter danger; (+inf)
 there is a danger that
κρείσσω more powerful; better
μείων less, smaller
ναί yea
οἶχομαι come, go, leave, be gone
ὀπόσος as many as, how many, how great
σαφής clear, understandable
στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy
τάξις -εως (f) arrangement, military unit
τιμάω (ι) honor, exalt
τοίνυν well, then
ὑπέχω promise; hold out one's hand; submit to

ἔργα. οὗτος οὔτε αἰσχροῦ ἡττηθεὶς οὐδενὸς ὥχετο οὔτ'
 ἐμὲ φοβηθεὶς, ἀλλ' ὑπ' ἐμοῦ πεμφθεὶς ὅπως ἡμῖν μαθὼν
 τὰ τῶν πολεμίων σαφῶς τὰ ὄντα ἐξαγγείλειεν. ἃ μὲν
 οὖν ἐγὼ σοι ὑπεσχόμην, ὦ Ἀράσπα, μέμνημαί τε καὶ
 ἀποδώσω σὺν τούτοις πᾶσι. δίκαιον δὲ καὶ ὑμᾶς ἅπαντας,
 ὦ ἄνδρες, τοῦτον τιμᾶν ὡς ἀγαθὸν ἄνδρα· ἐπὶ γὰρ τῷ
 ἡμετέρῳ ἀγαθῷ καὶ ἐκινδύνευσε καὶ αἰτίαν ὑπέσχευεν, ἥ
 ἐβαρύνετο. ἐκ τούτου δὴ πάντες ἡσπάζοντο τὸν Ἀράσπαν
 καὶ ἐδεξιούντο. εἰπόντος δὲ Κύρου ὅτι τούτων μὲν τοίνυν
 εἴη ἄλλis, Ἄ δὲ καιρὸς ἡμῖν εἰδέναι, ταῦτ', ἔφη, διηγού,
 ὦ Ἀράσπα· καὶ μηδὲν ἐλάττου τοῦ ἀληθοῦς μηδὲ μείον
 τὰ τῶν πολεμίων. κρεῖττον γὰρ μείζω οἰηθέντας μείονα
 ἰδεῖν ἢ μείω ἀκούσαντας ἰσχυρότερα εὐρίσκειν. Καὶ μὴν,
 ἔφη ὁ Ἀράσπας, ὡς ἂν ἀσφαλέστατά γε εἰδείην ὅποσον
 τὸ στράτευμά ἐστιν ἐποίουν· συνεξέταττον γὰρ παρὼν
 αὐτός. Σὺ μὲν ἄρα, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, οὐ τὸ πλῆθος μόνον
 οἶσθα, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὴν τάξιν αὐτῶν. Ἐγὼ μὲν ναὶ μὰ Δί',
 ἔφη ὁ Ἀράσπας, καὶ ὡς διανοοῦνται τὴν μάχην

ἔργα. οὗτος οὔτε |shameful | (pass) be weaker, be|come, go ὅτ'
 |overcome; (active) de-
 ἐμέ |scare, , ἀλλ' ὑπ' ἐμοῦ |feat
 |scare
 τὰ τῶν πολέμιων |clear, under- ὄντα |bring news out ἃ μὲν
 |standable
 οὖν ἐγὼ σοι |promise , ὦ Ἀράσπα, |remind; (mid) remember, turn
 |one's thoughts to
 |repay σὺν τούτοις πᾶσι. δίκαιον δὲ καὶ ὑμᾶς ἅπαντας,
 ὦ ἄνδρες, τοῦτον |honor ὡς ἀγαθὸν ἄνδρα· ἐπὶ γὰρ τῷ
 |our, my ἀγαθῷ καὶ |encounter danger; ... (±inf)|promise , ἥ
 |there is a danger that
 |oppress ἐκ τούτου δὴ πάντες |greet, salute τὸν Ἀράσπαν
 καὶ |salute, greet εἰπόντος δὲ Κύρου ὅτι τούτων μὲν |well, then
 εἷη |in plenty; enough, ὅς ἡμῖν εἰδέναι, ταῦτ', ἔφη, |detail, ,
 |describe
 ὦ Ἀράσπα· καὶ μηδὲν ἐλάττου τοῦ |true; |and not; not even
 |careful
 τὰ τῶν πολέμιων. κρεῖττον γὰρ μείζω οἰηθέντας |less,
 |smaller
 ἰδεῖν ἢ μείω ἀκούσαντας |strong, force- εὐρίσκειν. Καὶ μὴν,
 |ful, violent
 ἔφη ὁ Ἀράσπας, ὡς ἂν |safe, easy, steady, γε εἰδείην |as/how many/great
 |careful
 τὸ |army ἐστὶν ἐποιοῦν· συνεξέταπτον γὰρ παρὼν
 αὐτός. Σὺ μὲν ἄρα, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, οὐ τὸ |numerical, ἵνον
 |superiority
 οἶσθα, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὴν τάξιν αὐτῶν. Ἐγὼ μὲν |yea μὰ Δί,
 ἔφη ὁ Ἀράσπας, καὶ ὡς διανοοῦνται τὴν μάχην

It was not through any baseness, or any weakness, or any fear of me, that he left us; it was because I sent him to be my messenger, to learn the enemy's doings and bring us word. Araspas, I have not forgotten what I promised you, I will repay you, we will all repay you. For, gentlemen, it is only just that all of you should pay him honour. Good and true I call him who risked himself for our good, and took upon himself a reproach that was heavy to bear."

At that all crowded round Araspas and took him by the hand and made him welcome. Then Cyrus spoke again:

"Enough, my friends, Araspas has news for us, and it is time to hear it. Tell us your tale, Araspas, keep back nothing of the truth, and do not make out the power of the enemy less than it really is. It is far better that we should find it smaller than we looked for rather than strong beyond our expectations." "Well," began Araspas, "in order to learn their numbers, I managed to be present at the marshalling of their troops." "Then you can tell us," said Cyrus, "not only their numbers but their disposition in the field." "That I can," answered Araspas, "and also how

vocabulary

ἀέκων unwilling
ἄκων javelin; unwilling ~acme
βάθος -ους (n, 3) depth, height
ἐνθένδε hence
ἐπειδάν when, after
ἐπέχω hold, cover; offer; assail
ἐπιθυμέω (ὅ) wish, covet
ἐπισκέπτομαι look upon, inspect
ἐπισκοπέω look upon, inspect
κεφάλαιος main point; chief
κυκλέω carry on wheels ~cycle
κυκλόω circle, encircle
μέλω concern, interest, be one's
 responsibility
ναί yea
οἴκοι at home ~economics
ὅμως anyway, nevertheless

ὅπόσος as many as, how many, how
 great
οὐτάω pierce, wound
πανταχῇ everywhere
περισσός prodigious, superfluous
στάδιον 200 meters (pl also masc)
στάδιος (adj) standing upright, firm;
 (pl noun) 200 meters
στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy
συγχωρέω accede, concede
τάξις -εως (f) arrangement, military
 unit
τεσσαράκοντα forty ~trapezoid
τετταράκοντα forty
τοίνυν well, then
ὕπάγω lead under the yoke, lead away
 from ~demagogue
χωρίον area; downwards

ποιεῖσθαι. Ἄλλ' ὅμως, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, τὸ πλήθος ἡμῶν
 πρῶτον εἰπὲ ἐν κεφαλαίῳ. Ἐκεῖνοι τοῖνυν, ἔφη, πάντες
 τεταγμένοι ἐπὶ τριάκοντα τὸ βάθος καὶ πεζοὶ καὶ ἵππεῖς
 πλὴν τῶν Αἰγυπτίων ἐπέχουσιν ἀμφὶ τὰ τετταράκοντα
 στάδια· πάνν γάρ μοι, ἔφη, ἐμέλησεν ὥστε εἰδέναι ὁπόσον
 κατεῖχον χωρίον. Οἱ δ' Αἰγύπτιοι, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, πῶς εἰσι
 τεταγμένοι; ὅτι εἶπας πλὴν τῶν Αἰγυπτίων. Τούτους δὲ
 οἱ μυρίαρχοι ἔταπτον εἰς ἑκατὸν πανταχῇ τὴν μυριοστὴν
 ἐκάστην· τοῦτον γὰρ σφίσι καὶ οἴκοι νόμον ἔφασαν
 εἶναι τῶν τάξεων. καὶ ὁ Κροῖσος μέντοι μάλα ἄκων
 συνεχώρησεν αὐτοῖς οὕτω τάττεσθαι· ἐβούλετο γὰρ ὅτι
 πλείστον ὑπερφαλαγγῆσαι τοῦ σοῦ στρατεύματος. Πρὸς
 τί δή, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, τοῦτο ἐπιθυμῶν; Ὡς ναὶ μὰ Δί', ἔφη,
 τῷ περιττῷ κυκλωσόμενος. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπεν· Ἄλλ'
 οὔτοι ἂν εἰδείεν εἰ οἱ κυκλούμενοι κυκλωθεῖεν. ἀλλ' ἂ
 μὲν παρὰ σοῦ καιρὸς μαθεῖν, ἀκηκόαμεν· ὑμᾶς δὲ χρή,
 ὦ ἄνδρες, οὕτω ποιεῖν· νῦν μὲν ἐπειδὰν ἐνθένδε ἀπέλθητε,
 ἐπισκέψασθε καὶ τὰ τῶν ἵππων καὶ τὰ ὑμῶν

ποιῆσθαι. Ἄλλ' |anyway, nevertheless, ς, τὸ πλῆθος ἡμῖν
 πρῶτον εἰπὲ ἐν κεφαλαίῳ. Ἐκεῖνοι |well, then-ρη, πάντες
 |arrange ἐπὶ |thirty τὸ |depth, καὶ |on foot;|rider
 |height |footsoldier
 |except τῶν Αἰγυπτίων |hold, cover; ἀμφὶ τὰ τετταράκοντα
 |offer; assail
 στάδια· |altogether, very, ἔφη, |be in/on the mind ὅδεναι |as/how many/great
 |restrain; |area; downwards Ἰγύπτιοι, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, πῶς εἰσι
 stop;
 continue;
 arrange;
 keep, take , ὅτι εἶπας |except τῶν Αἰγυπτίων. Τούτους δὲ
 possession
 οἱ μυρίαρχοι |arrange εἰς ἑκατὸν |everywhere ἣν μυριοστὺν
 ἐκάστην· τοῦτον γὰρ σφίσι καὶ |at home ἵμον ἔφασαν
 εἶναι τῶν τάξεων. καὶ ὁ Κροῖσος μέντοι μάλα ἄκων
 |accede, concede αὐτοῖς οὕτω |arrange ἐβούλετο γὰρ ὅτι
 πλείστον ὑπερβαλαγγῆσαι τοῦ σοῦ |army . Πρὸς
 τί δή, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, τοῦτο |wish, covet, Ὡς |yea μὰ Δί, ἔφη,
 τῷ περιττῷ |circle, encircle . καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπεν· Ἄλλ'
 οὔτοι ἂν εἰδέειν εἰ οἱ κυκλούμενοι |circle,
 |encircle ἀλλ' ἂ
 μὲν παρὰ σοῦ καιρὸς μαθεῖν, ἀκηκόαμεν· ὑμᾶς δὲ χρή,
 ὦ ἄνδρες, οὕτω ποιεῖν· νῦν μὲν |when, |hence ἀπέλθητε,
 |after
 ἐπισκέψασθε καὶ τὰ τῶν ἵππων καὶ τὰ ὑμῶν

they propose to fight.” “Good,” said Cyrus, “but first let us hear their numbers in brief.” “Well,” he answered, “they are drawn up thirty deep, infantry and cavalry alike, all except the Egyptians, and they cover about five miles; for I was at great pains,” he added, “to find out how much ground they occupied.”

“And the Egyptians?” Cyrus said, “how are they drawn up? I noticed you said, ‘all except the Egyptians.’ ”

“The Egyptians,” he answered, “are drawn up in companies of ten thousand, under their own officers, a hundred deep, and a hundred broad: that, they insisted, was their usual formation at home. Croesus, however, was very loth to let them have their own way in this: he wished to outflank you as much as possible.” “Why?” Cyrus asked, “what was his object?” “To encircle you, I imagine, with his wings.” “He had better take care,” said Cyrus, “or his circle may find itself in the centre. But now you have told us what we most needed to know, and you, gentlemen,” said he to the officers, “on leaving this meeting, you will look to your weapons and your harness. It

*vocabulary***ἄγων** -ος (m, 3) gathering place

~agony

ἀριστάω eat lunch ~aristocrat**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot**αὔριον** tomorrow**ἄχρεϊος** serving no purpose ~chresard**βαθύς** high, deep ~bathysphere**βλάπτω** break, make fail**ἐνδεῖα** a lack, need**ἐνδέω** tie to, entangle; lack**ἐξικνέομαι** arrive at**ἡώς ἡῶθι** (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene**θύω** (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω**ἰκάνω** (ᾱ) reach, arrive at**κέρας** -τος (n, 3) horn; military unit

~ceratopsia

λοχαγέω (ᾱ) lead a company**λοχαγός** (ᾱ) captain**λόχος** ambush, band, childbirth ~lie**μυρίος** (ῥ) 10,000 ~myriad**ὁμός** same ~homoerotic**ὁμοῦ** together**ὁμόω** unite ~homoerotic**ὀπλίτης** -ου (ῖ, m, 1) hoplite, heavy

infantryman ~hoplite

ὄπλον tool, weapon, ship's tackle

~hoplite

παραγγέλλω transmit; order, summon,

recommend, encourage

ταξίαρχος military rank**τέσσαρες** four ~trapezoid**φάλαγξ** -γος (f) rank of battle

~phalanx

ὠφελέω help, be useful

αὐτῶν ὄπλα· πολλάκις γὰρ μικροῦ ἐνδεία καὶ ἀνὴρ καὶ ἵππος καὶ ἄρμα ἀχρεῖον γίγνεται· αὖριον δὲ πρῶ, ἕως ἂν ἐγὼ θύωμαι, πρῶτον μὲν χρή ἀριστῆσαι καὶ ἄνδρας καὶ ἵππους, ὅπως ὅ τι ἂν πράττειν αἰὲ καίρὸς ἢ μὴ τούτου ἡμῖν ἐνδέη· ἔπειτα δὲ σύ, ἔφη, ὦ Ἀρσάμα,[...], τὸ δεξιὸν κέρασ ἔχε ὥσπερ καὶ ἔχεις, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι μυριάρχοι ἥπερ νῦν ἔχετε· ὁμοῦ δὲ τοῦ ἀγῶνος ὄντος οὐδενὶ ἄρματι καίρὸς ἵππους μεταξευγνύναι. παραγγείλατε δὲ τοῖς ταξιάρχοις καὶ λοχαγοῖς ἐπὶ φάλαγγος καθίστασθαι εἰς δύο ἔχοντας ἕκαστον τὸν λόχον. ὁ δὲ λόχος ἦν ἕκαστος εἴκοσι τέτταρες.

Καί τις εἶπε τῶν μυριάρχων· Καὶ δοκοῦμέν σοι, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, ἱκανῶς ἔξειν εἰς τοσούτους τεταγμένοι πρὸς οὕτω βαθεῖαν φάλαγγα; καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπεν· Αἱ δὲ βαθύτεραι φάλαγγες ἢ ὥς ἐξικνεῖσθαι τοῖς ὅπλοις τῶν ἐναντίων τί σοι, ἔφη, δοκοῦσιν ἢ τοὺς πολεμίους βλάπτειν ἢ τοὺς συμμάχους ὠφελεῖν; ἐγὼ μὲν γάρ, ἔφη, τοὺς εἰς ἑκατὸν τούτους ὀπλίτας εἰς μυρίους ἂν μᾶλλον βουλοίμην

αὐτῶν |tool |often γὰρ μικροῦ |a lack, need ἀνήρ καὶ
 ἵππος καὶ |chariot|serving no, purpose |tomorrow` πρῶ, ἕως ἂν
 ἐγὼ |rush; sacrifice`τον μὲν χρῆ |eat lunch καὶ ἄνδρας καὶ
 ἵππους, ὅπως ὅ τι ἂν πράττειν αἰεὶ καιρὸς ἦ μὴ τούτου
 ἡμῖν |tie to ἔπειτα δὲ σύ, ἔφη, ὦ Ἀρσάμα,[...], τὸ |right-hand
 |horn; ἔχε ὥσπερ καὶ ἔχεις, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι μυριάρχοι ἦπερ
 |military
 |unit
 νῦν ἔχετε· ὁμοῦ δὲ τοῦ |gathering ἔντος οὐδενὶ |chariot καιρὸς
 |place
 ἵππους μεταξενγνύναι. |transmit; order, ḥsummōn, |military rank
 |recommend, encourage
 καὶ λοχαγοῖς ἐπὶ |rank of battle θίστασθαι εἰς δύο ἔχοντας
 ἕκαστον τὸν |ambush, ἑ bānd, |ambush, ἑ bānd, ιστος εἴκοσι
 |childbirth |childbirth
 |four .

Καί τις εἶπε τῶν μυριάρχων· Καὶ δοκοῦμέν σοι, ἔφη, ὦ
 Κῦρε, ἱκανῶς ἔξειν εἰς τοσούτους |arrange πρὸς οὕτω
 |high, deep|rank of battle καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπεν· Αἰ δὲ |high, deep
 |rank of battle, ὥς |arrive at τοῖς |tool τῶν |opposite τί
 σοι, ἔφη, δοκοῦσιν ἢ τοὺς πολεμίους |break, make fail ὕς
 συμμάχους |help, be usefΎl` μὲν γάρ, ἔφη, τοὺς εἰς ἑκατὸν
 τούτους |hoplite, heavy, |υρίους ἂν μάλλον βουλοίμην
 |infantryman

often happens that the lack of some little thing makes man or horse or chariot useless. To-morrow morning early, while I am offering sacrifice, do you take your breakfast and give your steeds their provender, so that when the moment comes to strike you may not be found wanting. And then you, Araspas, must hold the right wing in the position it has now, and the rest of you who command a thousand men must do the same with your divisions: it is no time to be changing horses when the race is being run; and you will send word to the brigadiers and captains under you to draw up the phalanx with each company two deep." (Now a company consisted of four-and- twenty men.)

Then one of the officers, a captain of ten thousand, said:

"Do you think, Cyrus, that with so shallow a depth we can stand against their tremendous phalanx?"

"But do you suppose," rejoined he, "that any phalanx so deep that the rear-ranks cannot close with the enemy could do much either for friend or foe? I myself," he added, "would rather this heavy infantry of theirs were drawn up, not a hundred, but ten thousand deep: we should have all the

vocabulary

ἄκοντίζω throw, (+gen) at ~acute
ἄκοντιστής -οῦ (m, 1) spearman
 ~acute
ἄνευ away from; not having; not
 needing ~Sp. sin
βαθύνω scoop down ~benthic
δῆλος visible, conspicuous
ἐλάχιστος smallest, shortest, fewest
θωρακοφόρος (ἄ) wearing a
 breastplate
κακουργέω do evil
κουφίζω lighten
λόχος ambush, band, childbirth ~lie
λυμαίνομαι (ῥ) abuse, violate,
 desecrate
ὁμολογέω agree with/to
ὄφελος -εος (n, 3) a use, a help
ὄχυρός strong, secure

ὄχυρόω fortify
παραγγέλλω transmit; order, summon,
 recommend, encourage
πελταστής -οῦ (m, 1) light troops
 ~pelt
προβάλλω throw before; propose;
 (mp) pretend, abandon, nominate
 ~ballistic
πρόσθεν before (time, space)
προστίθημι add; impose; (mp) agree;
 side with ~thesis
τελευταῖος last, final
τοξεύω shoot an arrow at ~toxic
τοξότης -ου (m, 1) archer ~toxic
ὑπομένω stay behind, await ~remain
φάλαγξ -γος (f) rank of battle
 ~phalanx
ὡσαύτως in the same way

τετάχθαι· οὕτω γὰρ ἂν ἐλαχίστοις μαχοίμεθα. ἐξ ὅσων μέντοι ἐγὼ τὴν φάλαγγα βαθυνῶ οἶομαι ὅλην ἐνεργὸν καὶ σύμμαχον ποιήσῃ αὐτὴν ἑαυτῇ. ἀκοντιστὰς μὲν ἐπὶ τοῖς θωρακοφόροις τάξω, ἐπὶ δὲ τοῖς ἀκοντισταῖς τοὺς τοξότας. τούτους γὰρ πρωτοστάτας μὲν τί ἂν τις τάττοι, οἳ καὶ αὐτοὶ ὁμολογοῦσι μηδεμίαν μάχην ἂν ὑπομῆναι ἐκ χειρός; προβεβλημένοι δὲ τοὺς θωρακοφόρους μενοῦσιν τε, καὶ οἱ μὲν ἀκοντίζοντες, οἱ δὲ τοξεύοντες, ὑπὲρ τῶν πρόσθεν πάντων λυμανοῦνται τοὺς πολεμίους. ὅτι δ' ἂν κακουργῇ τις τοὺς ἐναντίους, δῆλον ὅτι παντὶ τούτῳ τοὺς συμμάχους κουφίζει. τελευταίους μὲντοι στήσω τοὺς ἐπὶ πᾶσι καλουμένους. ὥσπερ γὰρ οἰκίας οὔτε ἄνευ λιθολογήματος ὀχυροῦ οὔτε ἄνευ τῶν στέγειν ποιούντων οὐδὲν ὄφελος, οὕτως οὐδὲ φάλαγγος οὔτ' ἄνευ τῶν πρώτων οὔτ' ἄνευ τῶν τελευταίων, εἰ μὴ ἀγαθοὶ ἔσονται, ὄφελος οὐδέν. ἀλλ' ὑμεῖς τ', ἔφη, ὥς παραγγέλλω τάττεσθε, καὶ ὑμεῖς οἱ τῶν πελταστῶν ἄρχοντες ἐπὶ τούτοις ὡσαύτως τοὺς λόχους καθίστατε, καὶ ὑμεῖς οἱ

τετάχθαι· οὕτω γὰρ ἂν |smallest, short-est, fewest| χοίμεθα. ἐξ ὅσων
 μέντοι ἐγὼ τὴν |rank of battle| θυνῶ οἶομαι ὅλην ἐνεργὸν
 καὶ σύμμαχον ποιήσειν αὐτὴν ἑαυτῇ. |spearman| μὲν ἐπὶ
 τοῖς |wearing a breast-plate| τάξω, ἐπὶ δὲ τοῖς |spearman| τοὺς
 |archer| . τούτους γὰρ πρωτοστάτας μὲν τί ἂν τις τάττοι,
 οἳ καὶ αὐτοὶ |agree with/to| μηδεμίαν μάχην ἂν |stay behind, await|
 ἐκ χειρός; |throw before; propound; (mp)|wearing a breast-plate| μενουσί
 |pretend, abandon, nominate| τε, καὶ οἳ μὲν |throw, (+gen) at| οἳ δὲ |shoot an arrow at| ῥ
 τῶν πρόσθεν πάντων |abuse, violate,| τοὺς πολεμίους. ὅ
 |desecrate| τι δ' ἂν |do evil| τις τοὺς ἐναντίους, |visible, "...| παντὶ
 |conspicuous| τούτῳ τοὺς συμμάχους |lighten| . |last, final| μέντοι
 στήσω τοὺς ἐπὶ πᾶσι καλουμένους. ὥσπερ γὰρ οἰκίας
 οὔτε |away from; not hav- ing; not needing| ος ὀχυροῦ οὔτε |away from; not hav- ing; not needing|
 ποιούντων οὐδὲν |a use, a help| . ὡς οὐδὲ |rank of battle| τ' |away from; not
 |having; not
 τῶν πρώτων οὐτ' |away from;|last, final| , εἰ μὴ ἀγαθοὶ
 |not having;
 |not needing| ἔσονται, |a use, a help| . ἀλλ' ὑμεῖς τ', ἔφη, ὡς |transmit; order, summon,
 |recommend, encourage| τάττεσθε, καὶ ὑμεῖς οἳ τῶν |light troops| ἄρχοντες ἐπὶ
 τούτοις |in the same way| . |ambush, band, γατε, καὶ ὑμεῖς οἳ
 |childbirth|

fewer to fight. Whereas with the depth that I propose, I believe we shall not waste a man: every part of our army will work with every other. I will post the javelin-men behind the cuirassiers, and the archers behind them: it would be absurd to place in the van troops who admit that they are not made for hand-to-hand fighting; but with the cuirassiers thrown in front of them they will stand firm enough, and harass the enemy over the heads of our own men with their arrows and their darts. And every stroke that falls on the enemy means so much relief to our friends. In the very rear of all I will post our reserve. A house is useless without a foundation as well as a roof, and our phalanx will be no use unless it has a rear-guard and a van, and both of them good. You," he added, "will draw up the ranks to suit these orders, and you who command the targeteers will follow with your companies in the same depth, and you who command

vocabulary

ἀπειλέω vow, threaten, boast
ἀρμάμαξα Persian carriage
ἐγγύς near
ἔπω (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of
ἐφοράω look upon ~panorama
ἔψω boil, be boiling
ζεῦγος -ους (n, 3) team of animals
 ~zygote
ζημιόω fine, punish
θαρσύνω (ῶ) encourage
ἰσχυρός (ῶ) strong, forceful, violent
κολάζω punish
μηχανή machine; mechanism, way
παραγγέλλω transmit; order, summon, recommend, encourage

πελταστής -οῦ (m, 1) light troops
 ~pelt
προδίδωμι betray
πρόειμι to have been before, earlier
 ~ion
πύργος ramparts, tower; line of troops
σαντοῦ yourself
σκευοφόρος pack animal, porter
στρατός common people/soldiers
 ~strategy
στρέφω turn, veer ~atrophy
τελευταῖος last, final
τοξότης -ου (m, 1) archer ~toxic
ὕπηρέτης -ου (m, 1) servant, officer
φάλαγξ -γος (f) rank of battle
 ~phalanx
ὡσαύτως in the same way

τῶν τοξοτῶν ἐπὶ τοῖς πελτασταῖς ὡσαύτως. σὺ δέ, ὃς
 τῶν ἐπὶ πᾶσιν ἄρχεις, τελευταίους ἔχων τοὺς ἄνδρας
 παράγγελλε τοῖς σαυτοῦ ἐφορᾶν τε ἐκάστω τοὺς καθ'
 αὐτὸν καὶ τοῖς μὲν τὸ δέον ποιούσιν ἐπικελεύειν, τοῖς δὲ
 μαλακνομένοις ἀπειλεῖν ἰσχυρῶς· ἦν δέ τις στρέφηται
 προδιδόναι θέλων, θανάτῳ ζημιοῦν. ἔργον γάρ ἐστι τοῖς
 μὲν πρωτοστάταις θαρρύνειν τοὺς ἐπομένους καὶ λόγῳ
 καὶ ἔργῳ· ὑμᾶς δὲ δεῖ τοὺς ἐπὶ πᾶσι τεταγμένους πλείω
 φόβον παρέχειν τοῖς κακοῖς τοῦ ἀπὸ τῶν πολεμίων. καὶ
 ὑμεῖς μὲν ταῦτα ποιεῖτε. σὺ δέ, ὦ Εὐφράτα, ὃς ἄρχεις
 τῶν ἐπὶ ταῖς μηχαναῖς, οὕτω ποίει ὅπως τὰ ζεύγη τὰ
 τοὺς πύργους ἄγοντα ἔψεται ὡς ἐγγύτατα τῆς φάλαγγος.
 σὺ δ', ὦ Δαοῦχε, ὃς ἄρχεις τῶν σκευοφόρων, ἐπὶ τοῖς
 πύργοις ἄγε πάντα τὸν τοιοῦτον στρατόν· οἱ δὲ ὑπηρεταί
 σου ἰσχυρῶς κολαζόντων τοὺς προϊόντας τοῦ καιροῦ
 ἢ λειπομένους. σὺ δέ, ὦ Καρδοῦχε, ὃς ἄρχεις τῶν
 ἄρμαμαξῶν αἱ ἄγουσι τὰς γυναῖκας, κατάστησον αὐτὰς
 τελευταίας ἐπὶ τοῖς σκευοφόροις. ἐπόμενα γὰρ

τῶν |archer ἐπὶ τοῖς |light troops |in the same way` δέ, ὅς

τῶν ἐπὶ πᾶσιν ἄρχεις, |last, final ἔχων τοὺς ἄνδρας

|transmit; order, sūm-|yourself |look upon εἰ ἐκάστω τοὺς καθ'
|mon, recommend, en-
|courage αὐτὸν καὶ τοῖς μὲν τὸ δέον ποιούσιν ἐπικελεύειν, τοῖς δὲ

μαλακυνόμενοι |vow, |strong, force-` δέ τις |turn
|threaten, |ful, violent
|boast

|betray θέλων, θανάτῳ |fine, . ἔργον γάρ ἐστι τοῖς
|punish

μὲν πρωτοστάταις |encourage τοὺς ἐπομένους καὶ λόγῳ

καὶ ἔργῳ· ὑμᾶς δὲ δεῖ τοὺς ἐπὶ πᾶσι |arrange πλείῳ

|fear παρέχειν τοῖς κακοῖς τοῦ ἀπὸ τῶν πολεμίων. καὶ

ὑμεῖς μὲν ταῦτα ποιείτε. σὺ δέ, ὦ Εὐφράτα, ὅς ἄρχεις

τῶν ἐπὶ ταῖς |machine; mecha-` υ ποίει ὅπως τὰ |team τὰ
|nism, way

τοὺς |wall, ἄγοντα ἔψεται ὡς |near τῆς |rank of battle
|tower

σὺ δ', ὦ Δαοῦχε, ὅς ἄρχεις τῶν |pack animal, porter` τοῖς

|wall, ἄγε πάντα τὸν τοιοῦτον |army οἱ δὲ |servant,
|tower |officer

σου |strong, |punish τοὺς |to have been οὐ καιροῦ
|forceful, |before, earlier
|violent

ἢ λειπομένους. σὺ δέ, ὦ Καρδοῦχε, ὅς ἄρχεις τῶν

|Persian αἱ ἄγουσι τὰς γυναῖκας, κατάστησον αὐτὰς
|carriage

|last, final ἐπὶ τοῖς |pack animal, porter` -μενα γὰρ

the archers will follow the targeteers. Gentlemen of the reserve, you will hold your men in the rear, and pass the word down to your own subordinates to watch the men in front, cheer on those who do their duty, threaten him who plays the coward, and if any man show signs of treachery, see that he dies the death. It is for those in the van to hearten those behind them by word and deed; it is for you, the reserve, to make the cowards dread you more than the foe. You know your work, and you will do it. Euphratus," he added, turning to the officer in command of the artillery, "see that the waggons with the towers keep as close to the phalanx as possible. And you, Daouchus, bring up the whole of your baggage-train under cover of the towers and make your squires punish severely any man who breaks the line. You, Carouchas, keep the women's carriages close behind the baggage-train. This long line of followers should give an impression of

*vocabulary***ἀγωνίζομαι** contend, exert oneself**ἀναγκάζω** force, compel**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot**ἀρμάμαξα** Persian carriage**ἀσθενής** weak**ἐκάτερος** each of two**ἐκτάσσω** muster**ἐνεδρεύω** ambush, trap**ἐξοπλίζω** prepare, arm ~hoplite**ἐξουσία** authority, office**ἡγεμών** -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide,

chief ~hegemony

κάμηλος (f) camel**κυκλόω** circle, encircle**λαγχάνω** be allotted; (esp. λελα-
forms) allot; receive**ὀπίσθεν** behind, hereafter**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon,
recommend, encourage**πέζα** end of a chariot pole**περιβάλλω** act: excel; mid: put on
clothing ~ballistic**περιβολή** a covering; an interior**φάλαγξ** -γος (f) rank of battle

~phalanx

χωρίον area; downwards

ταῦτα πάντα καὶ πλήθους δόξαν παρέξει καὶ ἐνεδρεύειν
 ἡμῖν ἐξουσία ἔσται, καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους, ἣν κυκλοῦσθαι
 πειρῶνται, μείζω τὴν περιβολὴν ἀναγκάσει ποιεῖσθαι·
 ὅσῳ δ' ἂν μείζον χωρίον περιβάλλωνται, τοσούτῳ ἀνάγκη
 αὐτοὺς ἀσθενεστέρους γίνεσθαι. καὶ ὑμεῖς μὲν οὕτω
 ποιεῖτε· σὺ δέ, ὦ Ἀρτάοξε καὶ Ἀρταγέρσα, τὴν χιλιοστὴν
 ἐκάτερος τῶν σὺν ὑμῖν πεζῶν ἐπὶ τούτοις ἔχετε. καὶ σύ,
 ὦ Φαρνοῦχε καὶ Ἀσιαδάτα, τὴν τῶν ἱππέων χιλιοστὴν
 ἥς ἐκάτερος ἄρχει ὑμῶν μὴ συγκατατάττετε εἰς τὴν
 φάλαγγα, ἀλλ' ὅπισθεν τῶν ἄρμαμαξῶν ἐξοπλίσθητε καθ'
 ὑμᾶς αὐτούς· ἔπειτα πρὸς ἐμὲ ἦκετε σὺν τοῖς ἄλλοις
 ἡγεμόσιν. οὕτω δὲ δεῖ ὑμᾶς παρεσκευάσθαι ὡς πρώτους
 δεῆσον ἀγωνίζεσθαι. καὶ σὺ δὲ ὁ ἄρχων τῶν ἐπὶ ταῖς
 καμήλοις ἀνδρῶν, ὅπισθεν τῶν ἄρμαμαξῶν ἐκτάττου·
 ποίει δ' ὅ τι ἂν σοι παραγγέλλῃ Ἀρταγέρσης. ὑμεῖς δ' οἱ
 τῶν ἀρμάτων ἡγεμόνες διακληρωσάμενοι, ὁ μὲν λαχὼν
 ὑμῶν πρὸ τῆς φάλαγγος τὰ μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ ἑκατὸν ἔχων
 ἄρματα καταστησάτω· αἱ δ' ἕτεραι ἑκατοστύες τῶν

ταῦτα πάντα καὶ πλήθους δόξαν παρέξει καὶ |ambush, trap

ἡμῖν |authority, ἔσται, καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους, ἣν |circle,
|office |encircle

πειρῶνται, μείζω τὴν |a covering; an|force, ποιείσθαι·
|interior |compel

ὅσω δ' ἂν μείζον |area; |excel; don , τοσούτῳ |necessity
|down-

αὐτοὺς |weak |wards γίγνεσθαι. καὶ ὑμεῖς μὲν οὕτω

ποιεῖτε· σὺ δέ, ὦ Ἀρτάοξε καὶ Ἀρταγέρσα, τὴν χιλιοστὴν

|each of two ὦν σὺν ὑμῖν πεζῶν ἐπὶ τούτοις ἔχετε. καὶ σύ,

ὦ Φαρνοῦχε καὶ Ἀσιαδάτα, τὴν τῶν |rider χιλιοστὴν

ἧς |each of two ἵρχει ὑμῶν μὴ συγκατατάττετε εἰς τὴν

|rank of battle· ἅλ' |behind, τῶν |Persian |prepare, arm καθ'
|hereafter |carriage

ὑμᾶς αὐτούς· ἔπειτα πρὸς ἐμὲ |be present, τοῖς ἄλλοις
|have arrived

|leader οὕτω δέ δεῖ ὑμᾶς |prepare, render ὥς πρώτους

δεῆσον |contend, exert καὶ σὺ δὲ ὁ ἄρχων τῶν ἐπὶ ταῖς
|oneself

|camel ἀνδρῶν, |behind, τῶν |Persian |muster
|hereafter |carriage

ποίει δ' ὅ τι ἂν σοι |transmit; order, ἄ summόν, ἧς. ὑμεῖς δ' οἱ
|recommend, encourage

τῶν |chariot |leader διακληρωσάμενοι, ὁ μὲν |be allotted; (esp.
|ελα- forms) allot;

ὑμῶν πρὸ τῆς |rank of battle ἰ μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ ἑκατὸν ἐχῶν
|receive

|chariot καταστησάτω· αἱ δ' ἕτεραι ἑκατοστῦες τῶν

vast numbers, allow our own men opportunity for ambushes, and force the enemy, if he try to surround us, to widen his circuit, and the wider he makes it the weaker he will be. That, then, is your business; and you, gentlemen, Artaozus and Artagersas, each of you take your thousand foot and guard the baggage. And you, Pharnouchus and Asiadatas, neither of you must lead your thousand horse into the fighting-line, you must get them under arms by themselves behind the carriages: and then come to me with the other officers as fully-equipped as if you were to be the first to fight. You, sir, who command the camel-corps will take up your post behind the carriages and look for further orders to Artagersas. Officers of the war-chariots, you will draw lots among yourselves, and he on whom the lot falls will bring his hundred chariots in front of the fighting-line, while

*vocabulary***ἀγάζω** exalt, adore**ἀριστάω** eat lunch ~aristocrat**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot**δειπνοποιέω** make dinner**δεξιόομαι** salute, greet**διατάσσω** arrange, array**ἐθελούσιος** voluntary, optional**ἐξοπλίζω** prepare, arm ~hoplite**ἐπέρομαι** ask as well; ask then**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee**ἔπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of**εὐώνυμος** honored; left-hand**θύω** (ō) rush; sacrifice ~θύω**κέρας** -τος (n, 3) horn; military unit
~ceratopsia**κοιμάω** put to sleep; (pass) lie down,
have sex**κῦρος** -εος (n, 3) authority; validity**λαγχάνω** be allotted; (esp. λελα-

forms) allot; receive

Πέρσης Persian**πλευρόν** rib, side ~pleurisy**προαγορεύω** declare, predict, order**προεῖπον** foretell, proclaim, order
before**σοῦσον** lily**σπονδή** libation, treaty ~spontaneous**στρατιά** army ~strategy**στρατός** common people/soldiers
~strategy**συγχωρέω** accede, concede**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military
unit**ὕστεραῖος** the next; later**ὕφηναι** lower; admit; slack off ~jet**ὕφιστημι** promise, undertake ~station**φάλαγξ** -γος (f) rank of battle
~phalanx**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch
~phylactery

ἀρμάτων, ἡ μὲν κατὰ τὸ δεξιὸν πλευρὸν τῆς στρατιᾶς
στοιχοῦσα ἐπέσθω τῇ φάλαγγι ἐπὶ κέρως, ἡ δὲ κατὰ τὸ
εὐώνυμον. Κῦρος μὲν οὕτω διέταπτεν.

Ἀβραδάτας δὲ ὁ Σούσων βασιλεὺς εἶπεν· Ἐγώ σοι, Κῦρε,
ἐθελούσιος ὑφίσταμαι τὴν κατὰ πρόσωπον τῆς ἀντίας
φάλαγγος τάξιν ἔχειν, εἰ μὴ τί σοι ἄλλο δοκεῖ. καὶ ὁ
Κῦρος ἀγασθεὶς αὐτὸν καὶ δεξιωσάμενος ἐπήρετο τοὺς ἐπὶ
τοῖς ἄλλοις ἄρμασι Πέρσας· Ἡ καὶ ὑμεῖς, ἔφη, ταῦτα
συγχωρεῖτε; ἐπεὶ δ' ἐκεῖνοι ἀπεκρίναντο ὅτι οὐ καλὸν
εἶη ταῦτα ὑφίστασθαι, διεκλήρωσεν αὐτούς, καὶ ἔλαχεν
ὁ Ἀβραδάτας ἥπερ ὑφίστατο, καὶ ἐγένετο κατὰ τοὺς
Αἰγυπτίους. τότε μὲν δὴ ἀπιόντες καὶ ἐπιμεληθέντες ὧν
προεῖπον ἐδειπνοποιοῦντο καὶ φυλακὰς καταστησάμενοι
ἐκοιμήθησαν.

6.4

Τῇ δ' ὑστεραίᾳ πρῶς Κῦρος μὲν ἐθύετο, ὁ δ' ἄλλος στρατὸς
ἀριστήσας καὶ σπονδὰς ποιησάμενος ἐξωπλίζετο πολλοῖς

|chariot , ἡ μὲν κατὰ τὸ δεξιὸν |rib, side τῆς |army

στοιχοῦσα ἐπέσθω τῇ |rank of battle ἡ δὲ κατὰ τὸ
|horn; military
|honored; authority; οὕτω |arrange, unit
|left-hand |validity |array

Ἀβραδάτας δὲ ὁ |lily βασιλεὺς εἶπεν· Ἐγώ σοι, Κῦρε,

|voluntary, |promise, τὴν κατὰ πρόσωπον τῆς |opposite,
|optional |undertake |facing

|rank of battle ἵξιν ἔχειν, εἰ μή τί σοι ἄλλο δοκεῖ. καὶ ὁ

Κῦρος |exalt, αὐτὸν καὶ |salute, greet |ask as well; οὐς ἐπὶ
|adore |ask then

τοῖς ἄλλοις |chariot Πέρσας· Ἡ καὶ ὑμεῖς, ἔφη, ταῦτα

|accede, ἐπεὶ δ' ἐκεῖνοι ἀπεκρίναντο ὅτι οὐ καλὸν
|concede

εἶη ταῦτα |lower; admit; ἱεκλήρωσεν αὐτούς, καὶ |be allotted; (esp.
|slack off |λελα- forms) allot;

ὁ Ἀβραδάτας ἦπερ |promise, καὶ ἐγένετο κατὰ τοὺς
|undertake |receive

Αἰγυπτίους. τότε μὲν δὴ ἀπιόντες καὶ |take care of, ὧν
|oversee

προεῖπον |make dinner καὶ |guard, καταστησάμενοι
|prison,
|watch

ἐκοιμήθησαν.

6.4

Τῇ δ' |the next; later. ὃ Κῦρος μὲν |rush; sacrifice ἄλλος |army

|eat lunch καὶ |libation, ποιησάμενος |prepare, arm πολλοῖς
|treaty

the other two centuries will support our flanks on the right and left.”

Such were the dispositions made by Cyrus; but Abradatas, the lord of Susa, cried:

”Cyrus, let me, I pray you, volunteer for the post in front.”

And Cyrus, struck with admiration for the man, took him by the hand, and turning to the Persians in command of the other centuries said:

”Perhaps, gentlemen, you will allow this?”

But they answered that it was hard to resign the post of honour, and so they all drew lots, and the lot fell on Abradatas, and his post was face to face with the Egyptians. Then the officers left the council and carried out the orders given, and took their evening meal and posted the pickets and went to rest.

6.4

But early on the morrow Cyrus offered sacrifice, and meanwhile the rest of the army took their breakfast, and after the libation they armed

vocabulary

ἀνθέω sprout

ἄρμα -τος (n, 3) chariot

ἀστράπτω flash lightning

δήπου perhaps; is it not so?

ἐνδύω go into, put on

ἐπέρομαι ask as well; ask then

ἐπιχώριος native

θώραξ -ηκος (m) breastplate ~thorax

κοσμέω marshal, array ~cosmos

κράνος -εος (n, 3) helmet; ship's ram

λάθρα secretly

λίνεος linen

λόφος neck, crest on a helmet, hilltop

ὀκτώ eight ~octopus

ὀπλίζω prepare, arm ~hoplite

ὄπλον tool, weapon, ship's tackle

~hoplite

οὐχουν certainly not

παραμηρίδιος along the thighs

πλατύς extensive, wide

ποδήρης foot-length

πορφύρεος purple

πορφυρέω heave (like the sea)

πορφυρόεις purple

πορφυρούς purple

προμετωπίδιος on the forehead

προστερνίδιον horse's chest covering

προσφέρω present; resemble; add

σαντοῦ yourself

στρατιά army ~strategy

συγκόπτω chop up; beat up

φοινικίς -δος (f) red or purple cloth

χάλκεος made of copper or bronze

χιτών -ος (m, 3) tunic, armor

χρυσόω (ῶ) make golden, gild

φέλιον armlet, anklet

μὲν καὶ καλοῖς χιτῶσι, πολλοῖς δὲ καὶ καλοῖς θώραξι
καὶ κράνεσιν· ὤπλιζον δὲ καὶ ἵππους προμετωπιδίοις καὶ
προστερνιδίοις· καὶ τοὺς μὲν μονίππους παραμηριδίοις,
τοὺς δ' ὑπὸ τοῖς ἄρμασιν ὄντας παραπλευριδίοις· ὥστε
ἥστραπτε μὲν χαλκῶ, ἦνθει δὲ φοινικίσι πᾶσα ἡ στρατιά.

Καὶ τῷ Ἀβραδάτᾳ δὲ τὸ τετράρρυνμον ἄρμα καὶ ἵππων
ὀκτὼ παγκάλως ἐκεκόσμητο. ἐπεὶ δ' ἔμελλε τὸν λινοῦν
θώρακα, ὃς ἐπιχώριος ἦν αὐτοῖς, ἐνδύεσθαι, προσφέρει
αὐτῷ ἡ Πάνθεια χρυσοῦν καὶ χρυσοῦν κράνος καὶ
περιβραχιόνια καὶ ψέλια πλατέα περὶ τοὺς καρποὺς τῶν
χειρῶν καὶ χιτῶνα πορφυροῦν ποδήρη στολιδωτὸν τὰ
κάτω καὶ λόφον ὑακινθινοβαφῇ. ταῦτα δ' ἐποίησατο
λάθρᾳ τοῦ ἀνδρὸς ἐκμετρησαμένη τὰ ἐκείνου ὄπλα. ὁ δὲ
ιδὼν ἐθαύμασέ τε καὶ ἐπήρετο τὴν Πάνθειαν· Οὐδὲ γάρ ποτε,
ὦ γύναι, συγκόψασα τὸν σαντῆς κόσμον τὰ ὄπλα μοι
ἐποιήσω; Μὰ Δί', ἔφη ἡ Πάνθεια, οὐκ οὐκ τόν γε πλείστου
ἄξιον· σὺ γὰρ ἔμοιγε, ἦν καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις φανῆς οἰόσπερ
ἐμοὶ δοκεῖς εἶναι, μέγιστος κόσμος ἔσῃ. ταῦτα δὲ λέγουσα

μὲν καὶ καλοῖς |tunic , πολλοῖς δὲ καὶ καλοῖς |breastplate

καὶ |helmet; |prepare, arm καὶ ἵππους |on the forehead καὶ
|ship's ram

|horse's chest cov- καὶ τοὺς μὲν μονίππους |along the thighs ,
|ering

τοὺς δ' ὑπὸ τοῖς |chariot ὄντας παραπλευριδίους· ὥστε

|flash lightning ἡ χαλκῶ, |sprout ἡ |red or purple cloth, στρατιά.

Καὶ τῷ Ἀβραδάτῃ δὲ τὸ τετράρρυμον |chariot καὶ ἵππων

|eight παγκάλως |marshal, . ἐπεὶ δ' ἔμελλε τὸν |linen
|array

|breastplate ὧς |native ἦν αὐτοῖς, |go into, put |present; re-
|on |semble; add

αὐτῷ ἡ Πάνθεια χρυσοῦν καὶ χρυσοῦν |helmet; ship's ram

περιβραχιόνια καὶ |armlet, |extensive, wide οὓς καρπούς τῶν
|anklet

χειρῶν καὶ |tunic πορφυροῦν |foot-length στολιδωτὸν τὰ

κάτω καὶ |neck, crest on αἰνοβαφῇ. ταῦτα δ' ἐποίησατο
|helmet, hilltop

|secretly τοῦ ἀνδρὸς ἐκμετρησαμένη τὰ ἐκείνου ὄπλα. ὁ δὲ

ἰδὼν ἐθαύμασέ τε καὶ |ask as well; ἦν Πάνθειαν· Οὐ |perhaps; is
|ask then |it not so?

ὦ γύναι, |συγκόπτω?: chop up; beat up; ὁρ μὲν τὰ ὄπλα μοι
|συγκόπτω?: chop up; beat up

ἐποίησω; Μὰ Δι', ἔφη ἡ Πάνθεια, |certainly not γε πλείστου

ἄξιον· σὺ γὰρ ἔμοιγε, ἦν καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις φανῆς οἷόςπερ

ἐμοὶ δοκεῖς εἶναι, μέγιστος κόσμος ἔση. ταῦτα δὲ λέγουσα

themselves, a great and goodly company in bright tunics and splendid breastplates and shining helmets. All the horses had frontlets and chest-plates, the chargers had armour on their shoulders, and the chariot-horses on their flanks; so that the whole army flashed with bronze, and shone like a flower with scarlet. The eight-horse chariot of Abradatas was a marvel of beauty and richness; and just as he was about to put on the linen corslet of his native land, Pantheia came, bringing him a golden breastplate and a helmet of gold, and armlets and broad bracelets for his wrists, and a full flowing purple tunic, and a hyacinth-coloured helmet-plume. All these she had made for him in secret, taking the measure of his armour without his knowledge. And when he saw them, he gazed in wonder and said:

"Dear wife, and did you destroy your own jewels to make this armour for me?"

But she said, "No, my lord, at least not the richest of them all, for you shall be my loveliest jewel, when others see you as I see you now."

As she spoke, she

vocabulary

αἰσχύνω (ῶ) spoil, disgrace, disfigure, mar

ἄξιοθέατος (αἶ) well worth seeing

ἀποχωρέω go away from, retreat

ἄρμα -τος (n, 3) chariot

ἄτε as if; since

ἄω aor: to sate ~sate

δάκρυον tear

ἐνδύω go into, put on

ἐπόμενυμι (ῶ) swear by

ἡγία -ου (n) reins

κοινός communal, ordinary

λείβω libate

ὅμως anyway, nevertheless

ὀπλίζω prepare, arm ~hoplite

ὄπλον tool, weapon, ship's tackle
~hoplite

παρειά cheeks

πιθανός persuasive

πρόσθεν before (time, space)

προστίθηναι add; impose; (mp) agree;
side with ~thesis

πώποτε never

τιμάω (ῖ) honor, exalt

ὕφηγιοχος driver (for)

φιλία friendship ~philanthropy

φίλιος friendly

φύσις -εως (f) nature (of a thing)

~physics

ἄμα ἐνέδνε τὰ ὄπλα, καὶ λανθάνειν μὲν ἐπειράτο, ἐλείβετο
δὲ αὐτῇ τὰ δάκρυα κατὰ τῶν παρειῶν.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ πρόσθεν ὦν ἀξιοθέατος ὁ Ἀβραδάτας
ὠπλίσθη τοῖς ὅπλοις τούτοις, ἐφάνη μὲν κάλλιστος καὶ
ἐλευθεριώτατος, ἅτε καὶ τῆς φύσεως ὑπαρχούσης· λαβὼν
δὲ παρὰ τοῦ ὑψηνιόχου τὰς ἡνίας παρεσκευάζετο ὡς
ἀναβησόμενος ἤδη ἐπὶ τὸ ἄρμα. ἐν δὲ τούτῳ ἡ Πάνθεια
ἀποχωρῆσαι κελεύσασα τοὺς παρόντας πάντας ἔλεξεν·
Ἄλλ' ὅτι μὲν, ὦ Ἀβραδάτα, εἴ τις καὶ ἄλλη πώποτε γυνή
τὸν ἑαυτῆς ἄνδρα μείζον τῆς αὐτῆς ψυχῆς ἐτίμησεν, οἰμαί
σε γιγνώσκειν ὅτι καὶ ἐγὼ μία τούτων εἰμί. τί οὖν ἐμέ δεῖ
καθ' ἐν ἑκάστον λέγειν; τὰ γὰρ ἔργα οἰμαί σοι πιθανώτερα
παρεσχῆσθαι τῶν νῦν λεχθέντων λόγων. ὅμως δὲ οὕτως
ἔχουσα πρὸς σέ ὥσπερ σὺ οἶσθα, ἐπομνύω σοι τὴν ἐμὴν
καὶ σὴν φιλίαν ἢ μὴν ἐγὼ βούλεσθαι ἂν μετὰ σοῦ ἀνδρὸς
ἀγαθοῦ γενομένου κοινῇ γῆν ἐπιέσασθαι μᾶλλον ἢ ζῆν
μετ' αἰσχυνομένου αἰσχυνομένη· οὕτως ἐγὼ καὶ σέ τῶν
καλλίστων καὶ ἐμαυτὴν ἠξίωκα. καὶ

ἄμα |go into, put|tool , καὶ |escape notice;|try, test , |libate
 |on | (mp+gen) forget
 δὲ αὐτῇ τὰ |tear κατὰ τῶν |cheeks

Ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ πρόσθεν ὦν |well worth seeing Ἀβραδάτας
 |prepare, arm -is |tool τούτοις, ἐφάνη μὲν κάλλιστος καὶ
 ἐλευθεριώτατος, ἅτε καὶ τῆς |nature (of|there is λαβὼν
 |a thing)
 δὲ παρὰ τοῦ |driver (for) τὰς |reins |prepare, render ὥς
 |go up, embark ἥδη ἐπὶ τὸ |chariot ἐν δὲ τούτῳ ἡ Πάνθεια
 |go away from, |retreat κελεύσασα τοὺς παρόντας πάντας ἔλεξεν·
 Ἄλλ' ὅτι μὲν, ὦ Ἀβραδάτα, εἴ τις καὶ ἄλλη |never γυνή
 τὸν ἐαυτῆς ἄνδρα μείζον τῆς αὐτῆς |soul; |honor , οἰμαί
 |life
 σε γινώσκειν ὅτι καὶ ἐγὼ μία τούτων εἰμί. τί οὖν ἐμὲ δεῖ
 καθ' ἐν ἑκάστον λέγειν; τὰ γὰρ ἔργα οἰμαί σοι |persuasive
 παρεσχῆσθαι τῶν νῦν λεχθέντων λόγων. |anyway, nevertheless
 ἔχουσα πρὸς σέ ὥσπερ σὺ οἶσθα, |swear by σοι τὴν ἐμὴν
 καὶ σὴν φιλίαν ἢ μὴν ἐγὼ βούλεσθαι ἂν μετὰ σοῦ ἀνδρὸς
 ἀγαθοῦ γενομένου κοινῇ γῆν ἐπιέσασθαι μᾶλλον ἢ ζῆν
 μετ' |spoil, disgrace |spoil, disgrace οὕτως ἐγὼ καὶ σὲ τῶν
 καλλίστων καὶ ἐμavτὴν |consider - worthy, fitting

put the armour on him, but then, though she tried to hide it, the tears rolled down her cheeks.

And truly, when Abradatas was arrayed in the new panoply, he, who had been fair enough to look upon before, was now a sight of splendour, noble and beautiful and free, as indeed his nature was. He took the reins from the charioteer, and was about to set foot on the car, when Pantheia bade the bystanders withdraw, and said to him, "My own lord, little need to tell you what you know already, yet this I say, if any woman loved her husband more than her own soul, I am of her company. Why should I try to speak? Our lives say more than any words of mine. And yet, feeling for you what you know, I swear to you by the love between us that I would rather go down to the grave beside you after a hero's death than live on with you in shame. I have thought you worthy of the highest, and believed myself worthy to follow you. And I

*vocabulary***ἀγάζω** exalt, adore**αἰχμάλωτος** captive ~acute**ἀμείνων** comparative of ἀγαθός, noble**ἀναβλέπω** look up; gain sight, open one's eyes**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot**ἀσπάζομαι** greet, salute**ἄτιμος** (ἱ) without honor**διαφυλάσσω** guard, observe**δίφρος** seat, chariot box ~bear**δούλη** slave-woman**ἐλεύθερος** not enslaved**ἐξαιρέω** pick, steal; dedicate; destroy
~heresy**ἐπεύχομαι** exult (over); pray ~vow**ἐπιστρέφω** turn towards ~atrophy**ἠώς ἠῶθι** (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene**θάρσος** boldness, over-boldness**θιγγάνω** touch**κατακλείω** enclose; shut up**καταφιλέω** kiss, caress**κτάομαι** acquire, possess**ὀφείλω** owe, should, if only**πιστός** faithful; trustworthy**πρόειμι** to have been before, earlier
~ion**τιμάω** (ἱ) honor, exalt**ὑπέχω** promise; hold out one's hand;
submit to**ὕφηγιοχος** driver (for)

Κύρω δὲ μεγάλην τινὰ δοκῶ ἡμᾶς χάριν ὀφείλειν, ὅτι με αἰχμάλωτον γενομένην καὶ ἐξαιρεθείσαν αὐτῷ οὔτε ὡς δούλην ἠξίωσε κεκτηῖσθαι οὔτε ὡς ἐλευθέραν ἐν ἀτίμῳ ὀνόματι, διεφύλαξε δὲ σοὶ ὥσπερ ἀδελφοῦ γυναῖκα λαβών. πρὸς δὲ καὶ ὅτε Ἀράσπας ἀπέστη αὐτοῦ ὁ ἐμὲ φυλάττων, ὑπεσχόμην αὐτῷ, εἴ με ἐάσειε πρὸς σὲ πέμψαι, ἤξειν αὐτῷ σὲ πολὺ Ἀράσπου ἄνδρα καὶ πιστότερον καὶ ἀμείονα.

Ἡ Μὲν ταῦτα εἶπεν· ὁ δὲ Ἀβραδάτας ἀγασθεὶς τοῖς λόγοις καὶ θιγὼν αὐτῆς τῆς κεφαλῆς ἀναβλέψας εἰς τὸν οὐρανὸν ἐπηύξατο· Ἄλλ', ὦ Ζεῦ μέγιστε, δός μοι φανῆναι ἀξίῳ μὲν Πανθείας ἀνδρί, ἀξίῳ δὲ Κύρου φίλῳ τοῦ ἡμᾶς τιμήσαντος. ταῦτ' εἰπὼν κατὰ τὰς θύρας τοῦ ἄρματιοῦ δίφρου ἀνέβαινεν ἐπὶ τὸ ἄρμα. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀναβάντος αὐτοῦ κατέκλεισε τὸν δίφρον ὁ ὑφηνίοχος, οὐκ ἔχουσα ἢ Πάνθεια πῶς ἂν ἔτι ἄλλως ἀσπᾶσαιτο αὐτόν, κατεφίλησε τὸν δίφρον· καὶ τῷ μὲν προήει ἤδη τὸ ἄρμα, ἡ δὲ λαθοῦσα αὐτὸν συνεφείπετο, ἕως ἐπιστραφεὶς καὶ ἰδὼν αὐτὴν Ἀβραδάτας εἶπε· Θάρρει, Πάνθεια, καὶ χαίρε καὶ ἄπιθι

Κύρω δὲ μεγάλην τινὰ δοκῶ ἡμᾶς χάριν |owe, should, if only

|captive γενομένην καὶ |pick, steal; dedi-|υῖτῳ οὔτε ὥς
|cate; destroy

|slave-work consider wor- ἥσθαι οὔτε ὥς |not enslaved ἔν |without
|thy, fitting honor

ὀνόματι, |guard, δὲ σοὶ ὥσπερ ἀδελφοῦ γυναῖκα λαβών.
|observe

πρὸς δὲ καὶ ὅτε Ἀράσπας ἀπέστη αὐτοῦ ὁ ἐμὲ φυλάττων,

|promise αὐτῷ, εἰ με ἐάσειε πρὸς σὲ πέμψαι, ἥξειν αὐτῷ

σὲ πολὺν Ἀράσπου ἄνδρα καὶ |faithful; καὶ |better
|trustworthy

Ἡ Μὲν ταῦτα εἶπεν· ὁ δὲ Ἀβραδάτας |exalt, τοῖς
|adore

λόγοις καὶ |touch αὐτῆς τῆς κεφαλῆς |look up; gain sight, ἔν
|open one's eyes

οὐρανὸν |exult (over); pray, ὦ Ζεῦ μέγιστε, δός μοι φανῆναι

ἀξίῳ μὲν Πανθείας ἀνδρί, ἀξίῳ δὲ Κύρου φίλῳ τοῦ ἡμᾶς

|honor . ταῦτ' εἰπὼν κατὰ τὰς θύρας τοῦ ἄρματείου

|seat ἀνέβαινεν ἐπὶ τὸ |chariot ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀναβάντος αὐτοῦ

|enclose; shut up |seat ὁ |driver (for) , οὐκ ἔχουσα ἡ Πάνθεια

πῶς ἂν ἔτι ἄλλως |greet, salute αὐτόν, |kiss, caress τὸν

|seat καὶ τῷ μὲν |to have been be-|chariot ἢ δὲ |escape notice;
|fore, earlier (mp+gen) forget

αὐτὸν συνεφείπετο, ἕως |turn towards καὶ ἰδὼν αὐτὴν

Ἀβραδάτας εἶπε· |boldness Πάνθεια, καὶ χαῖρε καὶ |be absent, go away,
|return

bear in mind the great gratitude we owe to Cyrus, who, when I was his captive, chosen for his spoil, was too high-minded to treat me as a slave, or dishonour me as a free woman; he took me and saved me for you, as though I had been his brother's wife. And when Araspas, my warder, turned from him, I promised, if he would let me send for you, I would bring him a friend in the other's place, far nobler and more faithful."

And as Pantheia spoke, Abradatas listened with rapture to her words, and when she ended, he laid his hand upon her head, and looking up to heaven he prayed aloud:

"O Most mighty Zeus, make me worthy to be Pantheia's husband, and the friend of Cyrus who showed us honour!"

Then he opened the driver's seat and mounted the car, and the driver shut the door, and Pantheia could not take him in her arms again, so she bent and kissed the chariot-box. Then the car rolled forward and she followed unseen till Abradatas turned and saw her and cried, "Be strong, Pantheia, be of a good heart! Farewell,

*vocabulary***ἄγων** -ος (m, 3) gathering place

~agony

ἀναμνησκω (+2 acc) remind

someone ~mnemonic

ἀπάγω lead away, back ~demagogue**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot**ἀρμάμαξα** Persian carriage**ἀσκέω** work on**ἐκάτερος** each of two**εὖθυμος** (ῥ) well-disposed ~fume**εὐνοῦχος** eunuch**ἡγεμών** -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide,

chief ~hegemony

θέαμα -τος (ᾱα, n, 3) sight, spectacle**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider

~theater

θεράπεινα female slave**καλλιερέω** have good signs**κατακαλύπτω** cover up**κατακλίνω** (ι) lay down ~incline**νίκη** (ι) victory ~Nike**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon, recommend, encourage**παρατάσσω** place beside**προδότης** -ου (m, 1) traitor, abandoner**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)**προστίθηναι** add; impose; (mp) agree; side with ~thesis**σκηνέω** camp**σκηνή** tent; stage**στρατιά** army ~strategy**συγκαλέω** call together ~gallo**συντάσσω** gather, assemble ~syntax**ὑπάγω** lead under the yoke, lead away from ~demagogue

ἤδη. ἐκ τούτου δὴ οἱ εὐνούχοι καὶ αἱ θεραπείαι λαβοῦσαι ἀπήγον αὐτὴν εἰς τὴν ἀρμάμαξαν καὶ κατακλίναντες κατεκάλυψαν τῇ σκηνῇ. οἱ δὲ ἄνθρωποι, καλοῦ ὄντος τοῦ θεάματος τοῦ τε Ἀβραδάτου καὶ τοῦ ἄρματος, οὐ πρόσθεν ἐδύναντο θεάσασθαι αὐτὸν πρὶν ἢ Πάνθεια ἀπῆλθεν.

Ὡς δ' ἐκεκαλλιερέκει μὲν ὁ Κῦρος, ἡ δὲ στρατιὰ παρετέτακτο αὐτῷ ὥσπερ παρήγγειλε, κατέχων σκοπὰς ἄλλας πρὸ ἄλλων συνεκάλεσε τοὺς ἡγεμόνας καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε. Ἄνδρες φίλοι καὶ σύμμαχοι, τὰ μὲν ἱερὰ οἱ θεοὶ ἡμῖν φαίνουσιν οἷάπερ ὅτε τὴν πρόσθεν νίκην ἔδοσαν· ὑμᾶς δ' ἐγὼ βούλομαι ἀναμνησάμενοι ὧν μοι δοκεῖτε μεμνημένοι πολὺν ἂν εὐθυμότεροι εἰς τὸν ἀγῶνα ἵεναι. ἡσκήκατε μὲν γὰρ τὰ εἰς τὸν πόλεμον πολὺ μᾶλλον τῶν πολεμίων, συντέτραφθε δὲ καὶ συντέταχθε ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ πολὺ πλείω ἤδη χρόνον ἢ οἱ πολέμοι καὶ συννενικήκατε μετ' ἀλλήλων· τῶν δὲ πολεμίων οἱ πολλοὶ συνήττηνται μεθ' αὐτῶν, οἱ δὲ ἀμάχητοι ἐκατέρων οἱ μὲν τῶν πολεμίων ἴσασιν ὅτι προδότας τοὺς παραστάτας ἔχουσιν, ὑμεῖς δὲ οἱ μεθ' ἡμῶν

ἤδη, ἐκ τούτου δὴ οἱ |eunuch καὶ αἱ |female slave λαβοῦσαι

|lead away, back, εἰς τὴν |Persian καὶ |lay down
|carriage

|cover up τῇ σκηνῇ. οἱ δὲ ἄνθρωποι, καλοῦ ὄντος τοῦ

|sight, τοῦ τε Ἀβραδάτου καὶ τοῦ |chariot, οὐ πρόσθεν
|spectacle

ἐδύναντο θεάσασθαι αὐτὸν |before, formerly; ἀπῆλθεν.
|negated: until

Ὡς δ' |have good signs μὲν ὁ Κῦρος, ἡ δὲ στρατιά

|place beside αὐτῷ ὥσπερ |transmit; order; restrain; stop; continue; keep;
|summon, |take possession

ἄλλας |before, ἄλλων |call together, |recommend, |leader καὶ ἔλεξεν
|forward |encourage

|thus Ἄνδρες φίλοι καὶ σύμμαχοι, τὰ μὲν ἱερὰ οἱ θεοὶ ἡμῖν

φαίνουσιν οἵάπερ ὅτε τὴν πρόσθεν |victory ἔδοσαν· ὑμᾶς

δ' ἐγὼ βούλομαι |(+2 acc) re-ν μοι δοκεῖτε |remind; (mid) remember,
|mind someone |turn one's thoughts to

πολὺν ἂν |well-disposed εἰς τὸν |gathering· ἔναι. |work on μὲν
|place

γὰρ τὰ εἰς τὸν πόλεμον πολὺ μᾶλλον τῶν πολεμίων,

συντέτραφθε δὲ καὶ |gather, ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ πολὺ πλείω
|assemble

ἤδη χρόνον ἢ οἱ πολέμοι καὶ συννενικήκατε μετ' ἀλλήλων·

τῶν δὲ πολεμίων οἱ πολλοὶ συνήττηνται μεθ' αὐτῶν, οἱ

δὲ ἀμάχητοι |each of two ἵ μὲν τῶν πολεμίων ἴσασιν ὅτι

|traitor, τοὺς παραστάτας ἔχουσιν, ὑμεῖς δὲ οἱ μεθ' ἡμῶν
|abandoner

and hie thee home!”

Thereupon her chamberlains and her maidens took her and brought her back to her own carriage, and laid her down and drew the awning. But no man, of all who was there that day, splendid as Abradatas was in his chariot, had eyes to look on him until Pantheia had gone.

Meanwhile Cyrus had found the victims favourable, and his army was already drawn up in the order he had fixed. He had scouts posted ahead, one behind the other, and then he called his officers together for his final words:

”Gentlemen, my friends and allies, the sacred signs from heaven are as they were the day the gods gave us victory before, and I would call to your minds thoughts to bring you gladness and confidence for the fight. You are far better trained than your enemies, you have lived together and worked together far longer than they, you have won victories together. What they have shared with one another has been defeat, and those who have not fought as yet feel they have traitors to right and left of them, while our recruits know that they enter battle

vocabulary

ἄημι blow

ἀμνηχανέω be helpless, resourceless

ἀναγκαῖος coerced, coercing, slavery

ἀντέχω hold up as protection against
~ischemia

ἀπιστέω disbelieve ~stand

ἀρήγω succor; prevent ~right

ἄρμα -τος (n, 3) chariot

ἀσπίς -δος (f) shield ~spit

αὐτως just so, merely; in vain ~after

δῆλος visible, conspicuous

εἰκός likely

ἐκποδών out of the way

ἐξωθέω drive out

ἐπαρήγω succor; prevent ~right

ἔσχω imitate, liken to, guess ~victor

κωλύω (ῶ) hinder, prevent

ὅμοιος like ~homoerotic

ὀπλίζω prepare, arm ~hoplite

παίω hit

πρόσθεν before (time, space)

προστίθηναι add; impose; (mp) agree;
side with ~thesis

πυργομαχέω assault a tower

πύργος ramparts, tower; line of troops

σίδηρος iron ~siderite

ὑπομένω stay behind, await ~remain

ώθέω push

ἵστε ὅτι μετὰ θελόντων τοῖς συμμάχοις ἀρήγειν μαχεῖσθε. εἰκὸς δὲ τοὺς μὲν πιστεύοντας ἀλλήλοις ὁμόνως μάχεσθαι μένοντας, τοὺς δὲ ἀπιστοῦντας ἀναγκαῖον βουλεύεσθαι πῶς ἂν ἕκαστοι τάχιστα ἐκποδῶν γένοιτο. ἴωμεν δὴ, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους, ἄρματα μὲν ἔχοντες ὀπλισμένα πρὸς ἄσπλα τὰ τῶν πολεμίων, ὡς δ' αὐτως καὶ ἱππέας καὶ ἵππους ὀπλισμένους πρὸς ἀόπλους, ὡς ἐκ χειρὸς μάχεσθαι. πεζοῖς δὲ τοῖς μὲν ἄλλοις οἷς καὶ πρόσθεν μαχεῖσθε, Αἰγύπτιοι δὲ ὁμοίως μὲν ὀπλισμένοι εἰσὶν, ὁμοίως δὲ τεταγμένοι· τὰς τε γὰρ ἀσπίδας μείζους ἔχουσιν ἢ ὡς ποιεῖν τι καὶ ὀρᾶν, τεταγμένοι τε εἰς ἑκατὸν δηλὸν ὅτι κωλύσουσιν ἀλλήλους μάχεσθαι πλὴν πάνυ ὀλίγων. εἰ δὲ ὠθοῦντες ἐξώσειν πιστεύουσιν, ἵπποις αὐτοὺς πρῶτον δεήσει ἀντέχειν καὶ σιδήρῳ ὑφ' ἵππων ἰσχυριζομένῳ· ἣν δέ τις αὐτῶν καὶ ὑπομείνη, πῶς ἅμα δυνήσεται ἵππομαχεῖν τε καὶ φαλαγγομαχεῖν καὶ πυργομαχεῖν; καὶ γὰρ οἱ ἀπὸ τῶν πύργων ἡμῶν μὲν ἐπαρήξουσι, τοὺς δὲ πολεμίους παίοντες ἀμηχανεῖν ἀντὶ

ἵστε ὅτι μετὰ θελόντων τοῖς συμμάχοις |succor; μαχεῖσθε.
 |prevent
 |likely δὲ τοὺς μὲν πιστεύοντας ἀλλήλοις ὁμόνως μάχεσθαι
 μένοντας, τοὺς δὲ |disbelieve ἀναγκαῖον |(mp) to deliberate
 πῶς ἂν ἕκαστοι τάχιστα |out of the way. οὐκ οὐκ. |imitate, liken to,
 |guess
 δῆ, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους, |chariot μὲν ἔχοντες
 |prepare, arm πρὸς ἄοπλα τὰ τῶν πολεμίων, ὥς δ' |just so, merely; in
 |vain
 καὶ |rider καὶ ἵππους |prepare, arm πρὸς ἀόπλους, ὥς
 ἐκ χειρὸς μάχεσθαι. |on foot; footsoldier ἢ ἄλλοις οἷς καὶ
 πρόσθεν μαχεῖσθε, Αἰγύπτιοι δὲ ὁμοίως μὲν |prepare, arm
 εἰσίν, ὁμοίως δὲ |arrange τάς τε γὰρ |shield μείζους
 ἔχουσιν ἢ ὥς ποιεῖν τι καὶ ὀρᾶν, |arrange τε εἰς
 ἕκατὸν |visible, " |hinder, ἀλλήλους μάχεσθαι |except
 |conspicuous |prevent
 |altogether, very εἰ δὲ |push |drive out πιστεύουσιν,
 ἵπποις αὐτοὺς πρῶτον δεήσει |hold up as pro- σιδήρῳ ὑφ'
 |tection against
 ἵππων ἰσχυριζομένων· ἣν δέ τις αὐτῶν καὶ |stay behind, await
 ἅμα δυνήσεται ἵππομαχεῖν τε καὶ φαλαγγομαχεῖν καὶ
 |assault a tower καὶ γὰρ οἱ ἀπὸ τῶν |wall, ἡμῖν μὲν
 |tower
 |succor; , τοὺς δὲ πολεμίους |hit |be helpless, ἰντὶ
 |prevent |resourceless

in company with men who help their allies. Those who trust each other will stand firm and fight without flinching, but when confidence has gone no man thinks of anything but flight. Forward then, gentlemen, against the foe; drive our scythed chariots against their defenceless cars, let our armed cavalry charge their unprotected horse, and charge them home. The mass of their infantry you have met before; and as for the Egyptians, they are armed in much the same way as they are marshalled; they carry shields too big to let them stir or see, they are drawn up a hundred deep, which will prevent all but the merest handful fighting. If they count on forcing us back by their weigh, they must first withstand our steel and the charge of our cavalry. And if any of them do hold firm, how can they fight at once against cavalry, infantry, and turrets of artillery? For our men on the towers will be there to help us, they will smite the enemy until he

*vocabulary***ἀπορέω** be confused, distressed**δείκνυμι** (ὅ) show, point out**ἐνδέω** tie to, entangle; lack**ἐπιδείκνυμι** (ὅ) display, exhibit**θύω** (ὅ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω**προσεύχομαι** pray, vow**σχῆμα** -τος (n, 3) form, figure**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military unit

τοῦ μάχεσθαι ποιήσουσιν. εἰ δέ τινος ἔτι ἐνδείσθαι δοκεῖτε, πρὸς ἐμὲ λέγετε· σὺν γὰρ θεοῖς οὐδενὸς ἀπορήσομεν. καὶ εἰ μὲν τις εἰπεῖν τι βούλεται, λεξάτω· εἰ δὲ μή, ἐλθόντες πρὸς τὰ ἱερὰ καὶ προσευξάμενοι οἷς ἐθύσαμεν θεοῖς ἵτε ἐπὶ τὰς τάξεις· καὶ ἕκαστος ὑμῶν ὑπομμνησκέτω τοὺς μεθ' αὐτοῦ ἅπερ ἐγὼ ὑμᾶς, καὶ ἐπιδεικνύτω τις τοῖς ἀρχομένοις ἑαυτὸν ἄξιον ἀρχῆς, ἄφοβον δεικνὺς καὶ σχῆμα καὶ πρόσωπον καὶ λόγους.

τοῦ μάχεσθαι ποιήσουσιν. εἰ δέ τινος ἔτι |tie to δοκεῖτε,
 πρὸς ἐμὲ λέγετε· σὺν γὰρ θεοῖς οὐδενὸς |be confused, καὶ
 |distressed
 εἰ μὲν τις εἰπεῖν τι βούλεται, λεξάτω· εἰ δὲ μή, ἐλθόντες
 πρὸς τὰ ἱερὰ καὶ |pray, vow οἷς |rush; sacrifice ἵς ἵτε ἐπὶ
 τὰς τάξεις· καὶ ἕκαστος ὑμῶν ὑπομιμνησκέτω τοὺς μεθ'
 αὐτοῦ ἅπερ ἐγὼ ὑμᾶς, καὶ |display, τις τοῖς ἀρχομένοις
 |exhibit
 ἑαυτὸν |worthy ἀρχῆς, ἄφοβον |show καὶ |form, καὶ
 |figure
 |face καὶ λόγους.

flies instead of fighting. If you think there is anything wanting, tell me now; God helping us, we will lack nothing. And if any man wishes to say anything, let him speak now; if not, go to the altar and there pray to the gods to whom we have sacrificed, and then fall in. Let each man say to his own men what I have said to him, let him show the men he rules that he is fit to rule, let them see the fearlessness in his face, his bearing, and his words.”